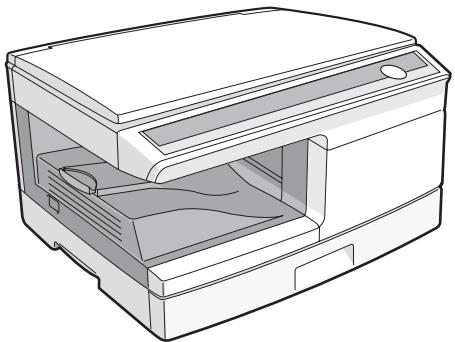


# **SHARP SERVICE MANUAL**

CODE: 00ZAR203E/S2E

## **DIGITAL MULTIFUNCTIONAL SYSTEM/DIGITAL COPIER**



### **AR-203E AR-203E X AR-M200 AR-M201 MODEL AR-5420**

(The descriptions of the AR-203E X are same as those of the AR-203E unless otherwise specified.)

#### **CONTENTS**

[1] GENERAL .....	1 - 1
[2] SPECIFICATIONS .....	2 - 1
[3] CONSUMABLE PARTS .....	3 - 1
[4] EXTERNAL VIEWS AND INTERNAL STRUCTURES .....	4 - 1
[5] UNPACKING AND INSTALLATION .....	5 - 1
[6] COPY PROCESS .....	6 - 1
[7] OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTIONS .....	7 - 1
[8] DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY .....	8 - 1
[9] ADJUSTMENTS .....	9 - 1
[10] SIMULATION, TROUBLE CODES .....	10 - 1
[11] MAINTENANCE .....	11 - 1
[12] USER PROGRAM .....	12 - 1
[13] ELECTRICAL SECTION .....	13 - 1
[14] FIRMWARE DOWNLOAD PROCEDURES .....	14 - 1

Parts marked with “ $\triangle$ ” are important for maintaining the safety of the set. Be sure to replace these parts with specified ones for maintaining the safety and performance of the set.

**SHARP CORPORATION**

This document has been published to be used for after sales service only.  
The contents are subject to change without notice.

## **CAUTION**

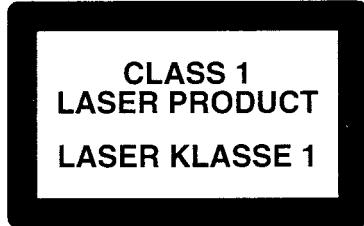
This product is a class 1 laser product that complies with 21CFR 1040 of the CDRH standard and IEC825. This means that this machine does not produce hazardous laser radiation. The use of controls, adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

This laser radiation is not a danger to the skin, but when an exact focusing of the laser beam is achieved on the eye's retina, there is the danger of spot damage to the retina.

The following cautions must be observed to avoid exposure of the laser beam to your eyes at the time of servicing.

- 1) When a problem in the laser optical unit has occurred, the whole optical unit must be exchanged as a unit, not as individual parts.
- 2) Do not look into the machine with the main switch turned on after removing the developer unit, toner cartridge, and drum cartridge.
- 3) Do not look into the laser beam exposure slit of the laser optical unit with the connector connected when removing and installing the optical system.
- 4) The middle frame contains the safety interlock switch.

Do not defeat the safety interlock by inserting wedges or other items into the switch slot.



LASER WAVE – LENGTH : 770 ~ 795nm  
Pulse times : 12.88μs ± 12.88ns/7mm  
Out put power : MAX 0.2mW

## **CAUTION**

INVISIBLE LASER RADIATION,  
WHEN OPEN AND INTERLOCKS DEFEATED.  
AVOID EXPOSURE TO BEAM.

## **VORSICHT**

UNSICHTBARE LASERSTRÄHLUNG,  
WENN ABDECKUNG GEÖFFNET UND  
SICHERHEITSVERRIEGELUNG ÜBERBRÜCKT.  
NICHT DEM STRAHL AUSSETZEN.

## **VARO !**

AVATTAESSA JA SUOJALUKITUS  
OHITETTAESSA OLET ALTIINA  
NÄKYMÄTTÖMÄLLE LASERSÄTEILYLLE ÄLÄ  
KATSO SÄTEESEEN.

## **ADVARSEL**

USYNLIG LASERSTRÅLING VED ÅBNING, NÅR  
SIKKERHEDSBRYDERE ER UDE AF  
FUNKTION. UNDGÅ UDSAETTELSE FOR  
STRÅLING.

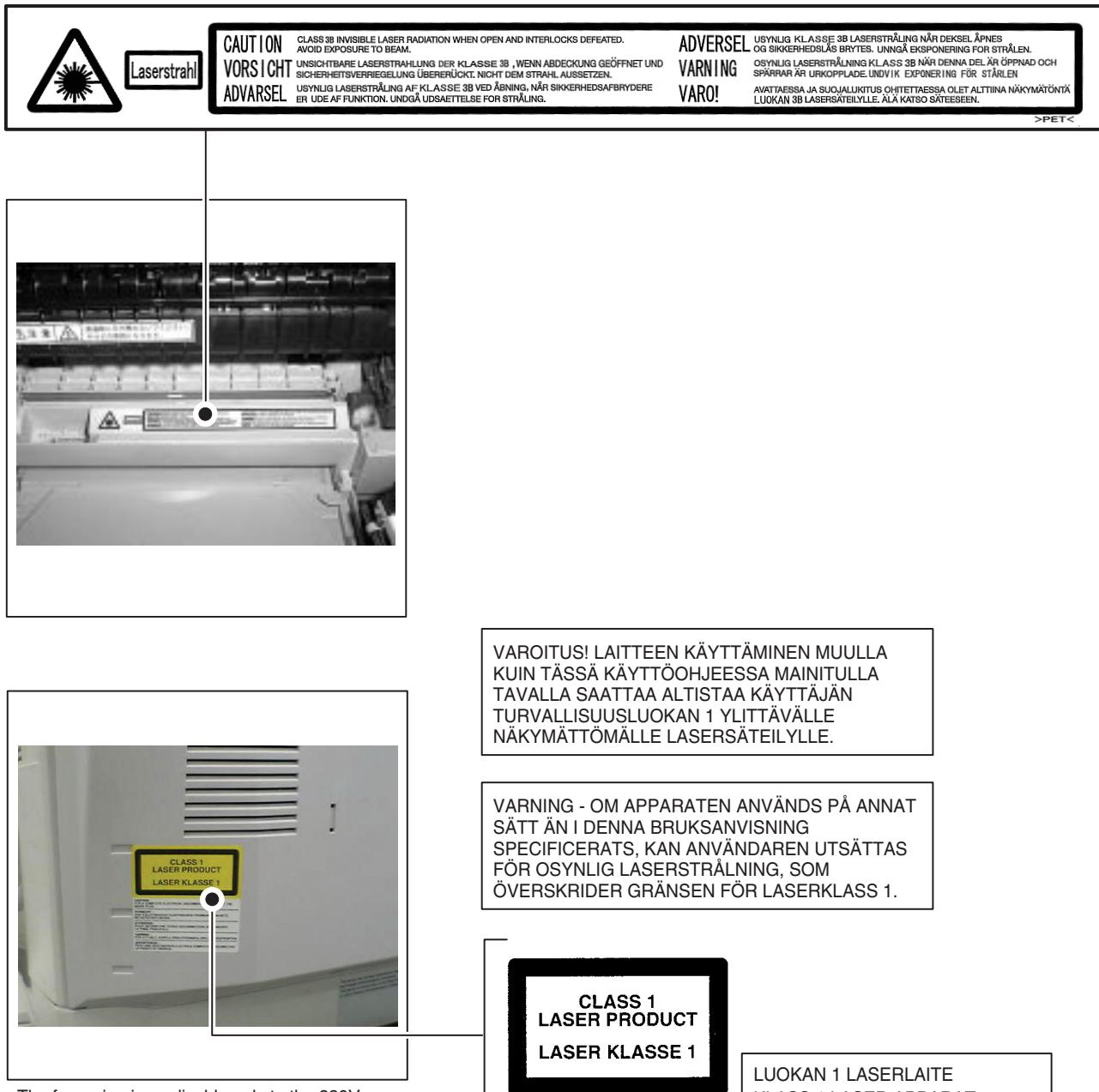
## **VARNING !**

OSYNLIG LASERSTRÅLING NÄR DENNA DEL  
ÄR ÖPPNAD OCH SPÄRREN ÄR URKOPPLAD.  
BETRAKTA EJ STRÅLEN. – STRÅLEN ÄR  
FARLIG.

At the production line, the output power of the scanner unit is adjusted to 0.18 MILLI-WATT PLUS 20 PCTS and is maintained constant by the operation of the Automatic Power Control (APC). Even if the APC circuit fails in operation for some reason, the maximum output power will only be 15 MILLI-WATT 0.1 MICRO-SEC. Giving and accessible emission level of 42 MICRO-WATT which is still-less than the limit of CLASS-1 laser product.

### Caution

This product contains a low power laser device. To ensure continued safety do not remove any cover or attempt to gain access to the inside of the product. Refer all servicing to qualified personnel.



# CONTENTS

[1] GENERAL	1. Major functions .....	1-1
[2] SPECIFICATIONS	1. Basic Specifications .....	2-1
	2. Operation specifications .....	2-1
	3. Copy performance .....	2-2
	4. GDI printer (AR-203E only).....	2-3
	5. SPLC printer (AR-M200/M201).....	2-3
	6. Scan function (AR-203E/M200/M201) .....	2-3
[3] CONSUMABLE PARTS	1. Supply system table .....	3-1
	A. Europe Subsidiary (AR-203E/5420/M200/M201), SCA/SCNZ (AR-203E/M201).....	3-1
	B. Asia Subsidiary (AR-203E/M201).....	3-1
	C. SMEF/Distributor (AR-203E/M201) .....	3-1
	D. SRH (AR-203E/M201) .....	3-1
	2. Environmental.....	3-2
	3. Production control number (lot No.) identification.....	3-2
	4. Toner cartridge replacement.....	3-3
[4] EXTERNAL VIEWS AND INTERNAL STRUCTURES	1. Appearance .....	4-1
	2. Internal .....	4-1
	3. Operation panel .....	4-2
	A. AR-203E/5420 .....	4-2
	B. AR-M200/M201 .....	4-3
	4. Motors and solenoids .....	4-5
	5. Sensors and switches.....	4-6
	6. PWB unit.....	4-7
	7. Cross sectional view.....	4-8
[5] UNPACKING AND INSTALLATION	1. Copier installation .....	5-1
	2. Cautions on handling .....	5-1
	3. Checking packed components and accessories.....	5-1
	4. Unpacking.....	5-2
	5. Removing protective packing materials .....	5-2
	6. Developer unit installation.....	5-2
	7. Toner cartridge installation .....	5-3
	8. Loading paper.....	5-4
	9. Power to copier.....	5-4
	10. Software (AR-203E/M200/M201) .....	5-4
	A. Before installation.....	5-4
	B. Installing the software.....	5-5
	C. Setting up Button Manager.....	5-7
	11. Interface .....	5-9
	A. USB .....	5-9
	12. Moving .....	5-9
	13. Scanner moisture-proof kit .....	5-9
	A. Components .....	5-9
	B. Precautions at installation .....	5-9
	C. Attachment method .....	5-9
[6] COPY PROCESS	1. Functional diagram .....	6-1
	2. Outline of print process.....	6-2
	3. Actual print process .....	6-2
[7] OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTIONS	1. Outline of operation.....	7-1
	2. Scanner section .....	7-2
	A. Scanner unit .....	7-2
	B. Optical system .....	7-2
	C. Drive system.....	7-2
	3. Laser unit .....	7-3
	A. Basic structure .....	7-3
	B. Laser beam path.....	7-3
	C. Composition .....	7-3
	4. Fuser section .....	7-3
	A. General description .....	7-4
	5. Paper feed section and paper transport section .....	7-4
	A. Paper transport path and general operations.....	7-4
	6. D-D (Duplex to Duplex) mode paper/ document transport (Duplex model) (AR-M201 only) .....	7-7
	A. Initial state .....	7-7
	B. Front copy.....	7-7
	C. Back copy .....	7-7
	7. Shifter (AR-M200/M201) .....	7-8
[8] DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY	1. High voltage section .....	8-1
	A. List .....	8-1
	B. Drum replacement .....	8-1
	C. Disassembly procedure .....	8-3
	D. Assembly procedure.....	8-3
	E. Charger wire cleaning.....	8-4
	F. Charger wire replacement .....	8-4
	2. Operation panel section .....	8-4
	A. List .....	8-4
	B. Disassembly procedure .....	8-4
	C. Assembly procedure.....	8-5
	3. Optical section .....	8-5
	A. List .....	8-5
	B. Disassembly procedure .....	8-5
	C. Assembly procedure.....	8-7
	4. Fusing section .....	8-7
	A. List .....	8-7
	B. Disassembly procedure .....	8-7
	C. Assembly procedure.....	8-10
	5. Tray paper feed/transport section .....	8-10
	A. List .....	8-10
	B. Disassembly procedure .....	8-10
	C. Assembly procedure .....	8-16
	6. Manual paper feed section .....	8-16
	A. List .....	8-16
	B. Disassembly procedure .....	8-16
	C. Assembly procedure .....	8-18
	D. Pressure plate holder attachment .....	8-18
	7. Rear frame section .....	8-18
	A. List .....	8-18
	B. Disassembly procedure .....	8-18
	C. Assembly procedure .....	8-19

8	Power section .....	8-20
A.	List .....	8-20
B.	Disassembly procedure .....	8-20
C.	Assembly procedure.....	8-20
9.	DV unit section .....	8-20
A.	Developer.....	8-20
B.	DV seal.....	8-20
C.	DV blade.....	8-21
D.	DV doctor .....	8-21
E.	DV sensor.....	8-21
10.	Duplex motor section (AR-M201 only) .....	8-21
A.	List .....	8-21
B.	Disassembly procedure .....	8-21
C.	Assembly procedure.....	8-21
11.	Reverse roller section (AR-M201 only).....	8-22
A.	List .....	8-22
B.	Disassembly procedure .....	8-22
C.	Assembly procedure.....	8-22
[9]	<b>ADJUSTMENTS</b>	
1.	Optical section .....	9-1
A.	Copy magnification ratio adjustment .....	9-1
B.	Image position adjustment .....	9-2
2.	Copy density adjustment .....	9-4
A.	Copy density adjustment timing .....	9-4
B.	Note for copy density adjustment.....	9-4
C.	Necessary tool for copy density adjustment.....	9-4
D.	Features of copy density adjustment .....	9-4
E.	Copy density adjustment procedure.....	9-5
3.	High voltage adjustment .....	9-5
A.	Main charger (Grid bias).....	9-5
B.	DV bias check .....	9-6
4.	Duplex adjustment .....	9-6
A.	Adjusting the paper reverse position in memory for duplex copying (AR-M200/M201) .....	9-6
B.	Adjusting trailing edge void in duplex copy mode (AR-M201) .....	9-6
5.	Automatic black level correction .....	9-7
[10]	<b>SIMULATION, TROUBLE CODES</b>	
1.	Entering the simulation mode .....	10-1
2.	Key rule.....	10-1
3.	List of simulations .....	10-1
4.	Descriptions of various simulations.....	10-3
5.	Trouble codes.....	10-40
A.	Trouble codes list .....	10-40
B.	Details of trouble codes .....	10-41
[11]	<b>MAINTENANCE</b>	
1.	Maintenance table .....	11-1
2.	Maintenance display system.....	11-1
3.	Remaining toner indication .....	11-1
[12]	<b>USER PROGRAM</b>	
1.	Functions that can be set with user programs .....	12-1
2.	Toner save mode (AR-203E/5420).....	12-1
3.	User programs (AR-203E/5420).....	12-1
4.	User programs (AR-M200/M201) .....	12-2
A.	Copy mode.....	12-3
B.	Print mode .....	12-4
[13]	<b>ELECTRICAL SECTION</b>	
1.	Block diagram .....	13-1
A.	Overall block diagram (AR-203E/5420) .....	13-1
B.	Overall block diagram (AR-M200/M201) .....	13-2
2.	Actual wiring diagram .....	13-3
A.	MCU PWB (AR-203E/5420) .....	13-3
B.	MCU PWB (AR-M200/M201) .....	13-4
C.	SPF unit (AR-203E optional only).....	13-5
D.	RSPF unit (AR-M200/M201 optional only) .....	13-5
E.	2nd cassette unit (AR-203E/M200/M201 optional only) .....	13-5
F.	Network box and FAX (AR-M200/M201 optional only).....	13-6
3.	Signal name list.....	13-6
4.	Circuit diagram .....	13-9
A.	MCU PWB (AR-203E/5420) .....	13-9
B.	MCU PWB (AR-M200/M201) .....	13-21
C.	OPE PWB (AR-203E/5420) .....	13-37
D.	OPERATION PWB (AR-M200/M201).....	13-38
[14]	<b>FIRMWARE DOWNLOAD PROCEDURES</b>	
1.	Initial setting (Serial number setting procedures) .....	14-1
2.	Download procedures.....	14-1
3.	Version acquisition procedures.....	14-3
4.	EEPROM data acquisition procedure .....	14-4
5.	Installing procedures.....	14-5

# [1] GENERAL

## 1. Major functions

### Configurations

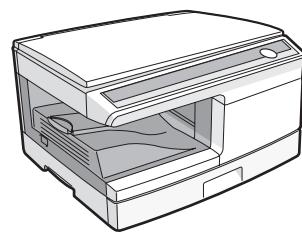
Item Model	CPM (A4)	PPM (A4)	SB/ MB	2 Tray	SPF	R-SPF	Color Scanner	GDI printer	SPLC printer	E- SORT	Duplex	Shifter	USB	RJ45	FAX	External NIC
AR-203E	20CPM	15PPM	MB	Opt	Opt	X	O	O	X	X	X	X	O (2.0 full)	X	X	X
AR-5420	20CPM	—	MB	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
AR-M200	20CPM	20PPM	MB	Opt	X	Opt	O	X	O	O	X	O	O (2.0 Hi)	X	Opt	Opt
AR-M201	20CPM	20PPM	MB	Opt	X	Opt	O	X	O	O	O	O	O (2.0 Hi)	X	Opt	Opt

### Descriptions of items

- CPM: Copy speed (Copies Per Minute)  
 PPM: Print speed (Print Per Minute)  
 SB/MB: SB = Manual feed single bypass,  
         MB = Manual feed multi-bypass  
 2 Tray: Second cassette unit (AR-D33)  
 SPF: Original feed unit (AR-SP9)  
 R-SPF: Duplex original feed unit (AR-RP9)  
 Color Scanner: Color scanner function  
 GDI printer: GDI printer function with USB.  
 SPLC printer: SPLC printer function with USB.  
 E-SORT: Electronic sort function  
 Duplex: Auto duplex copy/print function  
 Shifter: Job separator function  
 USB: Interface port (USB)  
 RJ45: Interface port (Network)  
 FAX: FAX function (AR-FX13)  
 External NIC: AR-NB2A

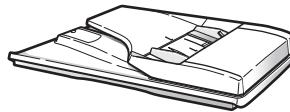
### Descriptions of table

- O: Standard provision  
 X: No function or no option available  
 Opt: Option

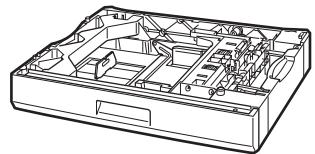


AR-203E/AR-5420  
AR-M200/AR-M201

(Options)



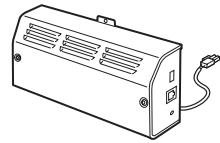
AR-SP9



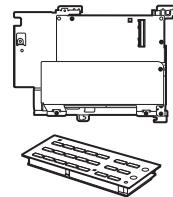
AR-D33



AR-RP9



AR-NB2A



AR-FX13

## [2] SPECIFICATIONS

### 1. Basic Specifications

Item		
Type	Desktop	
Copy system	Dry, electrostatic	
Segment (class)	Digital personal copier	
Copier dimensions	AR-203E/5420: 518mm (W) x 445mm (D) x 298mm (H) (20-1/2" (W) x 17-5/8" (D) x 11-3/4" (H)) AR-M200/M201: 518mm (W) x 452mm (D) x 298mm (H) (20-1/2" (W) x 17-7/8" (D) x 11-3/4" (H))	
Weight (Approximately)	AR-203E/5420: 16.6kg (36.5 lbs.) AR-M200: 19.8kg (43.7 lbs.) AR-M201: 20.5kg (45.2 lbs.)	Toner cartridge not included

### 2. Operation specifications

Section, item		Details		
Paper feed section	Paper feed system		1 tray (250 sheets) + multi-bypass (50 sheets)	
Paper feed section	AB system	Tray paper feed section	Paper size A4, B5, A5 (Landscape)	
			Paper weight 56 - 80g/m <sup>2</sup>	
			Paper feed capacity 250 sheets	
			Kinds Standard paper, specified paper, recycled paper	
			Remark User adjustment of paper guide available	
	Inch system	Multi-bypass paper feed section	Paper size A4, B5, A5, B6, A6 (Landscape)	
			Paper weight 56 - 128g/m <sup>2</sup>	
			Paper feed capacity 50 sheets	
			Kinds Standard paper, specified paper, recycled paper, OHP, Label, Envelop (Single copy)	
			Remark User adjustment of paper guide available	
Paper exit section	Tray paper feed section	Tray paper feed section	Paper size 8-1/2" x 14", 8-1/2" x 11", 8-1/2" x 5-1/2" (Landscape)	
			Paper weight 15 - 21 lbs.	
			Paper feed capacity 250 sheets	
			Kinds Standard paper, specified paper, recycled paper	
			Remark User adjustment of paper guide available	
	Multi-bypass paper feed section	Multi-bypass paper feed section	Paper size 8-1/2" x 14", 8-1/2" x 11", 8-1/2" x 5-1/2", 3-1/2" x 5-1/2" (Landscape)	
			Paper weight 15 - 34.5 lbs.	
			Paper feed capacity 50 sheets	
			Kinds Standard paper, specified paper, recycled paper, OHP, Label, Envelop (Single copy)	
			Remark User adjustment of paper guide available	
Originals	Exit way		Face down	
	Capacity of output tray		200 sheets	
	Original set		Center Registration (left edge)	
	Max. original size		A4 (8-1/2" x 14")	
Optical section	Original kinds		sheet, book	
	Original size detection		None	
	Scanning section	Scanning system	3 CCDs (RGB) sensor scanning by lighting white lamp	
		CCD sensor	Resolution 600 dpi	
Writing section		Lighting lamp	Type CCFL	
			Voltage 560Vrms	
			Power consumption 2.8W	
			Output data Output: R, G, B 1 or 8 bits/pixel / Input: A/D 16 bits (12 bits actual)	
Image forming	Photoconductor	Writing system	Writing to OPC drum by the semiconductor laser	
		Laser unit	Resolution 600 dpi	
	Charger	Type OPC (30ø)		
		Life 25K		
		Charging system Saw-tooth charging with a grid, / (-) scorotron discharge		
	Transfer system (+) DC corotron system			
	Separation system (-) DC corotron system			
	Developing	Developing system Dry, 2-component magnetic brush development system		
	Cleaning	Cleaning system Counter blade system (Counter to rotation)		

Section, item		Details		
Fusing section		Fusing system		
		Upper heat roller		
		Type		
		Lower heat roller		
Heater lamp	Type	Silicon rubber roller		
	Type	Halogen lamp		
	Electrical section		Voltage	220 - 240V / 120V
			Power consumption	800W
			Power source	
			Voltage	220 - 240V / 120V
			Frequency	Common use for 50 and 60Hz
			Power consumption	
			Max.	Less than 1000W
			Average (during copying)	AR-203E/5420: 350Wh/H or less AR-M200/ M201: 380Wh/H or less
			Average (stand-by)	80Wh/H
			Pre-heat mode	AR-203E/5420: 25Wh/H or less AR-M200/ M201: 28Wh/H or less
			Auto power shut-off mode	AR-203E/5420: 8.8W or less AR-M200/ M201: 12.5W or less

### 3. Copy performance

Section, item		Details	
Copy magnification		Fixed magnification ratios	AR-203E/5420: 3 Reduction + 2 Enlargement (AB system: 50, 70, 86, 100, 141, 200%) (Inch system: 50, 64, 78, 100, 129, 200%) AR-M200/M201: *1 4 Reduction + 3 Enlargement (AB system: 25, 50, 70, 86, 100, 141, 200, 400%) (Inch system: 25, 50, 64, 78, 100, 129, 200, 400%)
		Zooming magnification ratios	25 - 400% (376 steps in 1% increments) 50 - 200% when using SPF (151 steps in 1% increments)
Manual steps (manual, photo)			5 steps
Copy speed		First-copy time *2 (Approximately)	AR-203E/5420: 8.0 seconds (When user program 24 is set to OFF) 10.7 seconds (When user program 24 is set to ON) AR-M200/M201: 8.0 seconds (paper: A4 (8-1/2" x 11"), exposure mode: AUTO, copy ratio: 100%)
		AB system A4 (Landscape)	Copy speed (CPM)
		Same size	20
		Enlargement	20
		Reduction	20
		AB system B5 (Landscape)	Copy speed (CPM)
		Same size	20
		Enlargement	20
		Reduction	20
		Inch system 8-1/2" x 11" (Landscape)	Copy speed (CPM)
Max. continuous copy quantity			99
Void		Void area	Leading edge 1 - 4mm Trailing edge 4mm or less Side edge void area 0.5mm or more (per side) 4.5mm or less (total of both sides)
		Image loss	Leading edge same size: 3.0mm or less (OC) / 4mm or less (SPF) Enlarge: 1.5mm or less (OC) / 3mm or less (SPF) Reduction (50%): 6.0mm or less (OC) / 8mm or less (SPF)
			0 sec. Immediately the ready lamp is lit.
			0 sec. Immediately the ready lamp is lit.
Power save mode reset time			0 sec.
Paper jam recovery time			* Jam recovery condition: Recovery time from 60 sec of door open.

\*1: If a value greater than 200% or smaller than 50% is selected when the RSPF is used, the magnification ratio is automatically set to 200% or 50%.

\*2: The first-copy time is measured after the power save indicator turns off following power on, using the document glass with the polygon rotating in the copy ready state and "Selection of copy start state" set to ON in the user programs (A4 (8-1/2" x 11"), paper fed from paper tray).

The first-copy time may vary depending on machine operating conditions and ambient conditions such as temperature.

#### 4. GDI printer (AR-203E only)

Print speed	Max. 15ppm (excluding bypass tray, paper size A4, 8.5" x 11") (Variable depending on the PC performance)
Duplex	No
Memory	8MB
Interface	USB 2.0 (Full speed)
Emulation	GDI
Resolution	600dpi *1
Supported OS	Win 98 / Me / 2000 / XP / Vista
WHQL support	Yes *2

\*1: Engine Resolution

\*2: By running change

#### 5. SPLC printer (AR-M200/M201)

Print speed	Max. 20ppm (Paper size: A4, excluding manual paper feed) * Varies depending on the PC performance.
First print time	8 sec. (without data transfer time)
Duplex	Yes (AR-M201 only)
ROPM	Yes
Memory	64MB
Interface	USB2.0 (Hi Speed)
Network	Option: Network expansion kit the AR-NB2A
Emulation	SPLC (JBIG GDI)
MIB support	No
Resolution	600dpi *1
Supported OS	Windows 98/Me, Windows 2000 Professional, Windows XP Home Edition/Professional, Windows Vista
WHQL support	Yes *2
Application	Status window

\*1: Engine Resolution

\*2: Running change

#### 6. Scan function (AR-203E/M200/M201)

Type	Flat Bed Color Scanner
Scanning system	Original table/SPF/RSPF
Light source	3 CCDs (RGB) sensor scanning by lighting white lamp (2 pcs of CCFL)
Resolution	Optical: 600 x 1200dpi Setting range: 50 - 9600dpi (Preview resolution is fixed at 75dpi)
Originals	Sheet type / Book type
Output data	R, G, B 1 or 8 bits/pixel A/D 16 bits (12 bits actual)
Scan range	OC/SPF/RSPF: 216mm (H) x 356mm (V) (8.5" (H) x 14.0" (V)) Original position: Left Center SPF/RSPF position: Right Center
Scan speed	OC/SPF: Max. 2.88ms/line
Protocol	TWAIN / WIA (Only XP, Vista) / STI
Interface	AR-203E: USB2.0 (Full speed support) AR-M200/M201: USB2.0 (Hi speed support)
Scanner utility	Button Manager / Sharpdesk / Composer
Scan key/lamp	Yes
Duplex scan	Yes only when the RSPF is installed (AR-M200/M201)
Supported OS	Win 98 / Me / 2000 / XP / Vista
Void area	No
WHQL supported	Yes *1

\*1: By running change

### [3] CONSUMABLE PARTS

#### 1. Supply system table

##### A. Europe Subsidiary (AR-203E/5420/M200/M201), SCA/SCNZ (AR-203E/M201)

No.	Name	Content	Life	Product name	Packing form
1	Toner cartridge (Black)	Toner (Toner: Net Weight 243g) × 10 Polyethylene bag × 10	80K (8K × 10Pcs)	AR-208LT (A4 6% document)	One carton of the AR-208LT includes 10 toner cartridges.
2	Developer	Developer (Developer: Net Weight 170g) × 10	250K (25K × 10Pcs)	AR-208LD	One carton of the AR-208LD includes 10 developers.
3	Drum kit	Drum × 1 Drum fixing plate × 1	25K	AR-152DM	One carton of the collective package includes 10 units of the AR-152DM.

##### B. Asia Subsidiary (AR-203E/M201)

No.	Name	Content	Life	Product name	Packing form
1	Toner cartridge (Black)	Toner (Toner: Net Weight 243g) × 10 Polyethylene bag × 10	80K (8K × 10Pcs)	AR-208CT (A4 6% document)	One carton of the AR-208CT includes 10 toner cartridges.
2	Developer	Developer (Developer: Net Weight 170g) × 10	250K (25K × 10Pcs)	AR-208CD	One carton of the AR-208CD includes 10 developers.
3	Drum kit	Drum × 1 Drum fixing plate × 1	25K	AR-152DR	One carton of the collective package includes 10 units of the AR-152DR.

##### C. SMEF/Distributor (AR-203E/M201)

No.	Name	Content	Life	Product name	Packing form
1	Toner cartridge (Black)	Toner (Toner: Net Weight 243g) × 10 Polyethylene bag × 10	80K (8K × 10Pcs)	AR-208ET (A4 6% document)	One carton of the AR-208ET includes 10 toner cartridges.
2	Developer	Developer (Developer: Net Weight 170g) × 10	250K (25K × 10Pcs)	AR-208CD	One carton of the AR-208CD includes 10 developers.
3	Drum kit	Drum × 1 Drum fixing plate × 1	25K	AR-152DR	One carton of the collective package includes 10 units of the AR-152DR.

##### D. SRH (AR-203E/M201)

No.	Name	Content	Life	Product name	Packing form
1	Toner cartridge (Black)	Toner (Toner: Net Weight 243g) × 10 Polyethylene bag × 10	80K (8K × 10Pcs)	AR-208CT-C (A4 6% document)	One carton of the AR-208CT-C includes 10 toner cartridges.
2	Developer	Developer (Developer: Net Weight 170g) × 10	250K (25K × 10Pcs)	AR-208CD-C	One carton of the AR-208CD-C includes 10 developers.
3	Drum kit	Drum × 1 Drum fixing plate × 1	25K	AR-152DR-C	One carton of the collective package includes 10 units of the AR-152DR-C.

## 2. Environmental

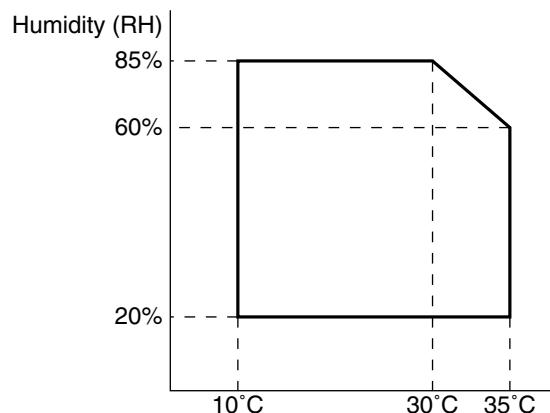
The environmental conditions for assuring the copy quality and the machine operations are as follows:

### (1) Normal operating condition

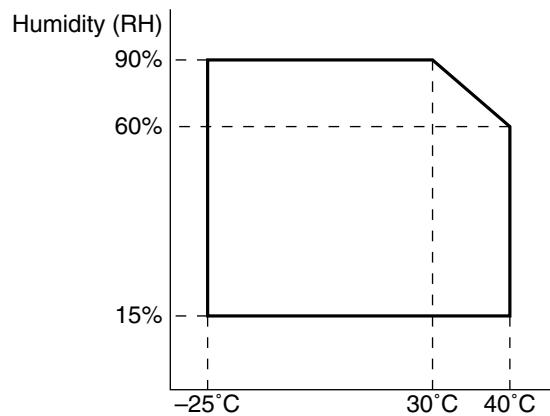
Temperature: 20 - 25°C

Humidity: 65 ± 5%RH

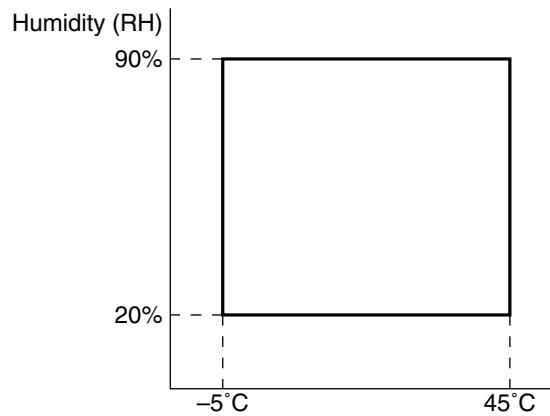
### (2) Acceptable operating condition



### (3) Transport condition

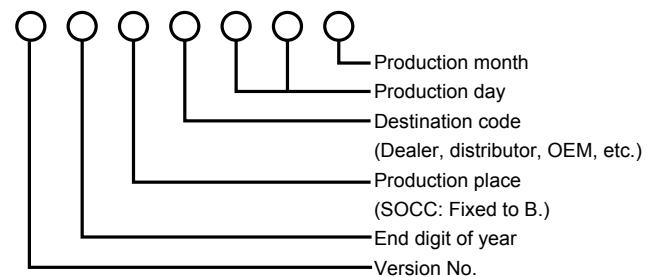


### (4) Supply storage condition



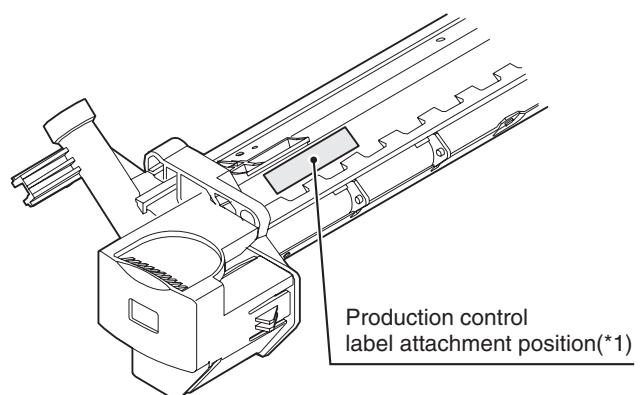
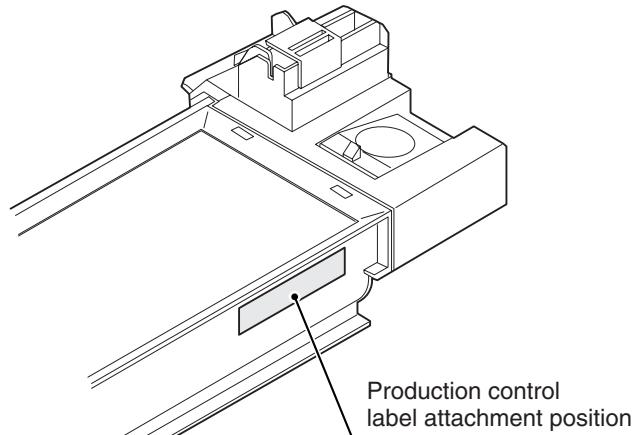
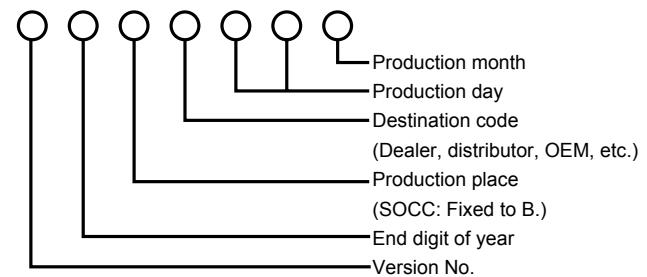
## 3. Production control number (lot No.) identification

### <Toner cartridge>



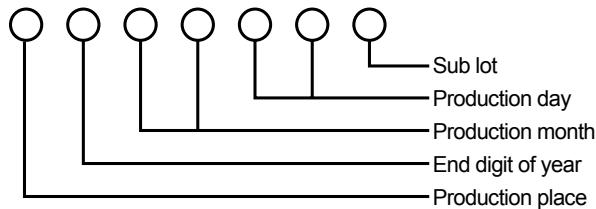
### <Drum cartridge>

The label on the drum cartridge shows the date of production.  
(SOCC production)



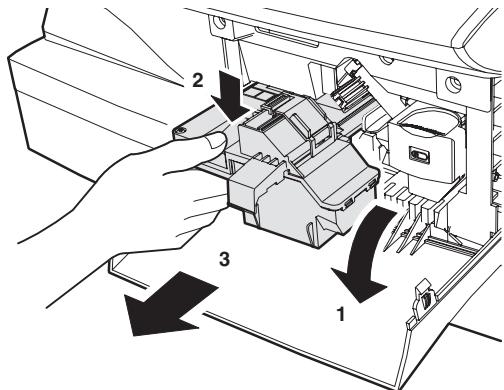
\*1: The production control label is not attached to the cartridge of a China product.

<Developer>

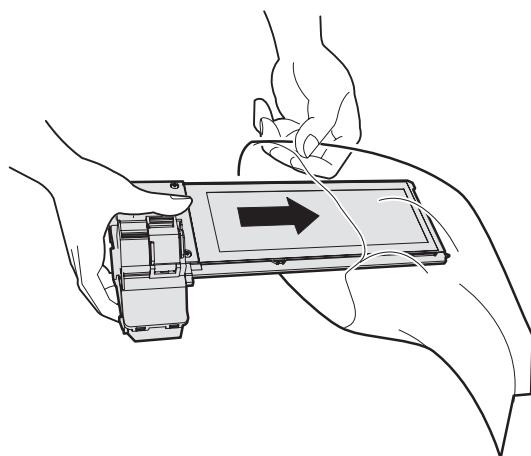


#### 4. Toner cartridge replacement

- 1) Open the front and side cabinets of the copier.
- 2) Keep holding Toner lever, and
- 3) Carefully pull out Toner unit from the copier.



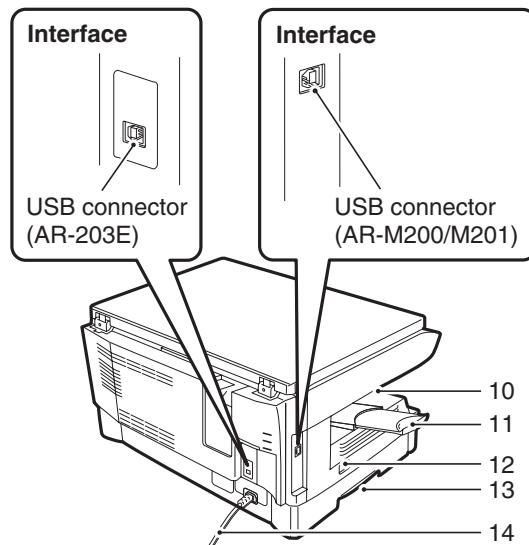
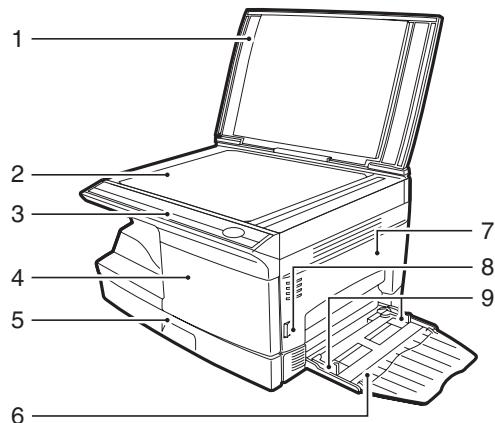
- 4) Put Toner unit in a collection bag immediately after removing it from the copier



Note: Never carry exposed Toner unit. Be sure to put it in the collection bag.

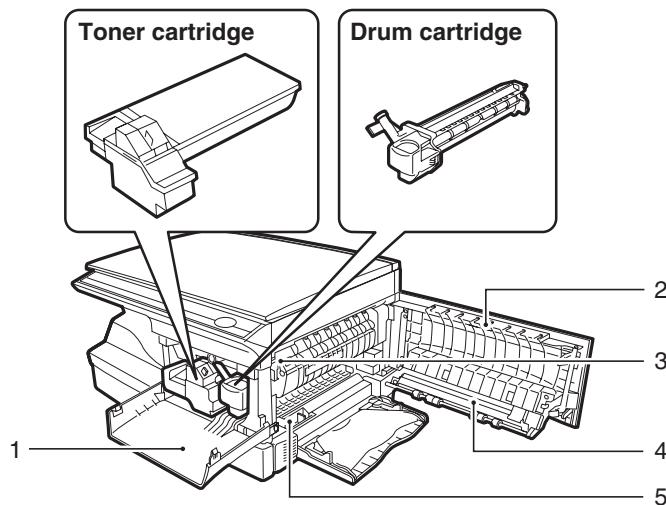
## [4] EXTERNAL VIEWS AND INTERNAL STRUCTURES

### 1. Appearance



1	Original cover	2	Document glass	3	Operation panel
4	Front cover	5	Paper tray	6	Multi-bypass tray
7	Side cover	8	Side cover open button	9	Bypass tray paper guides
10	Paper output tray	11	Paper output tray extension	12	Power switch
13	Handle	14	Power cord		

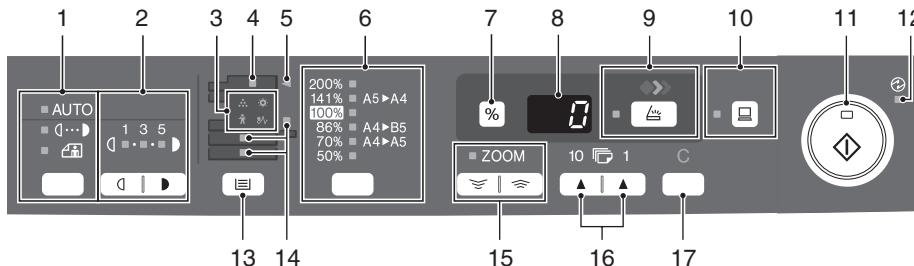
### 2. Internal



1	Front cover	2	Side cover	3	Fusing unit release lever
4	Transfer charger	5	Charger cleaner		

### 3. Operation panel

#### A. AR-203E/5420



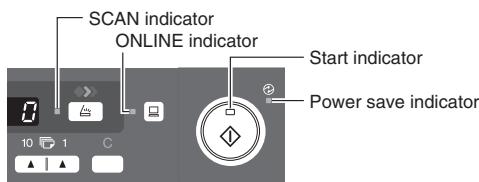
<b>1</b>	<b>Exposure mode selector key and indicators</b> Use to sequentially select the exposure modes: AUTO, MANUAL or PHOTO. Selected mode is shown by a lit indicator.	<b>2</b>	<b>Light and dark keys and indicators</b> Use to adjust the MANUAL or PHOTO exposure level. Selected exposure level is shown by a lit indicator. Use to start and terminate user program setting.
<b>3</b>	<b>Alarm indicators</b> Developer replacement required indicator Misfeed indicator Toner cartridge replacement required indicator *1 Maintenance indicator	<b>4</b>	<b>SPF indicator (AR-203E only)</b>
<b>5</b>	<b>SPF misfeed indicator (AR-203E only)</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>Copy ratio selector key and indicators</b> Use to sequentially select preset reduction/enlargement copy ratios. Selected copy ratio is shown by a lit indicator.
<b>7</b>	<b>Copy ratio display (%) key</b> • Use to verify a zoom setting without changing the zoom ratio. • Use to check the number of originals that must be returned to the document feeder tray if an original misfeed occurs while using the SPF.	<b>8</b>	<b>Display</b> Displays the specified copy quantity, zoom copy ratio, user program code, and error code.
<b>9</b>	<b>SCAN key and indicator (AR-203E only) *2, *3</b>	<b>10</b>	<b>ONLINE key and indicator (AR-203E only)</b> Lights up when the unit is used as a printer and scanner. *2
<b>11</b>	<b>Start key and indicator</b> • Copying is possible when the indicator is on. • Press to start copying • Use to set a user program.	<b>12</b>	<b>Power save indicator</b> Lights up when the unit is in a power save mode.
<b>13</b>	<b>Tray select key</b> Use to select a paper feed station (paper tray or multi-bypass tray).	<b>14</b>	<b>Paper feed location indicators</b> Light up to show the selected paper feed station.
<b>15</b>	<b>ZOOM keys and indicator</b> Use to select any reduction or enlargement copy ratio from 25% to 400% in 1% increments. (When the SPF is being used, the zoom copy ratio range is 50% to 200%).	<b>16</b>	<b>Copy quantity keys</b> • Use to select the desired copy quantity (1 to 99). • Use to make user program entries.
<b>17</b>	<b>Clear key</b> • Press to clear the display, or press during a copy run to terminate copying. • Press and hold down during standby to display the total number of copies made to date.		

#### \*1: Toner cartridge replacement

When toner density is lower than a specified level, the toner cartridge replacement indicator lights up to warn the user. If the toner cartridge is not replaced in that time, the ready lamp changes to blinking and then start to supply the toner after around 10 copies. (Cartridge replacement lamp continues to light.) If toner density is not back to specific level after two minutes, the ready indicator goes out and toner developer indicator starts blinking, and the copier stops. Also when the toner quantity is insufficient, the lamp is lighted.

#### \*2: Indicators on the operation panel

The ONLINE indicator and the start (○) indicator indicate the state of the printer or scanner.



#### Start indicator

On: Indicates the unit is ready for copying or scanning is being performed.

Blinking: The indicator blinks in the following situations:

- When a print job is interrupted.
- When reserving a copy job.
- When toner is being replenished during a copy or print job.

Off: The indicator is off in the following situations:

- During copying or scanning.
- The unit is in the auto power shut-off mode.
- When a misfeed or error has occurred.

#### ONLINE indicator

The ONLINE key is pressed and on line and off line are changed.

On: Indicates the unit is ready for printing or scanning is being performed. (On line)

Blinking: Printing or data is being received from a computer.

Off: Copying is being performed. (Off line)

### Power save indicator

- On: Indicates the unit is in a power save mode.  
 Blinking: Indicates that the unit is initializing (when the side cover is opened and closed or the power turned off and on).

### SCAN indicator

- On: The SCAN (SCAN) key has been pressed and the unit is in scanner mode.  
 Blinking: A scan job is being executed from the computer, or scan data is stored in the unit's memory.  
 Off: The unit is in the copy mode.

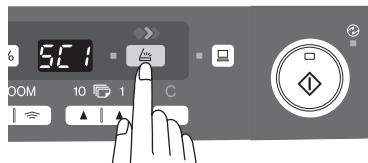
### \*3: Using the SCAN key to begin scanning

Note:

- Scanning is not possible during a copy job.
- If the SCAN (SCAN) key is pressed during a print job, the scan job will be stored.
- When scanning an original that has been placed in the SPF, only one original can be placed unless you are using Sharpdesk.

- 1) Press the SCAN (SCAN) key.

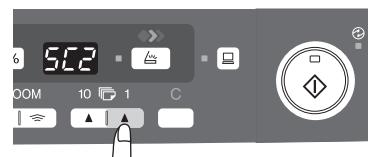
The unit enters scan mode.



- 2) Place the original you wish to scan on the document glass/SPF.

- 3) Press the right copy quantity key to display the number of the application that you wish to use for scanning.

The application numbers are initially as follows.



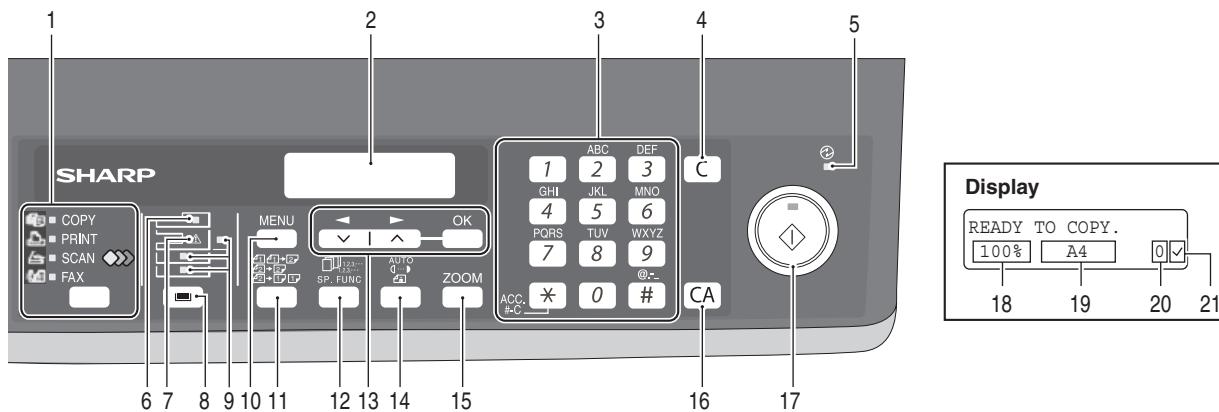
Application number	Application launched
SC2	E-mail (your standard e-mail program in the Windows OS you are using)
SC3	Fax (if a fax program is installed)
SC4	OCR (if an OCR program is installed)
SC5	Microsoft Word (if installed)
SC6	Filing (if a Filing program is installed)

- 4) Press the start (START) key.

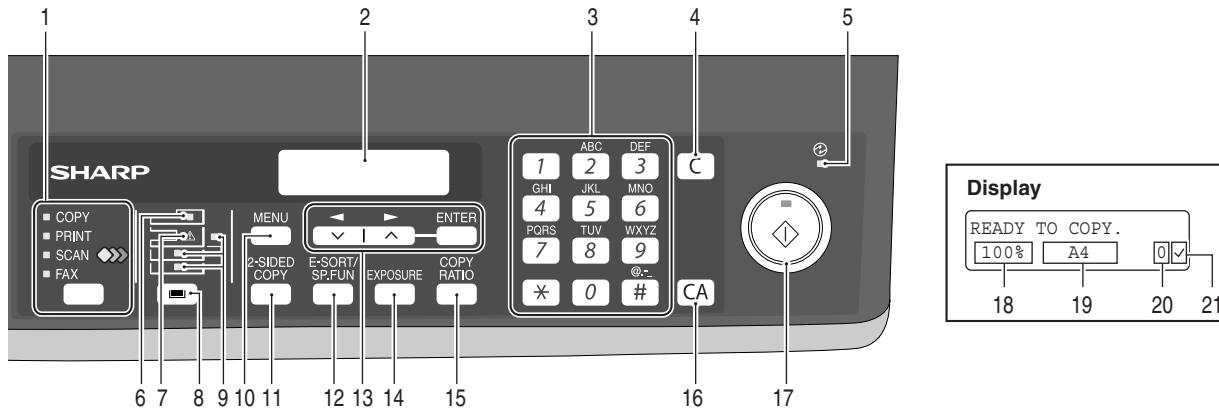
Scanning will start and the scanned data will be transferred to the application.

## B. AR-M200/M201

### For Europe

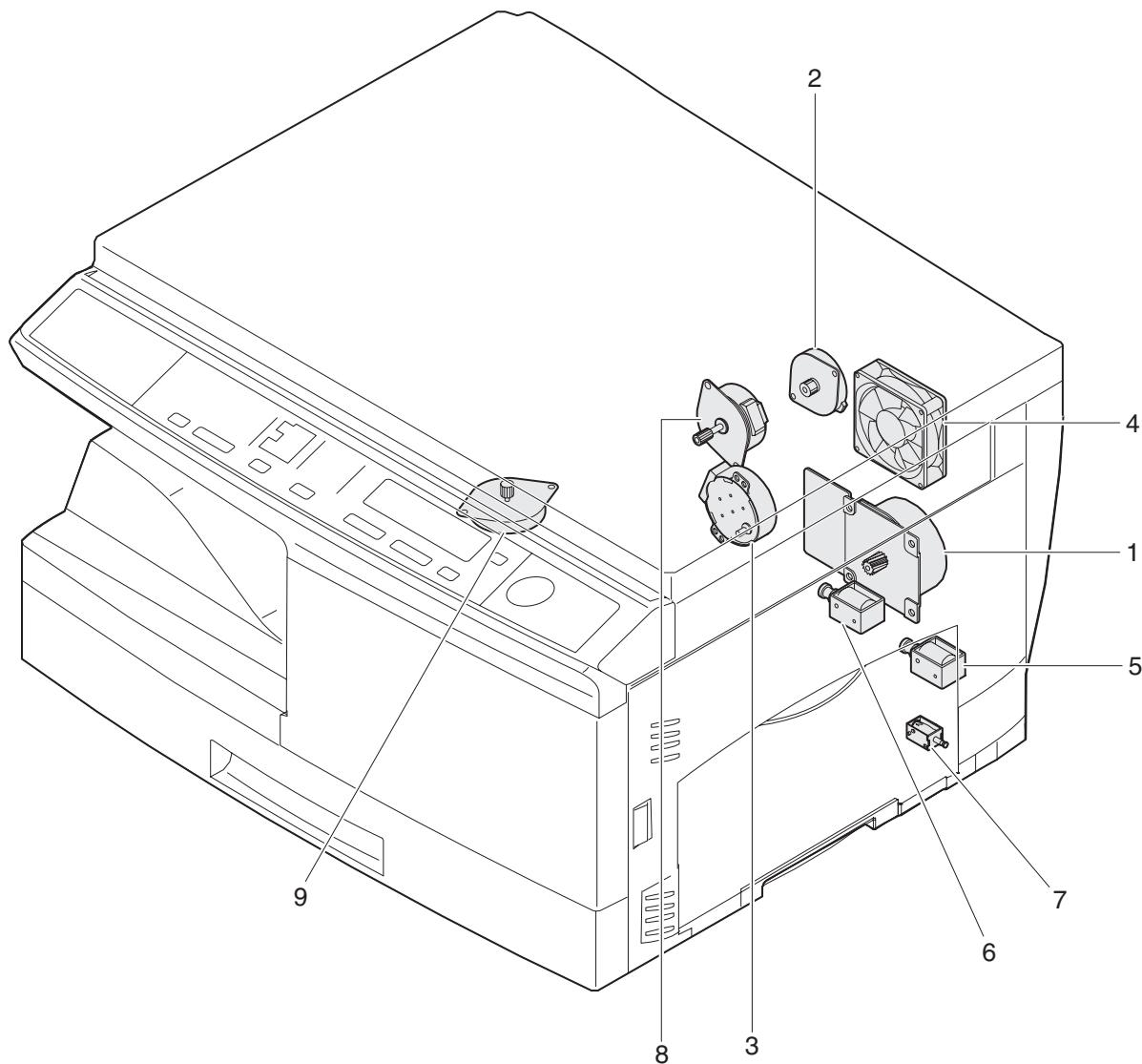


### For SCA/SCNZ/Asia



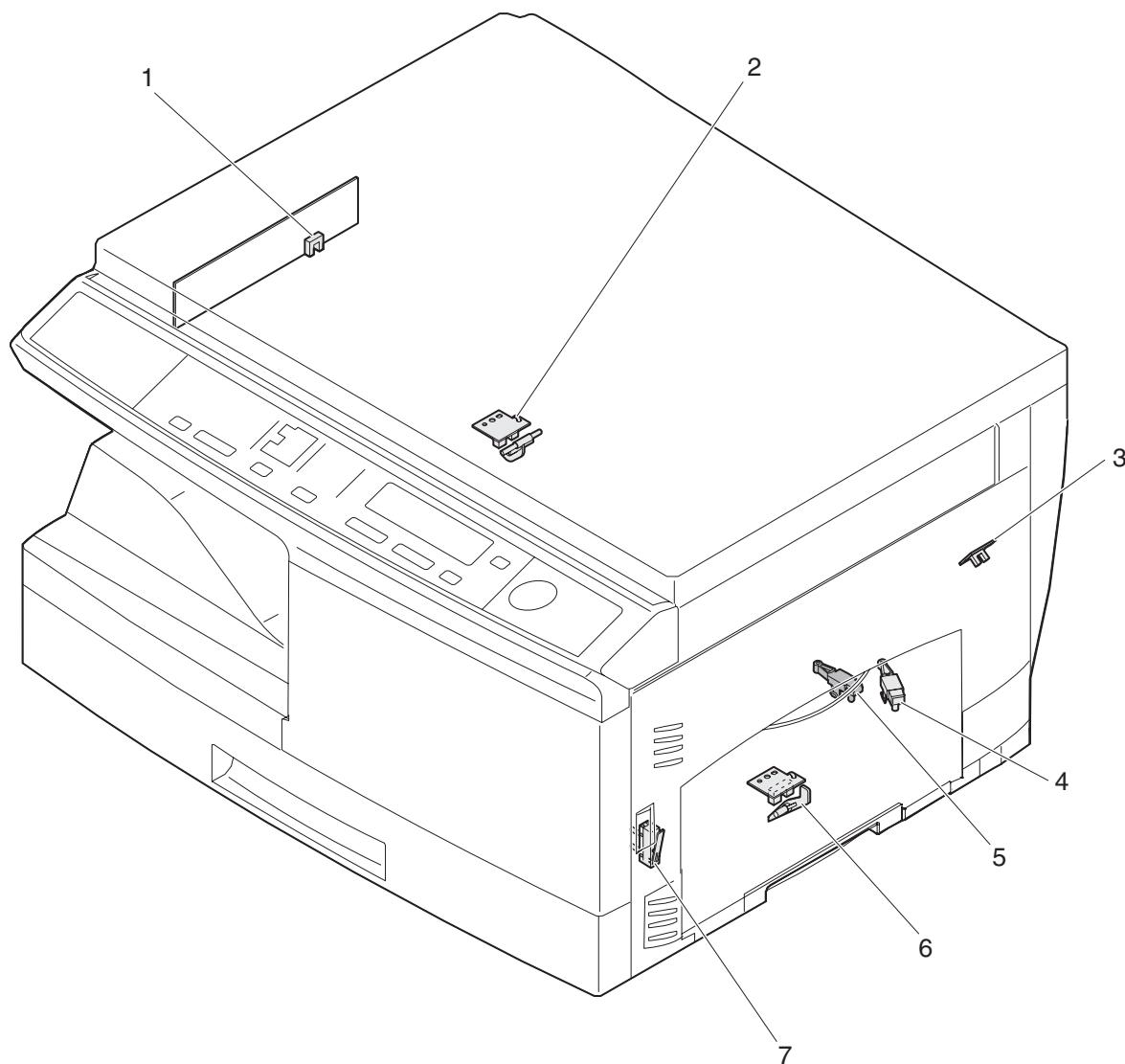
1	<b>[MODE SELECT] key / Mode indicators</b> Press this key to select the mode. The indicator of the selected mode lights (copy, printer, scanner, fax indicators).	2	<b>Display</b> This shows messages indicating the machine status and any problems that occur, as well as user programs and function setting menus.
3	<b>Numeric keys</b> Use these to enter the number of copies and other numerical settings. The keys can also be used to select items in function setting menus.	4	<b>[CLEAR] key (C)</b> Use this to clear the set number of copies, as well as cancel a job that is in progress. When a setting menu appears, use this key to move back to the previous menu level.
5	<b>Power save indicator</b> This lights up when the power save function is activated.	6	<b>RSPF indicator</b> This lights up when an original is placed in the RSPF.
7	<b>Error indicator</b> This lights steadily or blinks when a paper misfeed or other error occurs.	8	<b>[TRAY SELECT] key (■)</b> Use to select the paper tray that has the desired paper for copying.
9	<b>Tray location indicator</b> Indicates the selected paper tray. The indicator blinks when the tray is out of paper during operation or is not closed properly.	10	<b>[MENU] key</b> Press this key to select the paper size for copying, to configure a user program or to display the total count.
11	<b>[2-SIDED SCAN] key (↔↔↔)</b> <b>[2-SIDED COPY] key (↔↔↔)</b> Press to select the automatic two-sided copying mode.	12	<b>[E-SORT/SP.FUNC] key (SP. FUNC)</b> Press to select the sort function, 2 IN 1 copy function, or margin shift function.
13	<b>[◀] key (◀), [▶] key (▶), [OK]/[ENTER] key</b> Press the [◀] key (◀) or [▶] key (▶) to select an item in a function setting menu. Press the [OK]/[ENTER] key to enter a selection.	14	<b>[EXPOSURE] key (AUTO)</b> Use to switch from auto exposure adjustment to text mode or photo mode.
15	<b>[ZOOM]/[COPY RATIO] key</b> Press to select an enlargement or reduction ratio. To select a preset ratio setting, press the [ZOOM]/[COPY RATIO] key and select the desired preset ratio. To select a ratio that is not preset, press the [ZOOM]/[COPY RATIO] key, select the preset ratio that is closest to the desired ratio, and then press the [◀] key (◀) or [▶] key (▶) to increase or decrease the ratio in increments of 1%.	16	<b>[CLEAR ALL] key (CA)</b> This returns all functions to the default settings. When pressed in a setting menu, this returns the settings and display to the initial state.
17	<b>[START] key (○) / Ready indicator</b> The ready indicator lights up when copying or scanning is possible. To begin copying, press the [START] key (○). The [START] key (○) is also pressed to return to normal operation from auto power shut-off mode.	18	Shows the current copy ratio.
19	Shows the selected paper size.	20	Shows the number of copies that has been entered with the numeric keys.
21	A checkmark "✓" appears when the exposure has been changed, or when two-sided copying, sort, 2 IN 1, or margin shift is selected.		

#### 4. Motors and solenoids



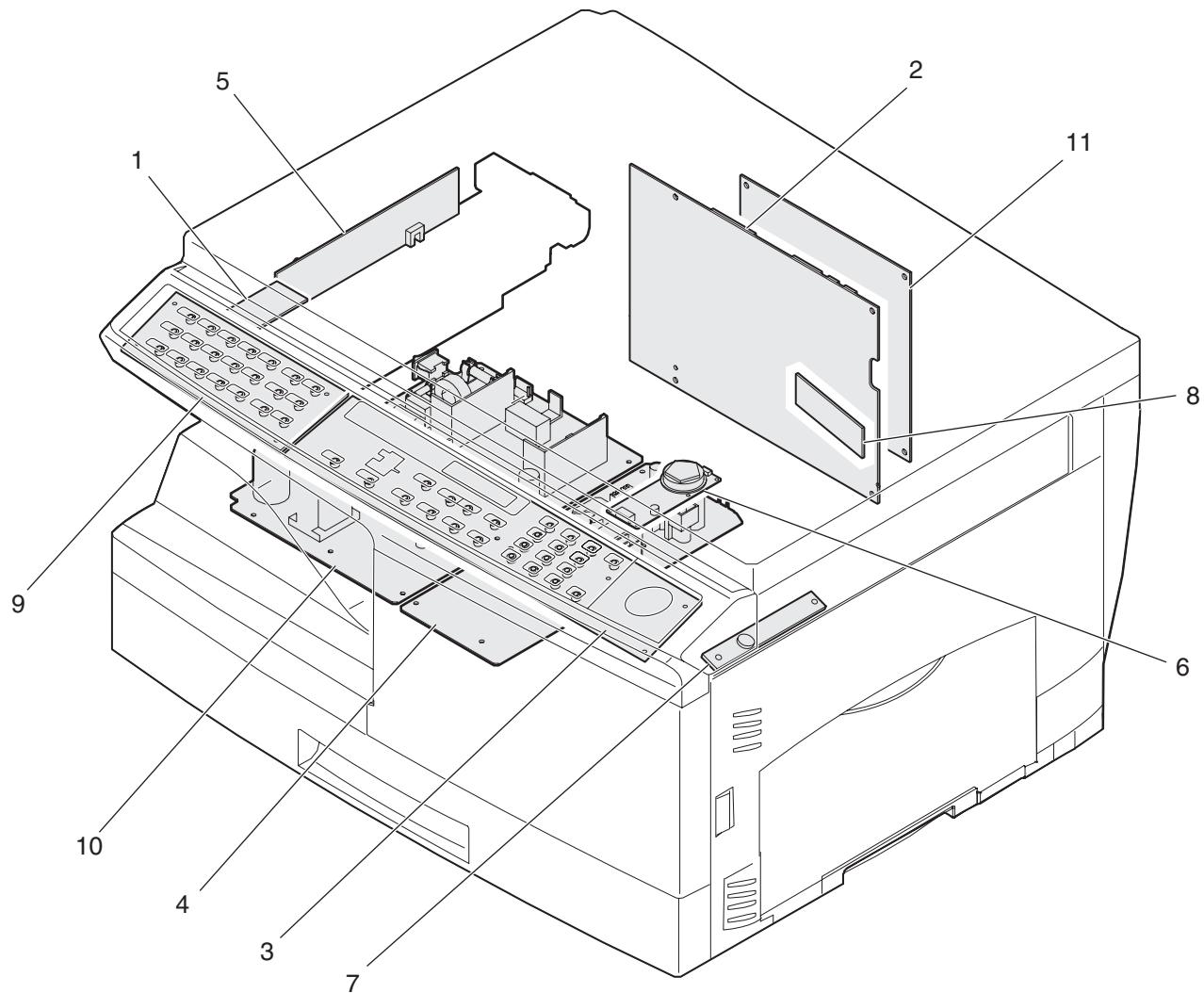
No.	Part name	Control signal	Function / Operation
1	Main motor	MM	Drives the copier.
2	Scanner motor	MRMT	Drives the optical mirror base (scanner unit).
3	Toner motor	TM	Supplies toner.
4	Cooling fan motor	VFM	Cools the optical, fusing section.
5	Resist roller solenoid	RRS	Resist roller rotation control solenoid
6	Paper feed solenoid	CPFS1	Cassette Paper feed solenoid 1
7	Multi paper feed solenoid	MPFS	Multi manual pages feed solenoid
8	Duplex motor	DMT	Devices the duplex paper transport section (AR-M201 only)
9	Shifter motor	SFTM	Drives the shifter. (AR-M200/M201)

## 5. Sensors and switches



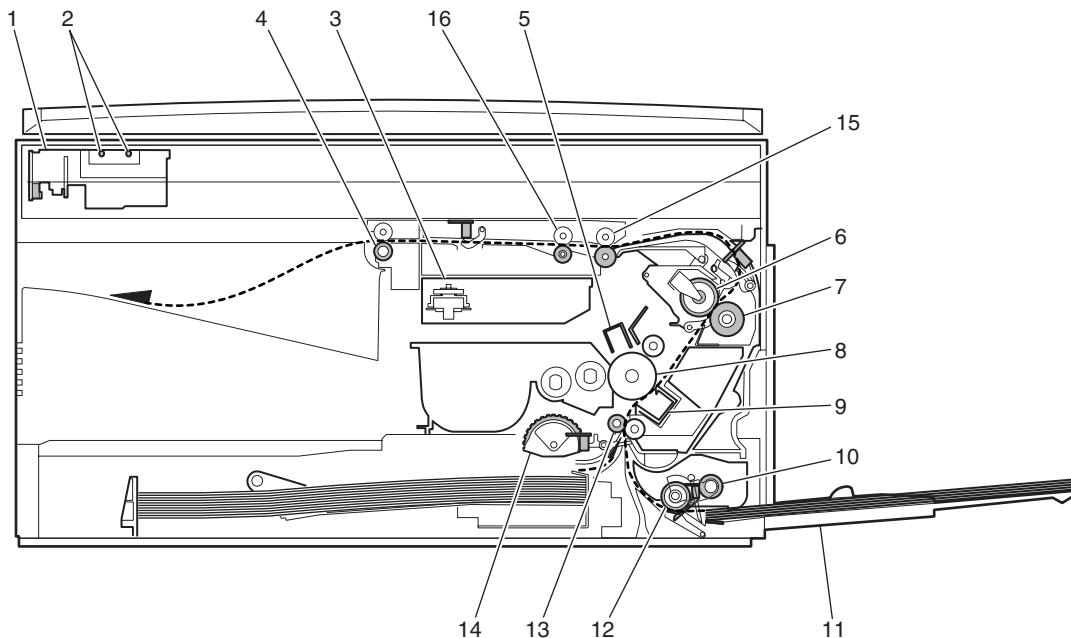
No.	Name	Signal	Type	Function	Output
1	Scanner unit home position sensor	MHPS	Transmission sensor	Scanner unit home position detection	"H" at home position
2	POD sensor	POD	Transmission sensor	Paper exit detection	"H" at paper pass
3	PPD2 sensor	PPD2	Transmission sensor	Paper transport detection 2	"L" at paper pass
4	Cassette detection switch	CED1	Micro-switch	Cassette installation detection	"H" at cassette insertion
5	PD1 sensor (AR-M200/M201)	PD1	Micro-switch	Paper width detect	"H" at A4 size or less "L" at A4 size or more
6	PPD1 sensor	PPD1	Transmission sensor	Paper transport detection 1	"L" at paper pass
7	Door switch	DSW	Micro-switch	Door open/close detection (safety switch for 24V)	1 or 0V of 24V at door open

## 6. PWB unit



No.	Name	Function
1	Exposure lamp invertor PWB	Exposure lamp (CCFL) control
2	Main PWB (MCU)	Copier control
3	Operation PWB	Operation input/display
4	High voltage PWB	High voltage control
5	CCD sensor PWB	For image scanning
6	LSU motor PWB	For polygon motor drive
7	TCS PWB	For toner sensor control
8	LSU PWB	For laser control
9	FAX-operation PWB	FAX operation input (AR-FX13 option)
10	Power PWB	AC power input, DC voltage control
11	Modem PWB	FAX control (AR-FX13 option)

## 7. Cross sectional view



No.	Part name	Function and operation
1	Scanner unit	Illuminates the original with the copy lamp and passes the reflected light to the lens unit (CCD).
2	Exposure lamp	Exposure lamp (CCFL) Illuminates original
3	LSU (Laser unit)	Converts the original image signal into laser beams and writes onto the drum.
4	Paper exit roller Shifter roller	Roller for paper exit (AR-203E/5420) Transports and shifts paper in the back-forth direction of the machine. (AR-M200/M201)
5	Main charger	Provides negative charges evenly to the drum surface.
6	Heat roller	Fuses toner on the paper. (Teflon roller)
7	Pressure roller	Fuses toner on the paper. (Silicon rubber roller)
8	Drum	Forms images.
9	Transfer unit	Transfers images onto the drum.
10	Pickup roller	Picks up the manual feed paper. (In multi feed only)
11	Manual paper feed tray	Tray for manual feed paper
12	Manual paper feed roller	Transport the paper from the manual paper feed port.
13	PS roller unit	Takes synchronization between the lead edge and the rear edge of the paper.
14	Paper feed roller	Picks up a sheet of paper from the cassette.
15	Paper transport roller	Transports of a paper.
16	Paper transport roller 2	Transports of a paper. (AR-M200/M201)

## [5] UNPACKING AND INSTALLATION

### 1. Copier installation

Improper installation may damage the copier. Please note the following during initial installation and whenever the copier is moved.

Caution: If the copier is moved from a cool place to a warm place, condensation may form inside the copier. Operation in this condition will cause poor copy quality and malfunctions.

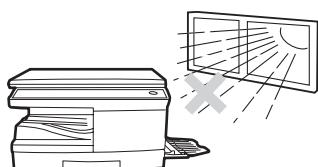
Leave the copier at room temperature for at least 2 hours before use.

Do not install your copier in areas that are:

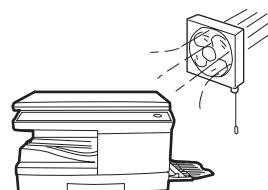
- damp, humid, or very dusty



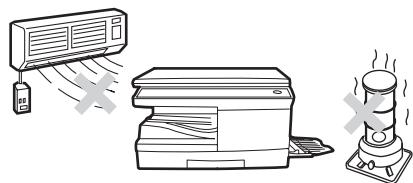
- exposed to direct sunlight



- poorly ventilated



- subject to extreme temperature or humidity changes, e.g., near an air conditioner or heater.

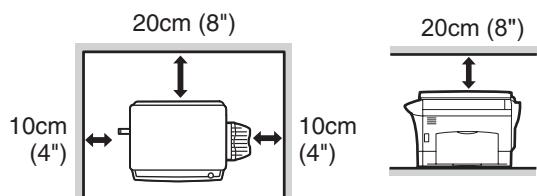


The copier should be installed near an accessible power outlet for easy connection.

Be sure to connect the power cord only to a power outlet that meets the specified voltage and current requirements.

Also make certain the outlet is properly grounded.

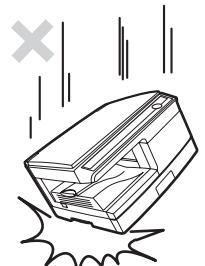
Be sure to allow the required space around the machine for servicing and proper ventilation.



### 2. Cautions on handling

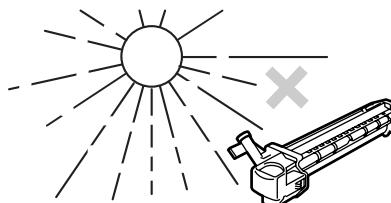
Be careful in handling the copier as follows to maintain the performance of this copier.

Do not drop the copier, subject it to shock or strike it against any object.



Do not expose the drum cartridge to direct sunlight.

Doing so will damage the surface (green portion) of the drum cartridge, causing poor print quality.



Store spare supplies such as drum cartridges and toner cartridges in a dark place without removing from the package before use.

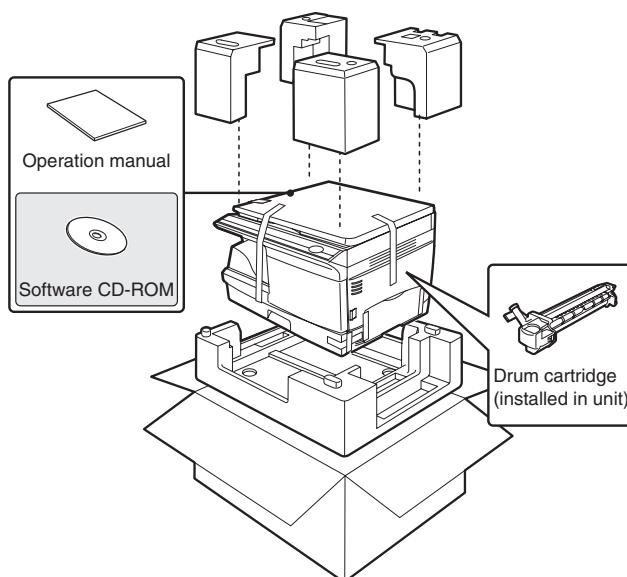
If they are exposed to direct sunlight, poor print quality may result.

Do not touch the surface (green portion) of the drum cartridge.

Doing so will damage the surface of the cartridge, causing poor print quality.

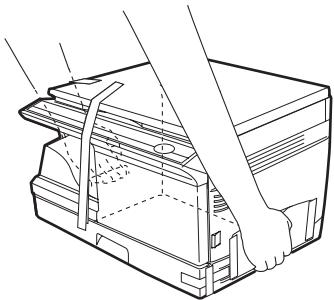
### 3. Checking packed components and accessories

Open the carton and check if the following components and accessories are included.

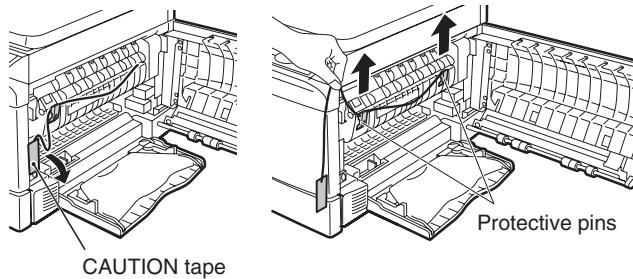


## 4. Unpacking

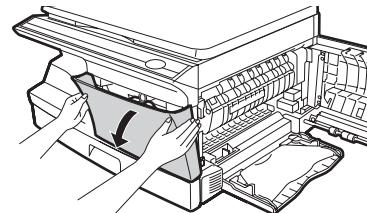
Be sure to hold the handles on both sides of the unit to unpack the unit and carry it to the installation location.



- 2) Remove the CAUTION tape from the front cover and remove the two protective pins from the fusing unit by pulling the strings upward one at a time.

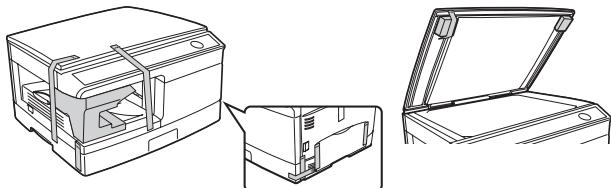


- 3) Push gently on both sides of the front cover to open the cover.



## 5. Removing protective packing materials

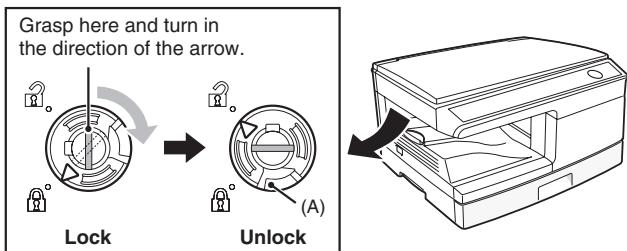
- 1) Remove all pieces of tape shown in the illustration below. Then open the original cover and remove protective materials.



- 2) Release the scan head locking switch.

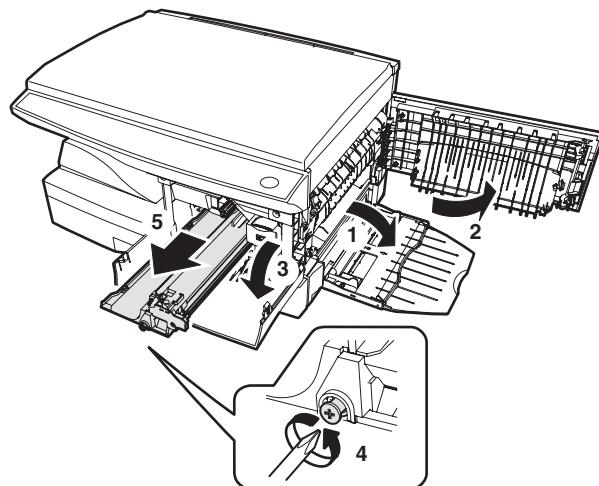
The scan head locking switch is under the document glass.

If the switch is locked (🔒), the unit will not operate. Unlock the switch (🔓) as shown below.



To lock the scan head locking switch, hold up the catch in illustration (A) and turn the center knob counter-clockwise 90 degrees until you hear a click.

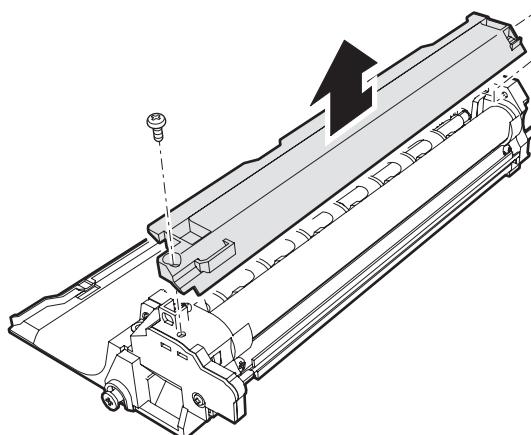
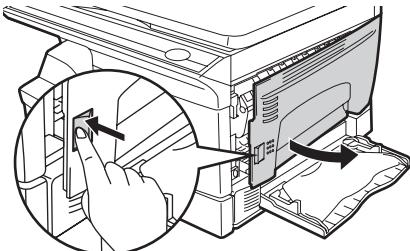
- 4) Remove the locking tape of the developer unit.
- 5) Remove the screw which is fixing the copier and Developer unit.
- 6) Remove Developer unit slowly from the copier.



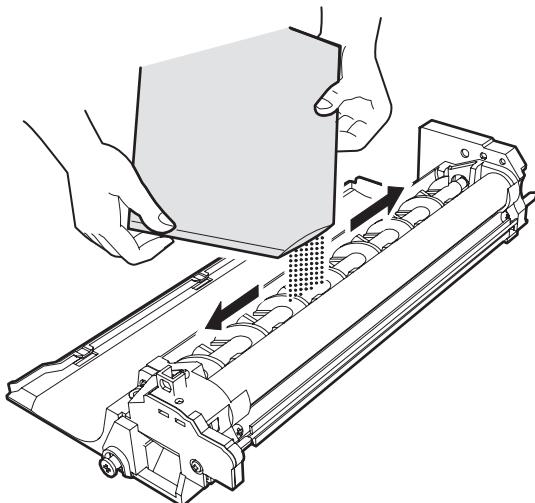
- 7) Remove the screw (1 pc).
- 8) Remove Upper developer unit.

## 6. Developer unit installation

- 1) Open the multi-bypass tray, and then open the side cover.

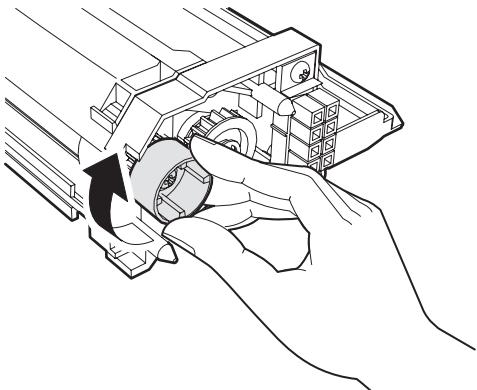


- 9) Shake the aluminum bag to stir developer.
- 10) Supply developer from the aluminum bag to the top of the MX roller evenly.



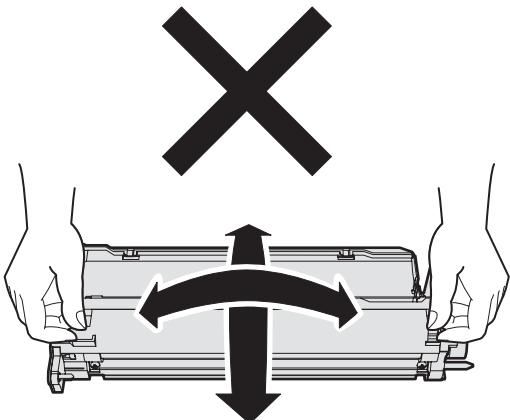
Note: Be careful not to splash developer outside Developer unit.

- 11) Attach Upper developer unit and fix it with a screw.
- 12) Rotate the MG roller gear to distribute developer evenly.



Note: Never rotate the gear in the reverse direction.

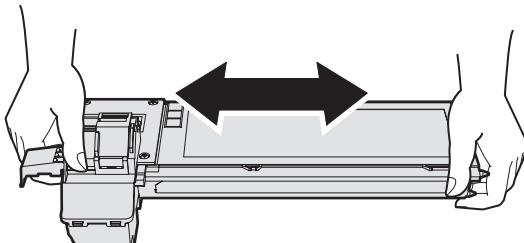
Note: When carrying Developer unit, do not tilt it extremely as shown with the arrow in the figure below.  
(Prevention of splash of developer)



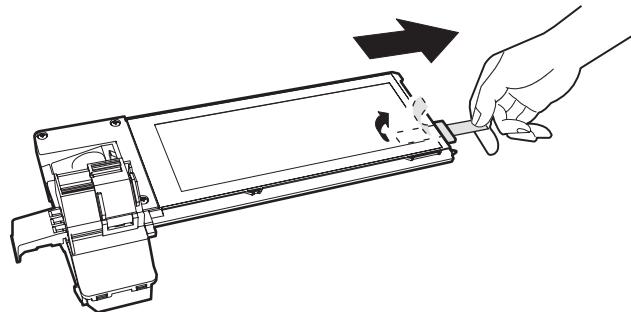
- 13) Insert Developer unit carefully into the copier.
- Note: Quick insertion may result in splash of developer. Be sure to insert carefully.
- 14) Confirm that Developer unit is completely inserted to the bottom of the machine, fix Developer unit and the machine with a screw.
- 15) Completion of Developer unit installation

## 7. Toner cartridge installation

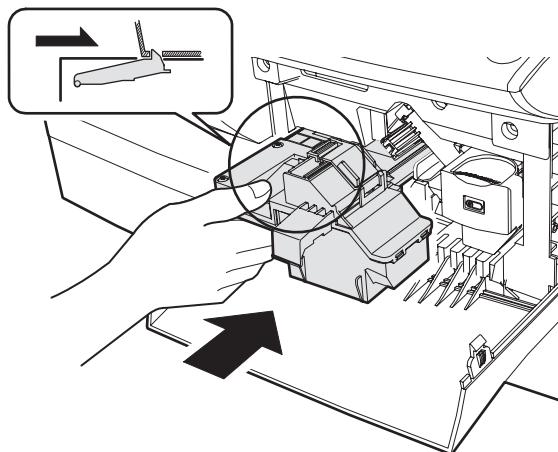
- 1) To prevent against uneven distribution of toner, hold Toner unit with both hands and shake it several times horizontally.



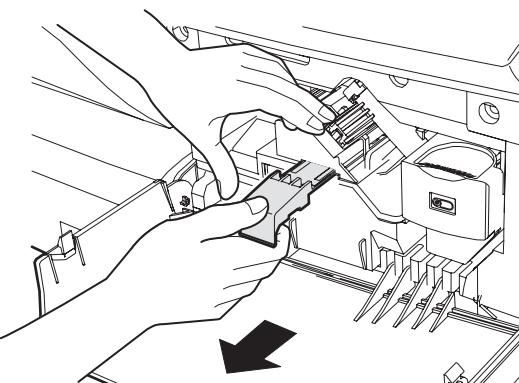
- 2) Hold the section of Toner unit shown in the figure below, remove the packing tape, and remove the cushion.
- 3) Pull out the cushion in the arrow direction.



- 4) Insert Toner unit carefully into the copier.
- 5) Insert until the hook is engaged with the copier as shown in the figure below.



- 6) Pull out the shutter in the arrow direction.

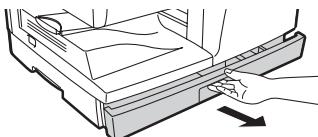


Note: Do not hold and carry the shutter. Otherwise the shutter may drop and Toner unit may drop.

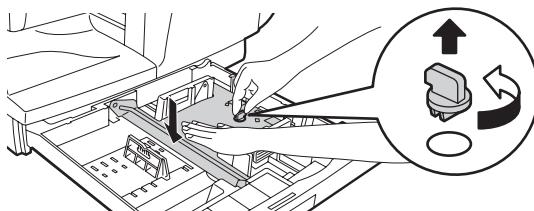
- 7) Completion of Toner unit installation  
Close the front and side cabinets.

## 8. Loading paper

- 1) Raise the handle of the paper tray and pull the paper tray out until it stops.

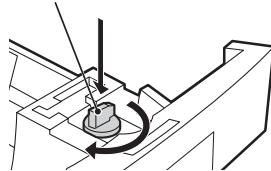


- 2) Remove the pressure plate lock. Rotate the pressure plate lock in the direction of the arrow to remove it while pressing down the pressure plate of the paper tray.

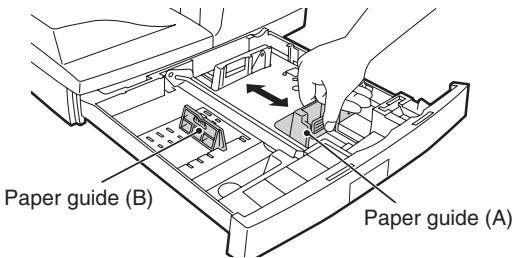


- 3) Store the pressure plate lock which has been removed in step 2). To store the pressure plate lock, rotate the lock to fix it on the relevant location.

Pressure plate lock

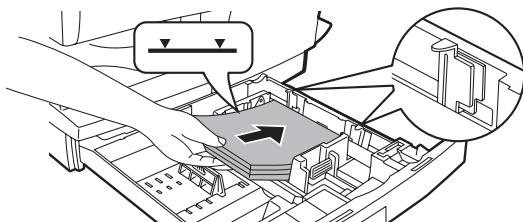


- 4) Adjust the paper guides on the paper tray to the copy paper width and length. Squeeze the lever of paper guide (A) and slide the guide to match with the width of the paper. Move paper guide (B) to the appropriate slot as marked on the tray.



- 5) Fan the paper and insert it into the tray. Make sure the edges go under the corner hooks.

Note: Do not load paper above the maximum height line (▼▼). Exceeding the line will cause a paper misfeed.



- 6) Gently push the paper tray back into the unit.

## 9. Power to copier

Ensure that the power switch of the unit is in the OFF position. Plug the other end of the power cord into the nearest outlet. Turn the power switch on the left side of the unit to the "ON" position. The start (⑧) indicator will light up and other indicators which show the initial settings of the operation panel will also light up to indicate the ready condition.

## 10. Software (AR-203E/M200/M201)

The CD-ROM that accompanies the machine contains the following software:

### MFP driver

### Printer driver

The printer driver enables you to use the printer function of the machine.

The printer driver includes the Print Status Window. This is a utility that monitors the machine and informs you of the printing status, the name of the document currently being printed, and error messages.

Please note that the Print Status Window does not operate when the machine is used as a network printer.

### Scanner driver\*

The scanner driver allows you to use the scanning function of the machine with TWAIN-compliant and WIA-compliant applications.

### Sharpdesk\* (Excluding AR-203E X)

Sharpdesk is an integrated software environment that makes it easy to manage documents and image files, and launch applications.

### Button Manager\*

Button Manager allows you to use the scanner menus on the machine to scan a document.

\*: The scanning feature can only be used with computers that are connected to the machine by a USB cable.

## A. Before installation

### Hardware and software requirements

Check the following hardware and software requirements in order to install the software.

Computer type	IBM PC/AT or compatible computer equipped with a USB 2.0/1.1*1
Operating system*2 *3	Windows 98, Windows Me, Windows 2000 Professional*4, Windows XP Professional*4, Windows XP Home Edition*4, Windows Vista*4
Display	1024 x 768 dots (XGA) display with 16bit
Hard disk free space	150 MB or more
Other hardware requirements	An environment on which any of the operating systems listed above can fully operate

\*1: Compatible with Windows 98, Windows Me, Windows 2000 Professional, Windows XP Professional, Windows XP Home Edition or Windows Vista preinstalled model standardly equipped with a USB port.

\*2: Printing is not available in MS-DOS mode.

\*3: The machine does not support printing from a Macintosh environment.

\*4: Administrator's rights are required to install the software using the installer.

### Installation environment and usable software

The following table shows the drivers and software that can be installed for each version of Windows and interface connection method.

Cable	Operating system	Printer driver	Scanner driver	Button Manager	Sharpdesk
USB	Windows 98/Me/2000/XP/Vista	Available*1			Available

\*1: The printer driver that is installed will vary depending on the type of connection between the machine and your computer.

**Install the software according to the Operation Manual.**

## B. Installing the software

Note:

- The screen images in this manual are mainly for Windows XP. With other versions of Windows, some screen images may be different from those in this manual.
- In the following explanations it is assumed that the mouse is configured for right hand operation.
- If an error message appears, follow the instructions on the screen to solve the problem. After the problem is solved, the installation procedure will continue. Depending on the problem, you may have to click the "Cancel" button to exit the installer. In this case, reinstall the software from the beginning after solving the problem.

- The USB cable must not be connected to the machine. Make sure that the cable is not connected before proceeding.

If the cable is connected, a Plug and Play window will appear. If this happens, click the "Cancel" button to close the window and disconnect the cable.

Note: The cable will be connected in step 13).

- Insert the CD-ROM into your computer's CD-ROM drive.
- Click the "start" button, click "My Computer", and then double-click the CD-ROM icon.
  - In Windows Vista, click the "Start" button, click "Computer", and then double-click the CD-ROM icon.
  - In Windows 98/Me/2000, double-click "My Computer", and then double-click the CD-ROM icon.

- Double-click the "setup" icon.

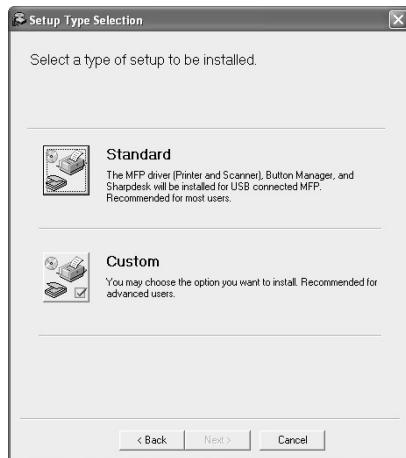
In Windows Vista, if a message screen appears asking you for confirmation, click "Allow".

- The "SOFTWARE LICENSE" window will appear. Make sure that you understand the contents of the software license, and then click the "Yes" button.

Note: You can show the "SOFTWARE LICENSE" in a different language by selecting the desired language from the language menu. To install the software in the selected language, continue the installation with that language selected.

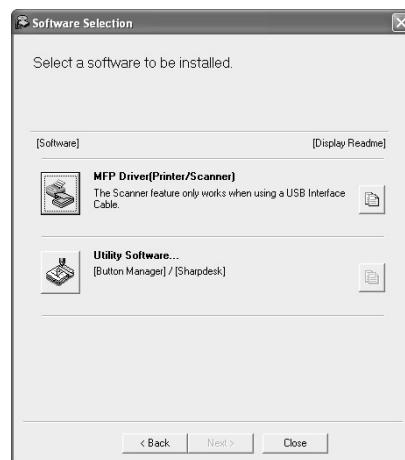
- Read the "Readme First" in the "Welcome" window and then click the "Next" button.
- To install all of the software, click the "Standard" button and go to step 12).

To install particular packages, click the "Custom" button and go to next step.

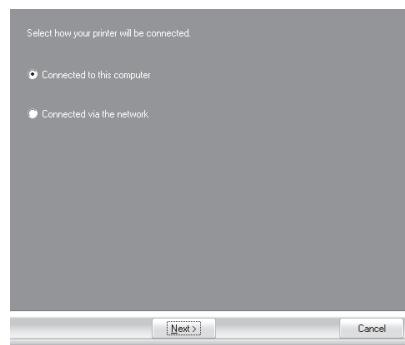


- Click the "MFP Driver" button.

Click the "Display Readme" button to show information on packages that are selected.



- Select "Connected to this computer" and click the "Next" button. Follow the on-screen instructions.



**Caution:**

- If you are using Windows Vista and a security warning window appears, be sure to click "Install this driver software anyway".
  - If you are running Windows 2000/XP and a warning message appears regarding the Windows logo test or digital signature, be sure to click "Continue Anyway" or "Yes".
- You will return to the window of step 8). If you wish to install Button Manager or Sharpdesk, click the "Utility Software" button. If you do not wish to install the Utility Software, click the "Close" button and go to step 12).

**Note:** After the installation, a message prompting you to restart your computer may appear. In this case, click the "Yes" button to restart your computer.

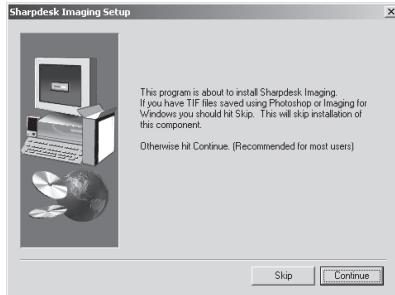
## Installing the Utility Software

- 11) Click the "Button Manager" or the "Sharpdesk" button.  
Click the "Display Readme" button to show information on packages that are selected.  
Follow the on-screen instructions.



Caution: In Windows 98/Me/2000, if the following screen appears, click the "Skip" button or the "Continue" button as appropriate to continue the Sharpdesk installation.

- If "Skip" is selected, the Sharpdesk installation will continue without installing Sharpdesk Imaging.  
If "Continue" is selected, Sharpdesk Imaging will be installed. If Imaging for Windows is installed on your computer, Sharpdesk Imaging will overwrite Imaging for Windows.



- 12) When installing is finished, click the "Close" button.

Caution:

- If you are using Windows Vista and a security warning window appears, be sure to click "Install this driver software anyway".
- If you are running Windows 2000/XP and a warning message appears regarding the Windows logo test or digital signature, be sure to click "Continue Anyway" or "Yes".

A message will appear instructing you to connect the machine to your computer. Click the "OK" button.

Note: After the installation, a message prompting you to restart your computer may appear. In this case, click the "Yes" button to restart your computer.

- 13) Make sure that the power of the machine is turned on, and then connect the USB cable.

Windows will detect the machine and a Plug and Play screen will appear.

- 14) Follow the instructions in the plug and play window to install the driver.

Follow the on-screen instructions.

Caution:

- If you are using Windows Vista and a security warning window appears, be sure to click "Install this driver software anyway".
- If you are running Windows 2000/XP and a warning message appears regarding the Windows logo test or digital signature, be sure to click "Continue Anyway" or "Yes".

### This completes the installation of the software.

- If you installed Button Manager, set up Button Manager as explained in "C. Setting up Button Manager".
- If you installed Sharpdesk, the Sharpdesk setup screen will appear. Follow the instructions in the screen to set up Sharpdesk.

### (1) Connecting a USB cable

Follow the procedure below to connect the machine to your computer.

A USB cable for connecting the machine to your computer is not included with the machine. Please purchase the appropriate cable for your computer.

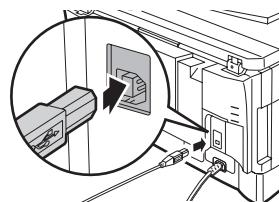
Caution:

- USB is available with a PC/AT compatible computer that was originally equipped with USB and had Windows 98, Windows Me, Windows 2000 Professional, Windows XP or Windows Vista pre-installed.
- Do not connect the USB cable before installing the printer driver. The USB cable should be connected during installation of the printer driver.

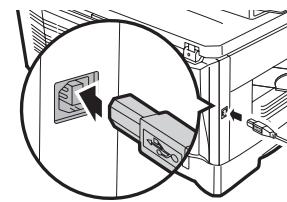
Note

- If the machine will be connected using a USB 2.0 port of your computer, please purchase a USB cable that supports USB 2.0.
  - To obtain the fastest USB 2.0 data transfer speed, "USB2.0 MODE SWITCH" in the machine's user programs must be set to "HI-SPEED". For more information, see "[12] USER PROGRAM". (AR-M200/M201 only)
  - Use the machine's "HI-SPEED" mode only when using a computer that is running Windows 2000/XP/Vista.
  - Even when the Microsoft USB 2.0 driver is used, it may not be possible to obtain full USB 2.0 speed if a PC card supporting USB 2.0 is used. To obtain the latest driver (which may enable a higher speed), contact the manufacturer of your PC card.
  - Connection is also possible using a USB 1.1 port on your computer.
- However, the specifications will be USB 1.1 specifications (Full-Speed).

- 1) Insert the cable into the USB connector on the machine.



(AR-203E)



(AR-M200/M201)

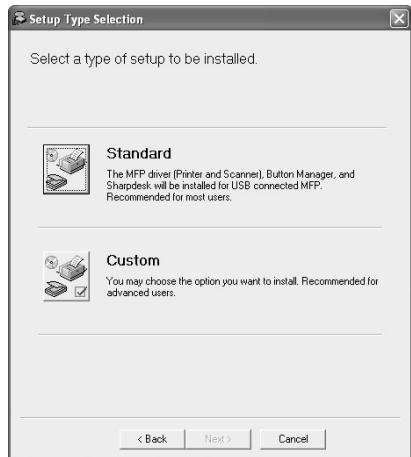
- 2) Insert the other end of the cable into your computer's USB port.

## (2) Using the machine as a shared printer (AR-203E/M200/M201)

If the machine will be used as a shared printer on a network, follow these steps to install the printer driver in the client computer.

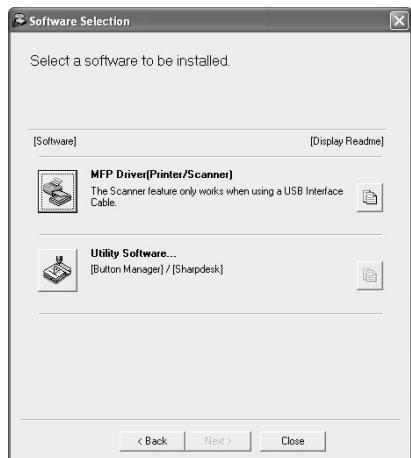
Note: To configure the appropriate settings in the print server, see the operation manual or help file of your operating system.

- 1) Perform steps 2) through 6) in "Installing the software".
- 2) Click the "Custom" button.

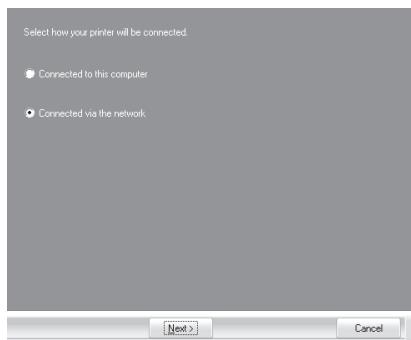


- 3) Click the "MFP Driver" button.

Click the "Display Readme" button to show information on packages that are selected.

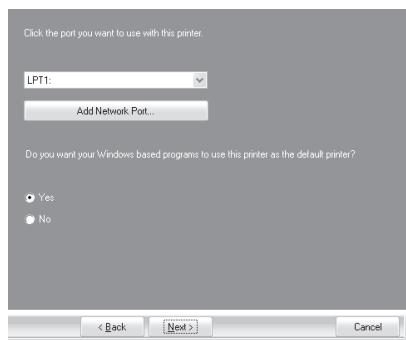


- 4) Select "Connected via the network" and click the "Next" button.



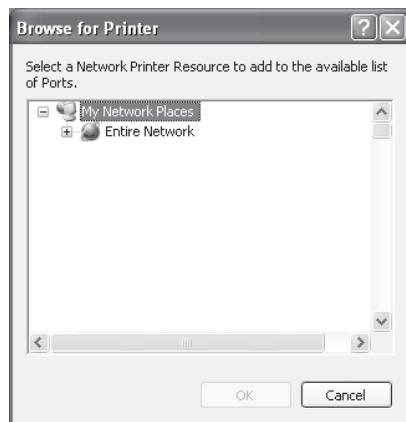
- 5) Click the "Add Network Port" button.

In Windows Vista, the "Add Network Port" button does not appear.



- 6) Select the network printer that is shared and click the "OK" button.

Ask your network administrator for the server name and printer name of the machine on the network.



- 7) In the printer port selection window, verify the network printer that is shared and whether the machine is to be used as the default printer, make the selections and click the "Next" button.

Follow the on-screen instructions.

**Caution:**

- If you are using Windows Vista and a security warning window appears, be sure to click "Install this driver software anyway".
- If you are running Windows 2000/XP and a warning message appears regarding the Windows logo test or digital signature, be sure to click "Continue Anyway" or "Yes".

- 8) You will return to the window of step 3). Click the "Close" button.

**Note:** After the installation, a message prompting you to restart your computer may appear. In this case, click the "Yes" button to restart your computer.

**This completes the installation of the software.**

## C. Setting up Button Manager

Button Manager is a software program that works with the scanner driver to enable scanning from the machine.

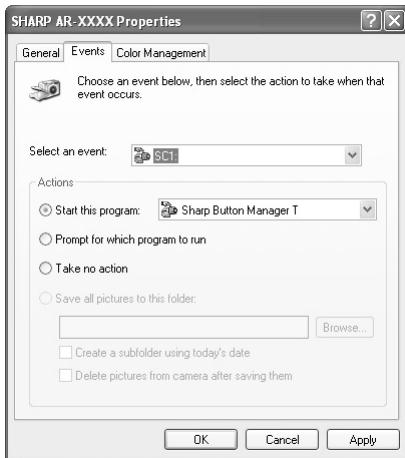
To scan using the machine, Button Manager must be linked with the scan menu on the machine. Follow the steps below to link Button Manager to scanner events.

### (1) Windows XP/Vista

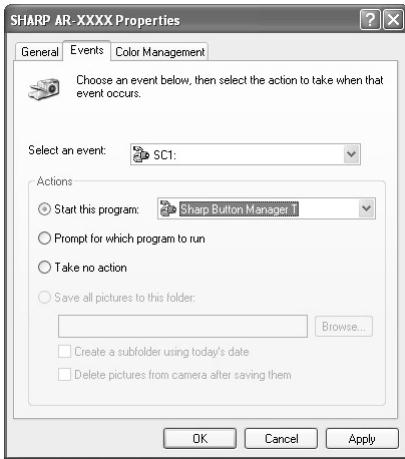
- 1) Click the "start" button, click "Control Panel", click "Printers and Other Hardware", and then click "Scanners and Cameras".

In Windows Vista, click the "Start" button, select "Control Panel" and click "Hardware and Sound", and then click "Scanners and Cameras".

- 2) Click the "SHARP AR-XXXX" icon and select "Properties" from the "File" menu.  
In Windows Vista, select "Properties" from the "Organize" menu.
- 3) In the "Properties" screen, click the "Events" tab.
- 4) Select "SC1:" from the "Select an event" pull-down menu.



- 5) Select "Start this program" and then select "Sharp Button Manager T" (AR-203E) or "Sharp Button Manager S" (AR-M200/M201) from the pull-down menu.



- 6) Click the "Apply" button.
- 7) Repeat Steps 4) through 6) to link Button Manager to "SC2:" through "SC6:".

Select "SC2:" from the "Select an event" pull-down menu. Select "Start this program", select "Sharp Button Manager T / S" from the pull-down menu, and then click the "Apply" button. Do the same for each ScanMenu through "SC6:".

When the settings have been completed, click the "OK" button to close the screen.

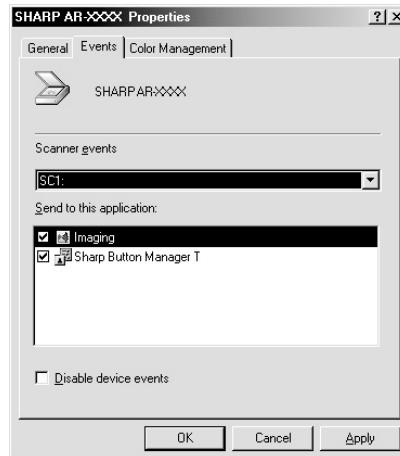
Button Manager is now linked to the scan menu (1 through 6).

The scan settings for each of scan menu 1 through 6 can be changed with the setting window of Button Manager.

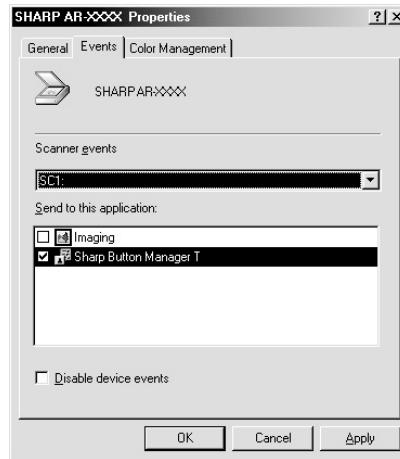
For the factory default settings of the scan menu and the procedures for configuring Button Manager settings, see "Button Manager Settings" in the Online Manual.

## (2) Windows 98/Me/2000

- 1) Click the "Start" button, select "Settings", and then click "Control Panel".
- 2) Double-click the "Scanners and Cameras" icon.
- Note: If the "Scanners and Cameras" icon does not appear in Windows Me, click "view all Control Panel options".
- 3) Select "SHARP AR-XXXX" and click the "Properties" button.
- In Windows Me, right click "SHARP AR-XXXX" and click "Properties" in the pop-up menu.
- 4) In the "Properties" screen, click the "Events" tab.
- 5) Select "SC1:" from the "Scanner events" pull-down menu.



- 6) Select "Sharp Button Manager T / S" in "Send to this application".



Note: If other applications are shown, deselect the checkboxes for the other applications and leave only the Button Manager checkbox selected.

- 7) Click the "Apply" button.
- 8) Repeat Steps 5) through 7) to link Button Manager to "SC2:" through "SC6:".

Select "SC2:" from the "Scanner events" pull-down menu. Select "Sharp Button Manager T / S" in "Send to this application" and click the "Apply" button.

Do the same for each ScanMenu through "SC6:".

When the settings have been completed, click the "OK" button to close the screen.

Button Manager is now linked to the scan menu (1 through 6).

The scan settings for each of scan menus 1 through 6 can be changed with the setting window of Button Manager.

For the factory default settings of the scan menu and the procedures for configuring Button Manager settings, see "Button Manager Settings" in the Online Manual.

## 11. Interface

### A. USB

#### Connector

Type-B connector

#### Cable

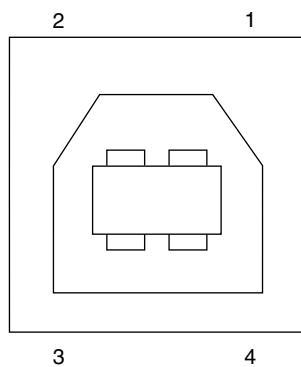
Shielded twisted pair cable

(2 m (6 feet) Max.: high-speed transmission equivalent)

#### Pin configuration

The pin numbers and signal names are listed in the following table.

Pin No.	Signal name
1	+5V
2	-DATA
3	+DATA
4	GND



## 12. Moving

### Moving instructions

When moving the unit, follow the procedure below.

Note: When moving this unit, be sure to remove the toner cartridge in advance.

- 1) Turn the power switch off and remove the power cord from the outlet.
  - 2) Open the side cover and front cover, in that order. Remove the toner cartridge and close the front cover and side cover, in that order.  
To open and close the side cover and front cover, and to remove the toner cartridge.
  - 3) Raise the handle of the paper tray and pull the paper tray out until it stops.
  - 4) Push the center of the pressure plate down until it locks in place and lock the plate using the pressure plate lock which has been stored in the front of the paper tray.
  - 5) Push the paper tray back into the unit.
  - 6) Lock the scan head locking switch.
- Note: When shipping the unit, the scan head locking switch must be locked to prevent shipping damage.
- 7) Close the multi-bypass tray and the paper output tray extension, and attach the packing materials and tape which were removed during installation of the unit.
  - 8) Pack the unit into the carton.

## 13. Scanner moisture-proof kit

If the machine is installed in a highly humid environment, you can alleviate dew condensation inside the scanner by installing the scanner moisture-proof kit described below.

### A. Components

Scanner moisture-proof kit (DKIT-0016QSZZ)

	Name	Part code	Qty
1	Scanner condensation prevention mylar	PSHEZ0493QSZZ	3
2	Optical right hole mylar B	PSHEZ0469QSZZ	2
3	Scanner motor metal plate cushion	PMLT-0106QSZZ	2
4	Scanner upper surface cushion	PMLT-0105QSZZ	1
5	Scanner motor lower mylar	PSHEP0600QSZZ	1
6	Scanner UPG mylar J3	PSHEP0599QSZZ	1
7	Fan housing cushion	PMLT-0108QSZ1	1

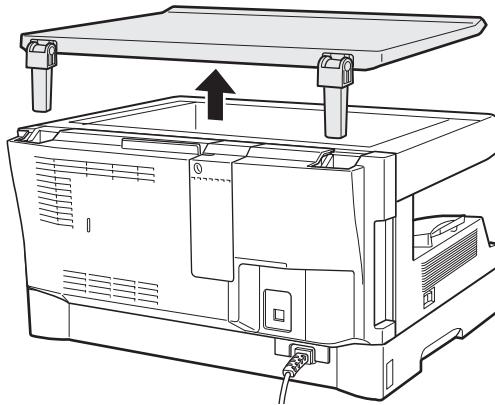
### B. Precautions at installation

Clean the position where each cushion/mylar is attached with industrial alcohol before the work.

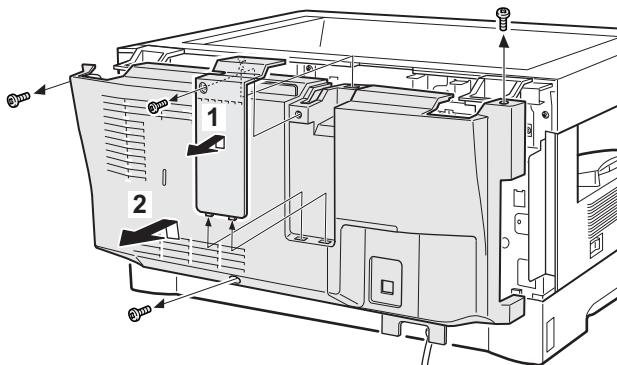
### C. Attachment method

Turn the main switch to the "OFF" position and remove the power plug from the outlet.

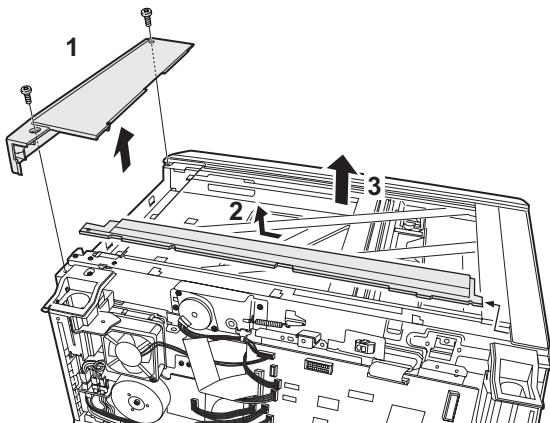
- 1) Remove the document cover.  
Remove the document cover from the copier.



- 2) Remove the rear cabinet.  
Remove the four screws and then remove the rear cabinet.



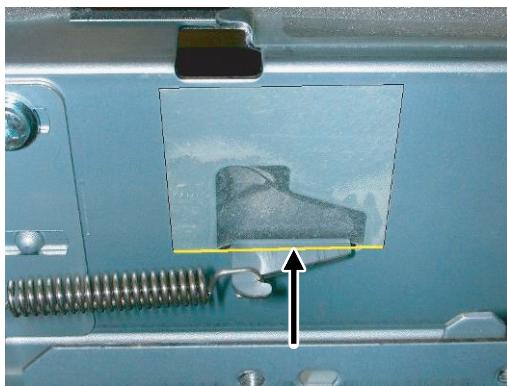
- 3) Remove the rear cover for the document glass.
- <1> Remove the two screws and then remove the right glass holder.
- <2> Slide the rear cover for the document glass to remove it.
- <3> Remove the table glass.



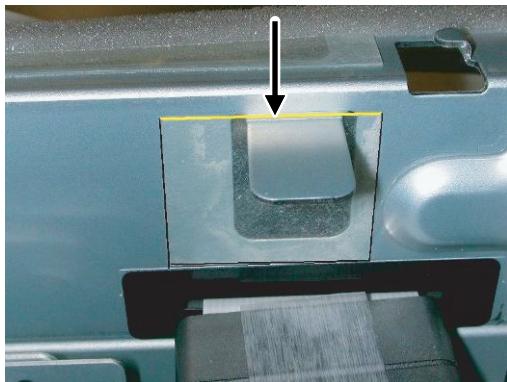
- 4) Attach the Scanner condensation prevention mylar at the 3 positions on the rear side of the main unit as described below.

Note: The hole should be covered with the mylar.

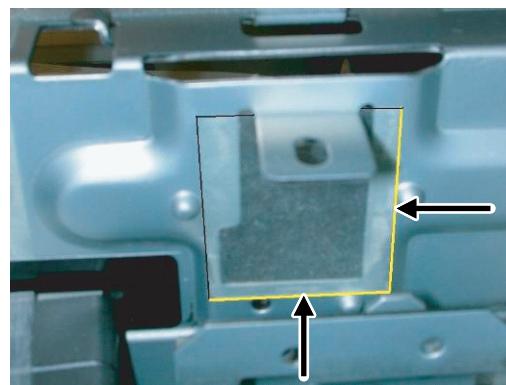
Align the edge of the mylar to the R part (the yellow line in the diagram below) so that the hole of the metal plate is covered as much as possible.



Align the edge of the mylar to the R part (the yellow line in the diagram below) so that the hole of the metal plate is covered as much as possible.



Attach along the edge of the projection (the yellow line in the diagram below).

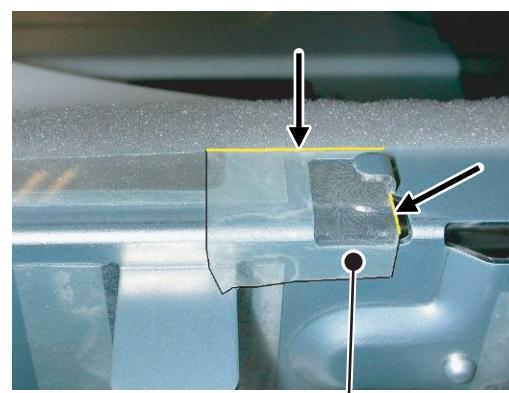


- 5) Attach the Optical right hole mylar B at the 2 positions shown in the diagrams below which are at the top of the rear side of the main unit.

Note: The holes should be covered with the mylar.

Attach along the edge of the cushion (the yellow line in the diagram below).

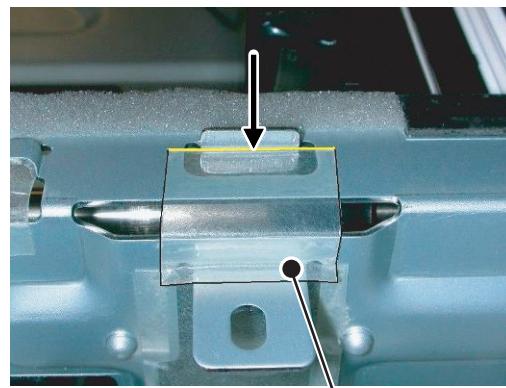
Align with the inside line of the bent part (the yellow line in the diagram below).



Stick the excessive part on the side.

Align with the raised part (the yellow line in the diagram below).

Match the center of the mylar (in the horizontal direction) to the center of the raised part.

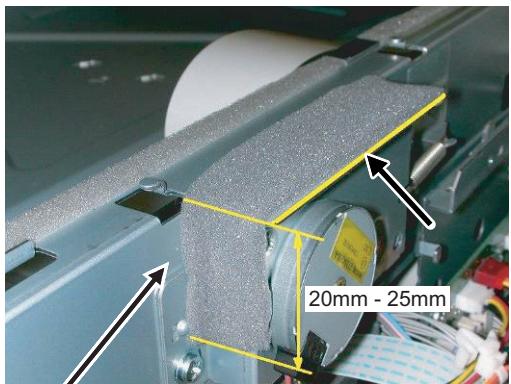


Stick the excessive part on the side.

- 6) Attach the Scanner motor metal plate cushion at 1 position on the attachment plate of the motor on the rear side of the main unit.

Note: The hole on the top of the motor unit should be covered with the mylar.

Align the edge of the metal plate and the edge of the cushion (the yellow line in the diagram below).

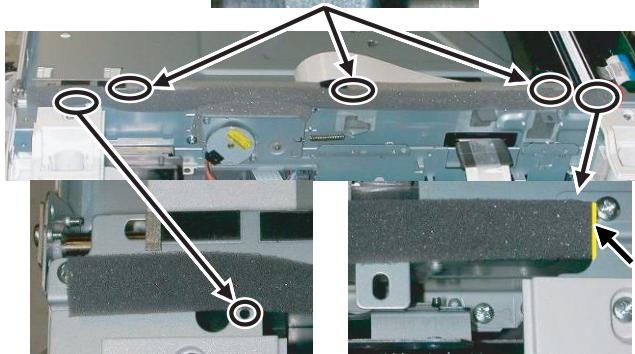
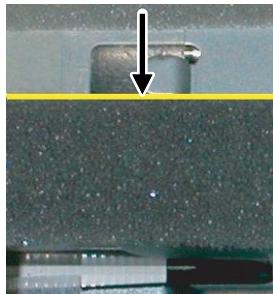


Press and attach the cushion aligning it to the metal plate so that there will be no gap between them.



- 7) Attach the Scanner upper surface cushion on the top and the rear side at the rear side of the main unit.

Align the cushion with the side of the raised part (the yellow line in the diagram below).



**Do not cover this hole.**

Align the edge of the cushion with the edge of the metal plate.

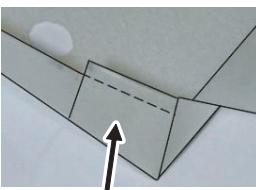
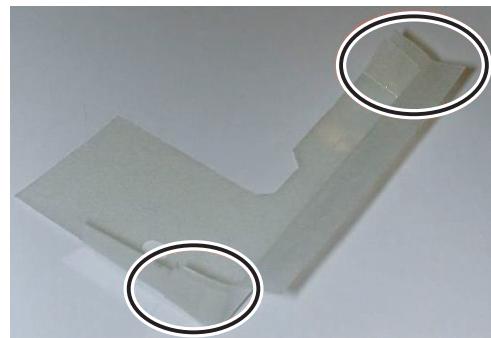
Bend the part which is sticking out to the rear side of the scanner and attach to the surface.



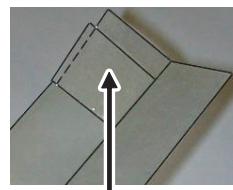
Press the cushion at the steps shown in the diagram so that there will be no gap.

Press the cushion to make sure all the holes are covered.

- 8) Bend the edge of the Scanner motor lower mylar and stick together.



Stick together.



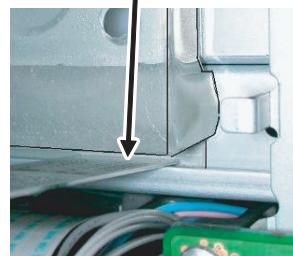
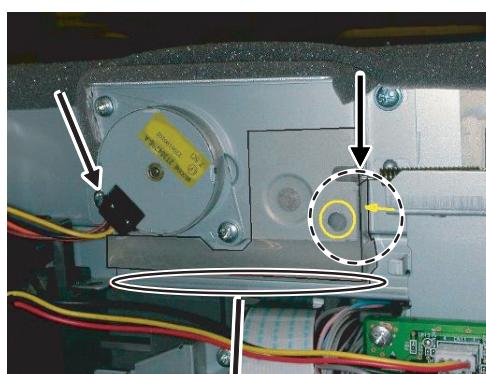
Stick together.

- 9) Attach the Scanner motor lower mylar at 1 position under the motor attachment plate on the rear side of the main unit.

Note: The mylar should cover the hole under the motor unit.

Attach matching the hole (the yellow mark in the diagram) and along with the side edge (the yellow arrow in the diagram).

Disconnect the motor harness from the connector and take off the snap band from the hole.

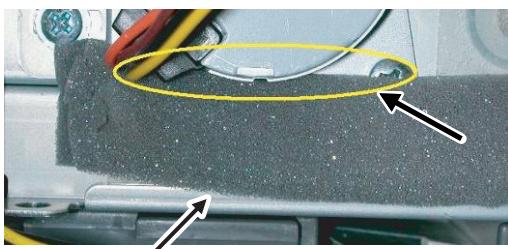


Press the mylar with a sharp-pointed stick or something so that it is stuck correctly.

10) Attach the Scanner motor metal plate cushion covering the bottom part of the Scanner motor lower mylar.

Note: The hole under the motor unit should be covered.

Attach the cushion to cover the gap between the mylar and the metal plate (the yellow mark).



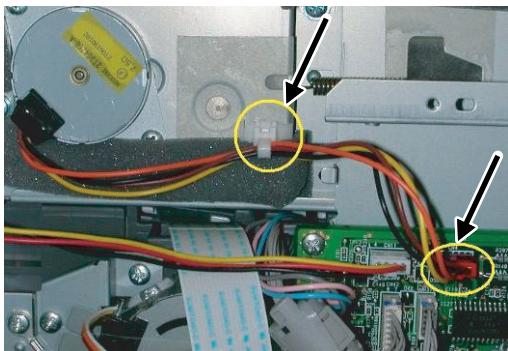
Stick the lower part of the cushion to the mylar, too.



Press the cushion with a sharp-pointed stick or something to fill the gap between the mylar and the metal plate.



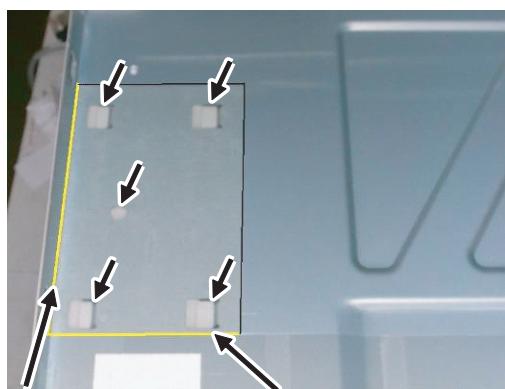
11) Attach the motor connector and the snap band to the original position.



12) Attach the Scanner UPG mylar J3 to cover the hole on the right side of inside of the scanner.

Note: The mylar should cover the hole shown by the arrow in the diagram.

Attach along with the bent part of the metal plate and align the edge of the mylar with the line shown in the diagram (the yellow line in the diagram).



13) Attach the Fan housing cushion to the cooling fan at the position shown in the diagram below.

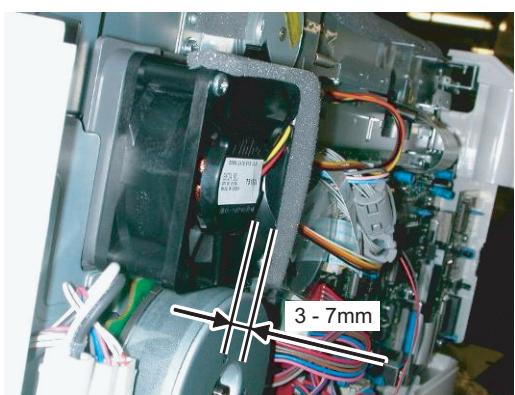
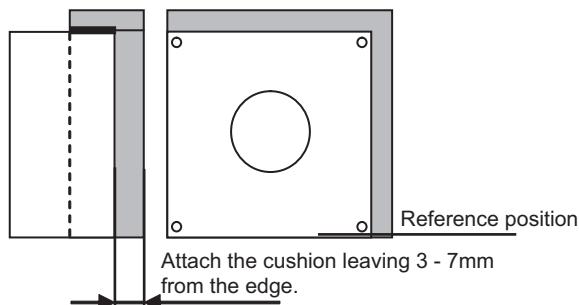
Cover the top and the right side of the fan housing when you see the fan housing from the backside of the machine.

Note: Please make sure the double-sided tape is not exposed where the cushion is sticking out from the edge of the fan housing.



View from  
the arrow A

Back side

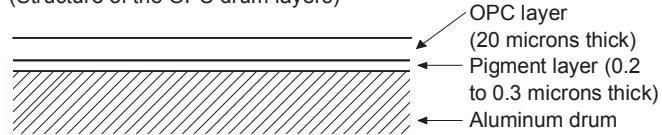


Attach the cushion leaving 3 - 7mm from the edge so that the gap between the Fan housing cushion and the filter of the rear cabinet is filled for sure.

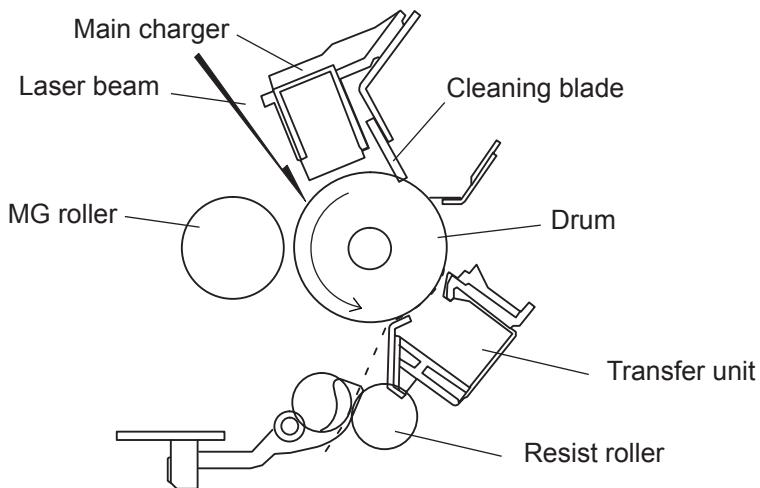
14) Attach the parts removed in the items 1), 2), and 3).

## [6] COPY PROCESS

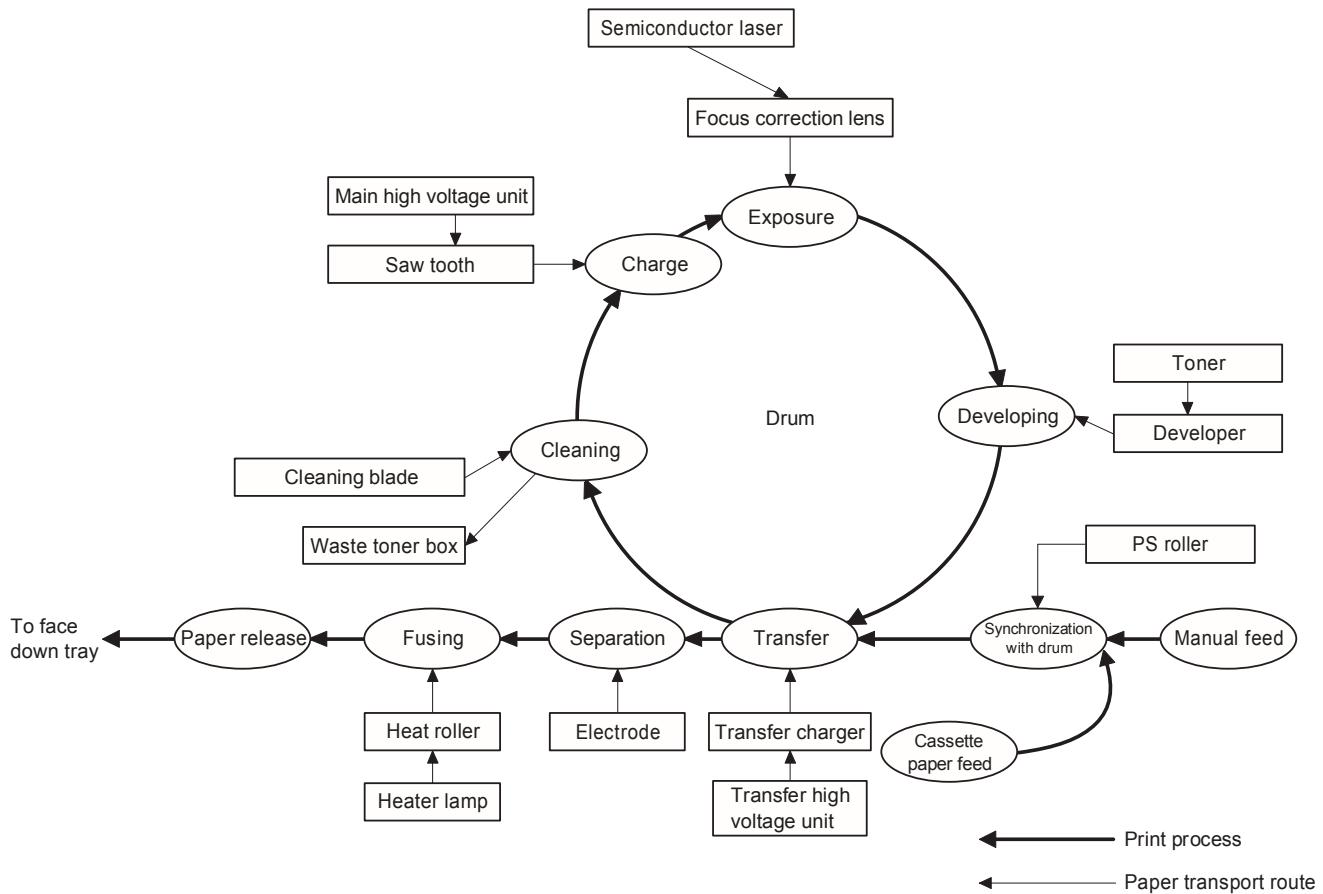
An OPC drum is used for the photoconductor.  
(Structure of the OPC drum layers)



### 1. Functional diagram



(Basic operation cycle)



## 2. Outline of print process

This printer is a non-impact printer that uses a semiconductor laser and electrostatic print process. This printer uses an OPC (Organic Photo Conductor) for its photoconductive material.

First, voltage from the main corona unit charges the drum surface and a latent image is formed on the drum surface using a laser beam. This latent image forms a visible image on the drum surface when toner is applied. The toner image is then transferred onto the print paper by the transfer corona and fused on the print paper in the fusing section with a combination of heat and pressure.

Step-1: Charge

Step-2: Exposure

\* Latent image is formed on the drum.

Step-3: Developing

Latent image formed on the drum is then changed into visible image with toner.

Step-4: Transfer

The visible image (toner image) on the drum is transferred onto the print paper.

Step-5: Cleaning

Residual toner on the drum surface is removed and collected by the cleaning blade.

Step-6: Optical discharge

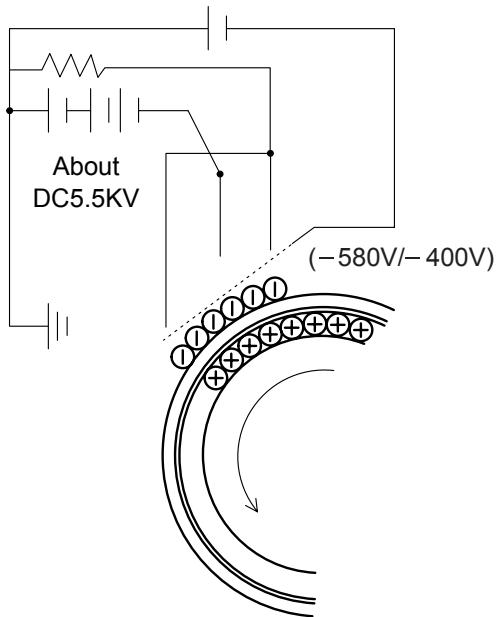
Residual charge on the drum surface is removed, by semiconductor laser beam.

## 3. Actual print process

### Step-1: DC charge

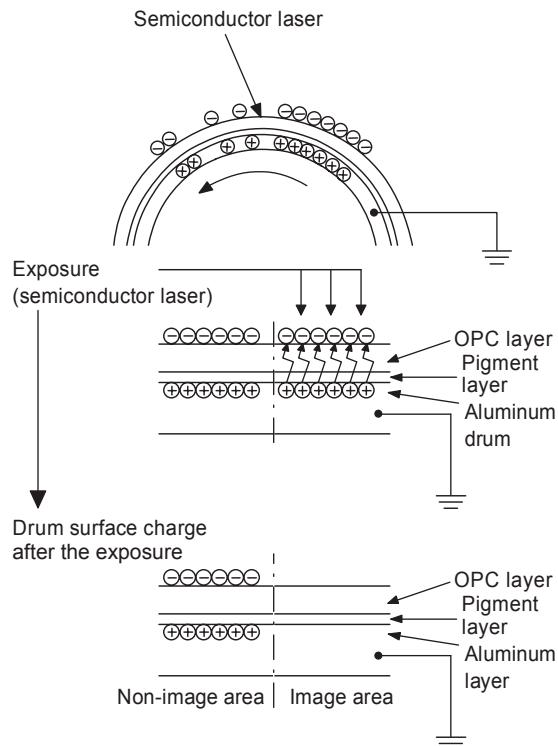
A uniform negative charge is applied over the OPC drum surface by the main charging unit. Stable potential is maintained by means of the Scotoron charger.

Positive charges are generated in the aluminum layer.



### Step-2: Exposure (laser beam, lens)

A Laser beam is generated from the semiconductor laser and controlled by the print pattern signal. The laser writes onto the OPC drum surface through the polygon mirrors and lens. The resistance of the OPC layer decreases for an area exposed by the laser beam (corresponding to the print pattern signal). The beam neutralizes the negative charge. An electrostatic latent image is formed on the drum surface.

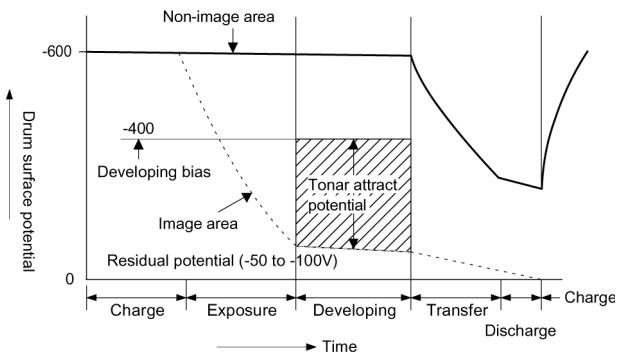
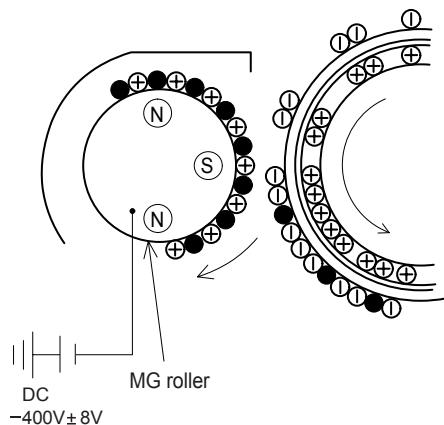


### Step-3: Developing (DC bias)

A bias potential is applied to the MG roller in the two component magnetic brush developing method, and the toner is charged negative through friction with the carrier.

Non-image area of the drum surface charged with negative potential repel the toner, whereas the laser exposed portions where no negative charges exist, attract the toner. As a result, a visible image appears on the drum surface.

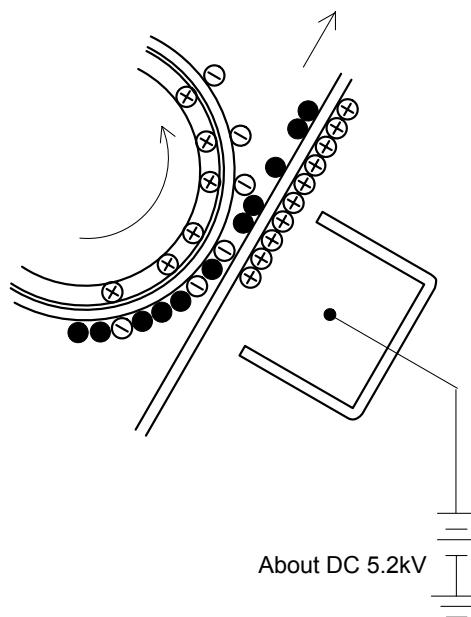
- ⊕ :Carrier (Magnetized particle)
- :Toner (Charge negative by friction)
- (N) (S) Permanent magnet  
(provided in three locations)



Toner is attracted over the shadowed area because of the developing bias.

### Step-4: Transfer

The visible image on the drum surface is transferred onto the print paper by applying a positive charge from the transfer corona to the backside of the print paper.

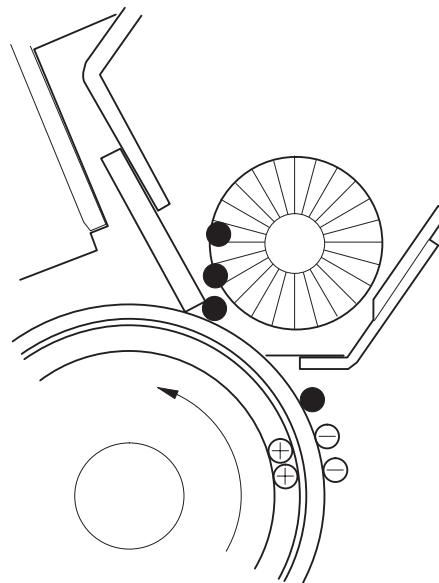


### Step-5: Separation

Since the print paper is charged positively by the transfer corona, it is discharged by the separation corona. The separation corona is connected to ground.

### Step-6: Cleaning

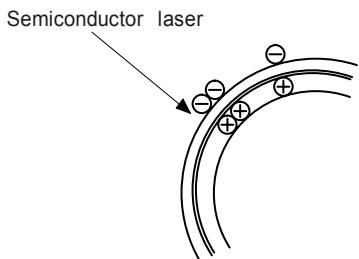
Toner remaining on the drum is removed and collected by the cleaning blade. It is transported to the waste toner collecting section in the cleaning unit by the waste toner transport roller.



### Step-7: Optical discharge (Semiconductor laser)

Before the drum rotation is stopped, the semiconductor laser is radiated onto the drum to reduce the electrical resistance in the OPC layer and eliminate residual charge, providing a uniform state to the drum surface for the next page to be printed.

When the electrical resistance is reduced, positive charges on the aluminum layer are moved and neutralized with negative charges on the OPC layer.



### Charge by the Scrotron charger

#### Function

The Scrotron charger functions to maintain uniform surface potential on the drum at all times. It controls the surface potential regardless of the charge characteristics of the photoconductor.

#### Basic function

A screen grid is placed between the saw tooth and the photoconductor. A stable voltage is added to the screen grid to maintain the corona current on the photoconductor.

As the photoconductor is charged by the saw tooth from the main corona unit, the surface potential increases. This increases the current flowing through the screen grid. When the photoconductor potential nears the grid potential, the current turns to flow to the grid so that the photoconductor potential can be maintained at a stable level.

### Process controlling

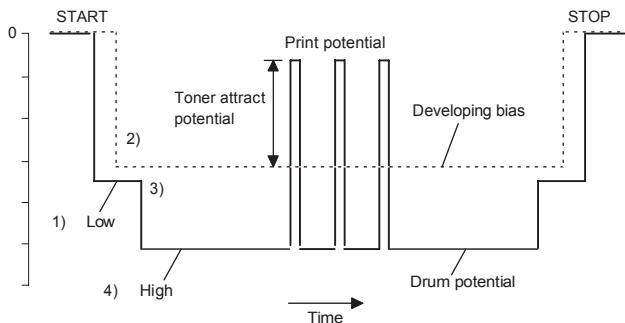
#### Function

The print pattern signal is converted into an invisible image by the semiconductor laser using negative to positive (reversible) developing method. Therefore, if the developing bias is added before the drum is charged, toner is attracted onto the drum. If the developing bias is not added when the drum is charged, the carrier is attracted to the drum because of the strong electrostatic force of the drum.

To avoid this, the process is controlled by adjusting the drum potential and the grid potential of the Scrotron charger.

#### Basic function

Voltage added to the screen grid can be selected, high and low. To make it easily understood, the figure below shows voltage transition at the developer unit.



### Start

- 1) Because the grid potential is at a low level, the drum potential is at about -400V. (Carrier may not be attracted though the carrier is pulled towards the drum by the electrostatic force of -400V.)
- 2) Developing bias (-400V) is applied when the photoconductor potential is switched from LOW to HIGH.
- 3) Once developing bias (-400V) is applied and the photoconductor potential rises to HIGH, toner will not be attracted to the drum.

### Stop

The reverse sequence takes place.

Retaining developing bias at an abnormal occurrence

#### Function

The developing bias will be lost if the power supply was removed during print process. In this event, the drum potential slightly abates and the carrier makes deposits on the drum because of strong static power. To prevent this, the machine incorporates a function to retain the developing bias for a certain period and decrease the voltage gradually against possible power loss.

#### Basic function

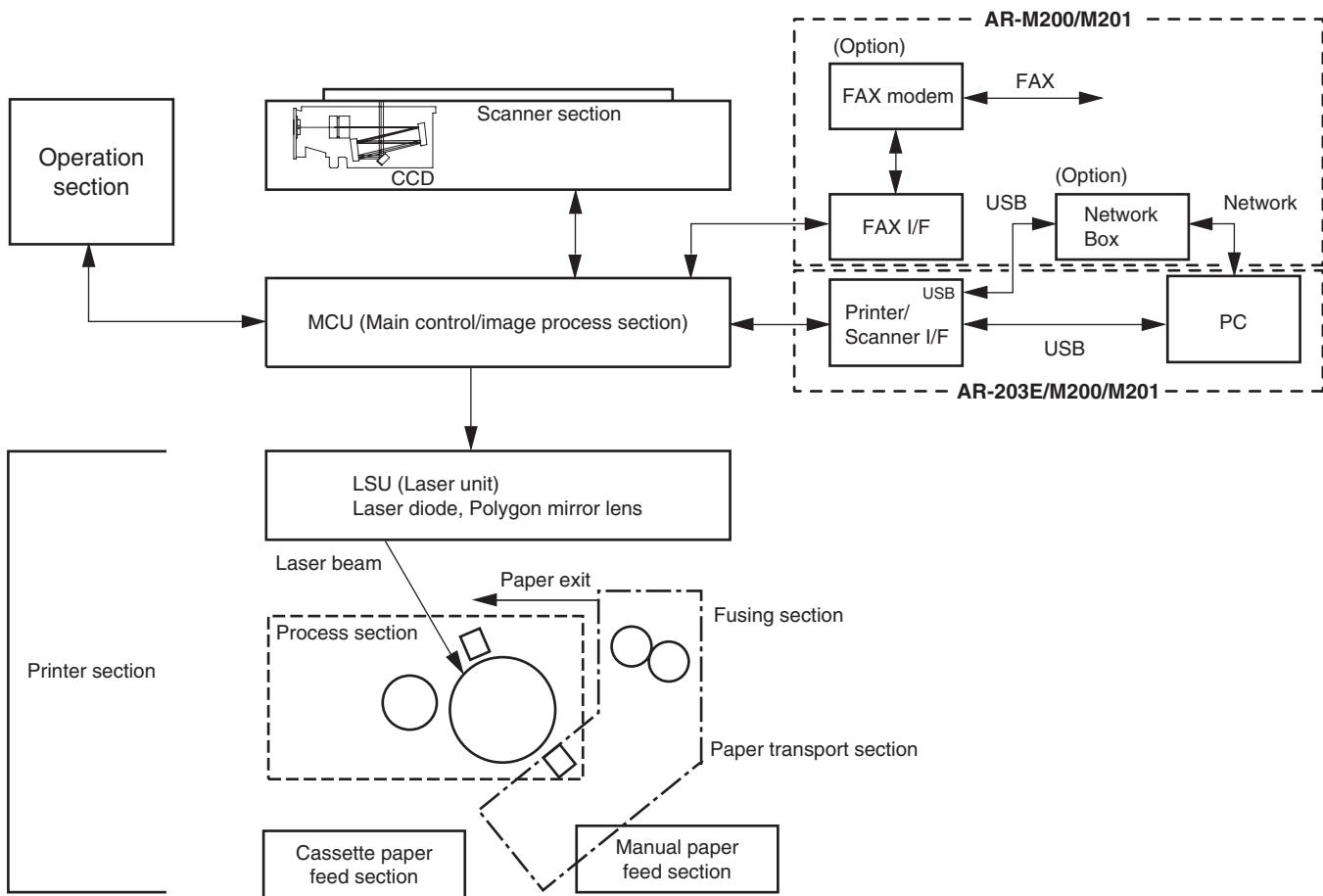
Normally, the developing bias voltage is retained for a certain time before the drum comes to a complete stop if the machine should stop before completing the normal print cycle. The developing bias can be added before resuming the operation after an abnormal interruption. Therefore, carrier will not make a deposit on the drum surface.

# [7] OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTIONS

## 1. Outline of operation

The outline of operation is described referring to the basic configuration.

### (Basic configuration)



### (Outline of copy operation)

#### Setting conditions

- 1) Set copy conditions such as the copy quantity and the copy density with the operation section, and press the COPY button. The information on copy conditions is sent to the MCU.

#### Image scanning

- 2) When the COPY button is pressed, the scanner section starts scanning of images.  
The light from the copy lamp is reflected by the document and passed through the lens to the CCD.

#### Photo signal/Electric signal conversion

- 3) The image is converted into electrical signals by the CCD circuit and passed to the MCU.

#### Image process

- 4) The document image signal sent from the CCD circuit is processed under the revised conditions and sent to the LSU (laser unit) as print data.

#### Electric signal/Photo signal (laser beam) conversion

- 5) The LSU emits laser beams according to the print data.  
(Electrical signals are converted into photo signals.)
- 6) The laser beams are radiated through the polygon mirror and various lenses to the OPC drum.

#### Printing

- 7) Electrostatic latent images are formed on the OPC drum according to the laser beams, and the latent images are developed to be visible images (toner images).
- 8) Meanwhile the paper is fed to the image transfer section in synchronization with the image lead edge.
- 9) After the transfer of toner images onto the paper, the toner images are fused to the paper by the fusing section. The copied paper is discharged onto the exit tray.

#### (Outline of printer operation)

The print data sent from the PC are passed through the NIC PWB (in case of network connection) and the MCU to the LSU. The procedures after that are the same as above 5) and later.

#### (Outline of scanner operation)

The scan data are passed through the MCU to the PC according to the conditions requested by the operations with the operation panel.

## 2. Scanner section

### A. Scanner unit

The scanner unit in the digital copier scans images.

It is composed of the optical unit and the drive unit. The optical unit performs scanning in the main scan direction with the light receiving elements (color CCD). The drive unit performs scanning in the sub scanning direction by moving the optical unit.

### B. Optical system

Two white lamps are used as the light source.

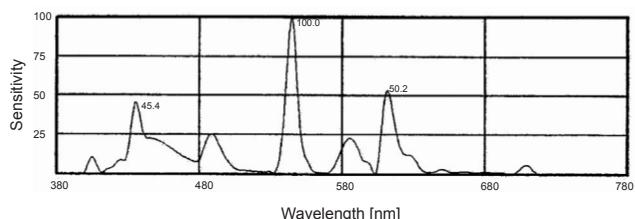
Light radiated from the light source is applied to the document on the document table. The reflected light from the document is reflected 4 times by No. 1 - No. 3 mirrors and passed through the reduction lens to form images on the light-receiving surface of 3-line CCD.

The light-receiving surface of the color CCD is provided with 3 line scanning sections for RGB. Separate images scanned in each color section are overlapped to complete color scanning. (When PC scanning)

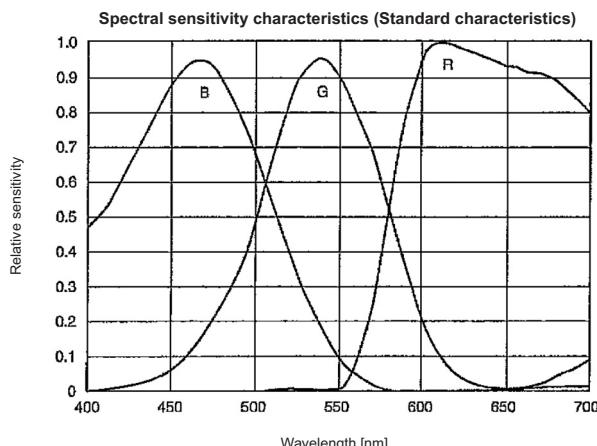
The resolution is 600dpi.

When copying, only the green component is used to print with the printer.

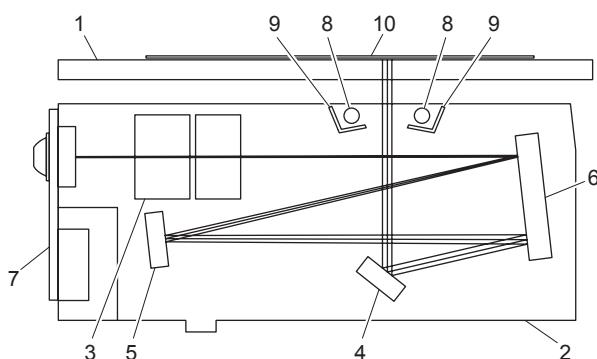
The color component for printing can be switched to red or blue by the service simulation.



(Spectrum characteristics of the lamp)



(Spectrum characteristics of the color CCD)



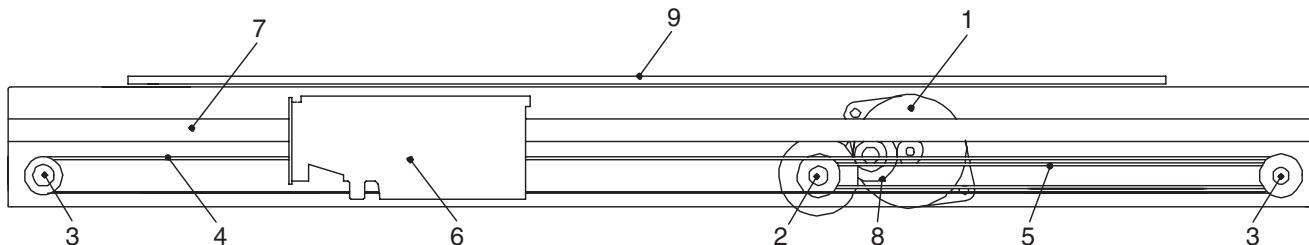
(Optical unit)

1	Table glass	2	Optical unit	3	Lens
4	Mirror 1	5	Mirror 2	6	Mirror 3
7	CCD PWB	8	Lamp	9	Reflector
10	Original				

### C. Drive system

The drive system is composed of the scanner motor, the pulley gear, the idle pulley, the idle gear, the belt 473, the belt 190, and the shaft.

The motor rotation is converted into reciprocated movements of the belt 473 through the idle gear, the pulley gear, the belt 190, and the idle pulley to drive the optical unit.



1	Scanner motor	2	Pulley gear	3	Idle pulley
4	Belt 473	5	Belt 190	6	Optical unit
7	Shaft	8	Idle gear	9	Table glass

### 3. Laser unit

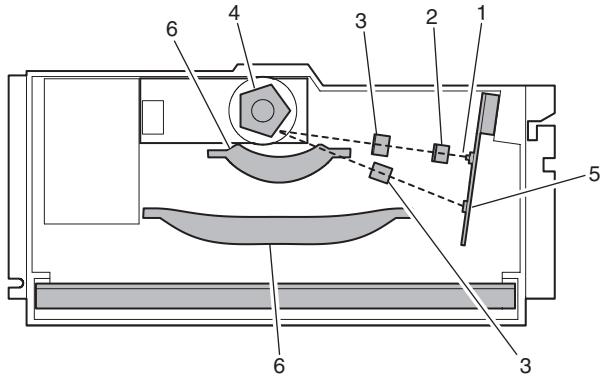
The image data sent from the MCU (image process circuit) is sent to the LSU (laser unit), where it is converted into laser beams.

#### A. Basic structure

The LSU unit is the writing section of the digital optical system.

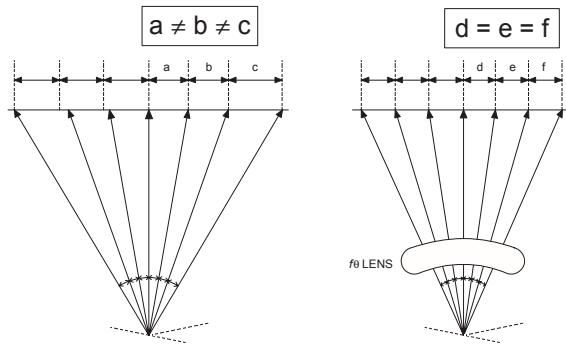
The semiconductor laser is used as the light source, and images are formed on the OPC drum by the polygon mirror and f0 lens, etc.

The laser beams are passed through the collimator lens, the cylindrical lens, the polygon mirror, the f0 lens, and the mirror to form images on the OPC drum in the main scanning direction. The laser emitting PWB is provided with the APC (auto power control) in order to eliminate fluctuations in the laser power. The BD PWB works for measurement of the laser writing start point.

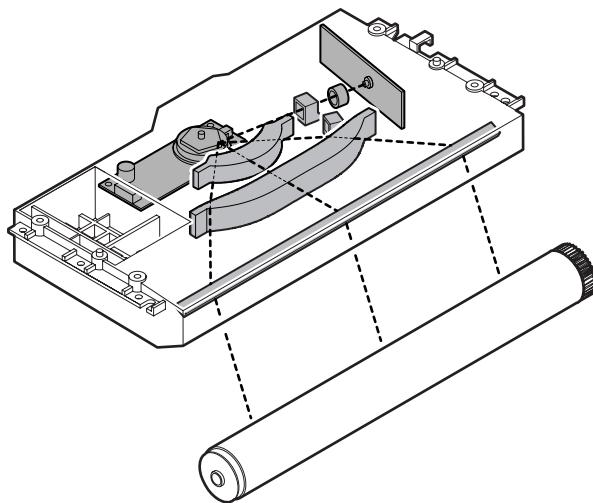


No	Component	Function
1	Semiconductor laser	Generates laser beams.
2	Collimator lens	Converges laser beams in parallel.
3	Cylinder lens	Takes the focus.
4	Polygon mirror, polygon motor	Reflects laser beams at a constant rpm.
5	BD (Lens, PWB)	Detects start timing of laser scanning.
6	f0 lens	Converges laser beams at a spot on the drum.  Makes the laser scanning speeds at both ends of the drum same as each other. (Refer to the figure below.)

Makes the laser scanning speeds at both ends of the drum same as each other.



#### B. Laser beam path



#### C. Composition

Effective scanning width: 216mm (max.)

Resolution: 600dpi

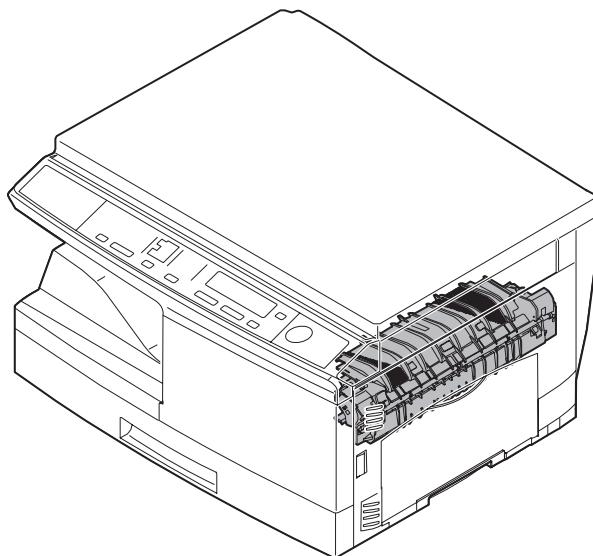
Beam diameter: 75um in the main scanning direction, 80um in the sub scanning direction

Image surface power:  $0.18 \pm 0.01\text{mW}$  (Laser wavelength 770 - 795nm)

Polygon motor section: Brushless motor 20.787rpm

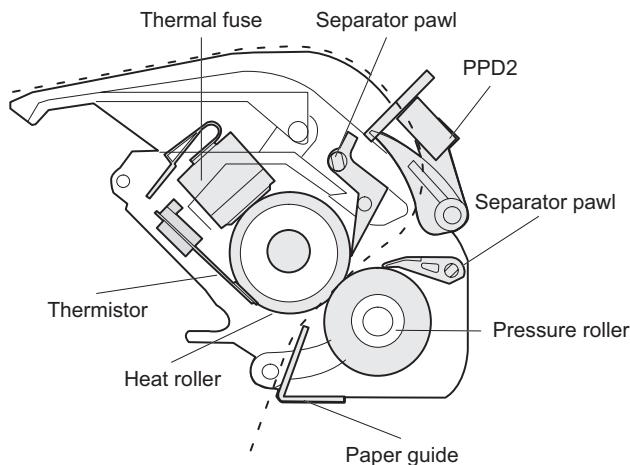
No. of mirror surfaces: 5 surfaces

### 4. Fuser section

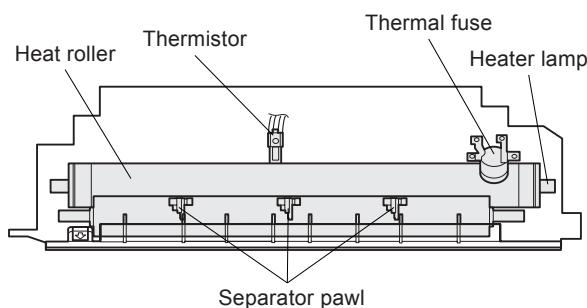


## A. General description

### General block diagram (cross section)



**Top view**



#### (1) Heat roller

A Teflon roller is used for the heat roller and a silicone rubber roller is used for the lower heat roller for better toner fusing performance and paper separation.

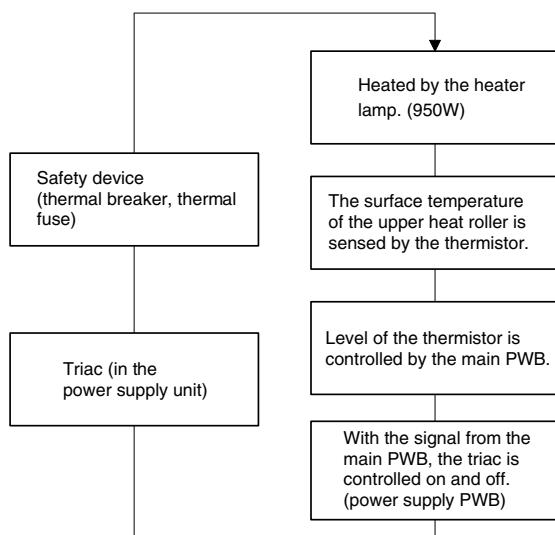
#### (2) Separator pawl

Three separator pawls are used on the upper heat roller. The separator pawls are Teflon coated to reduce friction with the roller and prevent a smear on the paper caused by the separator pawl.

#### (3) Thermal control

- The heater lamp, thermistor, main PWB, DC power supply PWB, and triac within the power supply unit are used to control the temperature in the fuser unit.

To prevent against abnormally high temperature in the fuser unit, a thermal breaker and thermal fuse are used for safety purposes.



- The surface temperature of the upper heat roller is set to 160 - 200°C. The surface temperature during the power save mode is set to 100°C.
- The self-check function comes active when one of the following malfunctions occurs, and an "H" is displayed on the multi-copy window.
  - When the heat roller surface temperature rises above 240°C.
  - When the heat roller surface temperature drops below 100°C during the copy cycle.
  - Open thermistor
  - Open thermal fuse
  - When the heat roller temperature does not reach 190°C within 27 second after supplying the power.

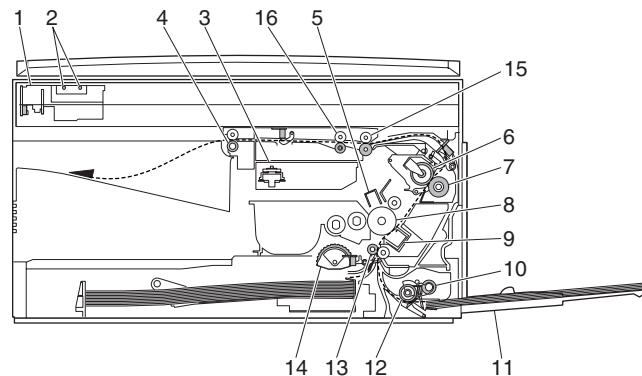
#### (4) Fusing resistor

This model is provided with a fusing resistor in the fusing section to improve transfer efficiency.

Since the upper heat roller is conductive, when using copy paper that contains moisture and the distance between the transfer unit and the fusing unit is short, the transfer current may find a path to ground via the copy paper, the upper heat roller and the discharging brush.

## 5. Paper feed section and paper transport section

### A. Paper transport path and general operations



1	Scanner unit	9	Transfer unit
2	Exposure lamp	10	Pickup roller
3	LSU (Laser unit)	11	Manual paper feed tray
4	Paper exit roller	12	Manual paper feed roller
5	Main charger	13	PS roller unit
6	Heat roller	14	Paper feed roller
7	Pressure roller	15	Paper transport roller
8	Drum	16	Shifter roller

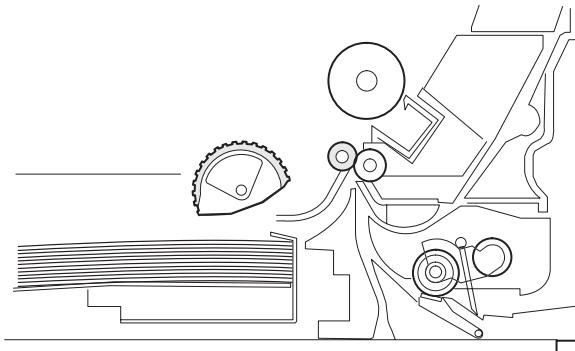
Paper feed is made in two ways; the tray paper feed and the manual paper feed. The tray is of universal-type, and has the capacity of 250 sheets.

The front loading system allows you to install or remove the tray from the front cabinet.

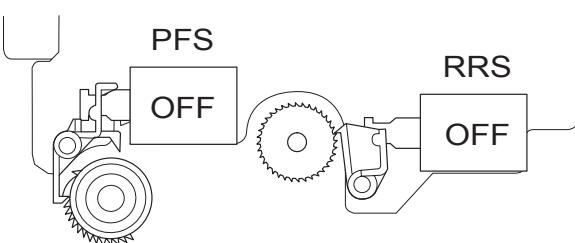
The general descriptions on the tray paper feed and the manual paper feed operation are given below.

## (1) Cassette paper feed operation

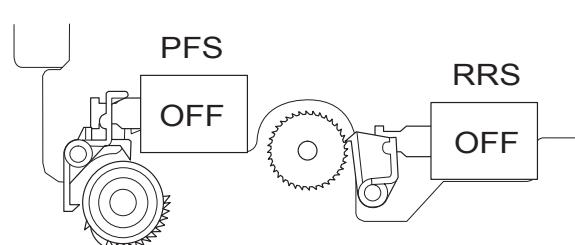
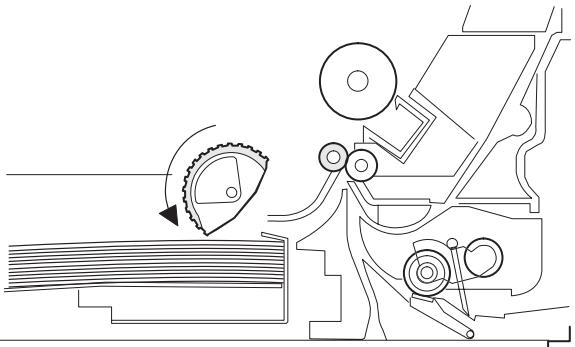
- The figure below shows the positions of the pick-up roller, the paper feed clutch sleeve, and the paper feed latch in the initial state without pressing the COPY button after lighting the ready lamp.  
The paper feed latch is in contact with the projection of the clutch sleeve.



- When the COPY button is pressed, the main drive motor starts rotating to drive each drive gear. The pick-up drive gear also is driven at that time. Since, however, the paper feed latch is in contact with the projection of the clutch sleeve, rotation of the drive gear is not transmitted to the pick-up roller, which does not rotate therefore.

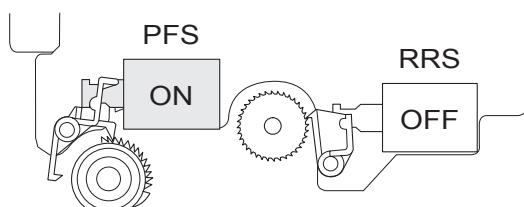
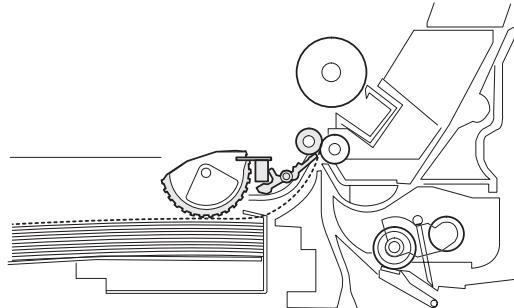


- After about 0.1 sec from when the main motor start rotating, the tray paper feed solenoid (PFS) turns on for a moment. This disengages the paper feed latch from the projection of the clutch sleeve, transmitting rotation of the pick-up drive gear to the paper feed roller shaft, rotating the pick-up roller to feed the paper.

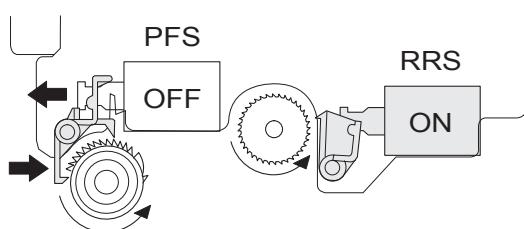
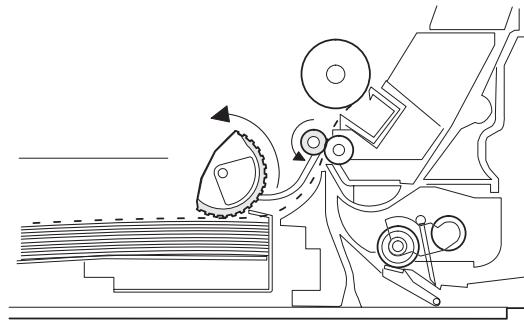


- After more than half rotation of the pick-up roller, the paper feed latch is brought in contact with a notch on the clutch sleeve, stopping rotation of the pick-up roller.

- At this time, the paper is fed passed the paper entry detection switch (PPD1), and detected by it. After about 0.15 sec from detection of paper by PPD1, the tray paper feed solenoid (PFS) turns on so that the clutch sleeve projection comes into contact with the paper feed latch to stop the pick-up roller. Then the pick-up roller rotates for about 0.15 sec so that the lead edge of the paper is evenly pressed on the resist roller, preventing against skew feeding.



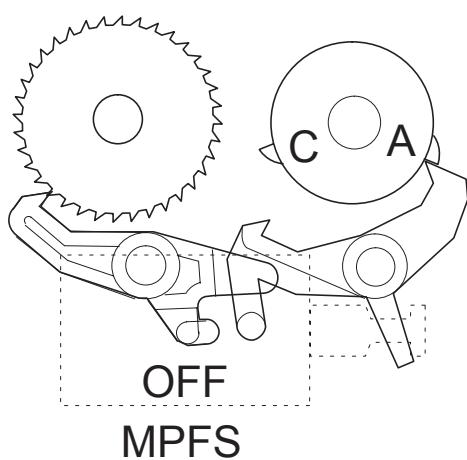
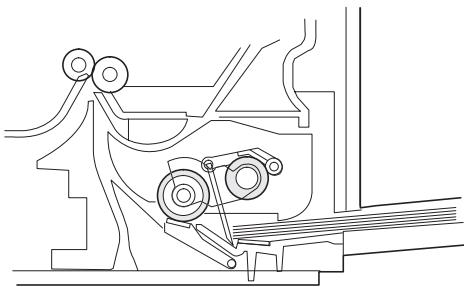
- To release the resist roller, the tray paper feed solenoid and the resist solenoid are turned on by the paper start signal to disengage the resist start latch from the clutch sleeve, transmitting rotation of the resist drive gear to the resist roller shaft. Thus the paper is transported by the resist roller.
- After the resist roller starts rotating, the paper is passed through the pre-transfer guide to the transfer section. Images are transferred on the paper, which is separated from the OPC drum by the drum curve and the separation section.



- The paper separated from the drum is passed through the fusing paper guide, the heat roller (fusing section), POD (paper out detector) to the copy tray.

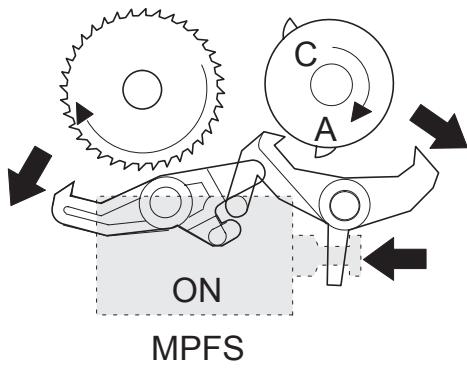
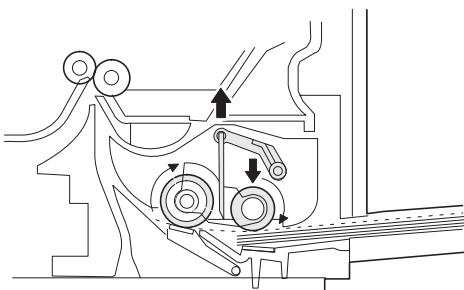
## (2) Manual multi paper feed operation

- Before paper feed operation, the manual paper feed solenoid (MPFS) is turned OFF as shown in the figure below.

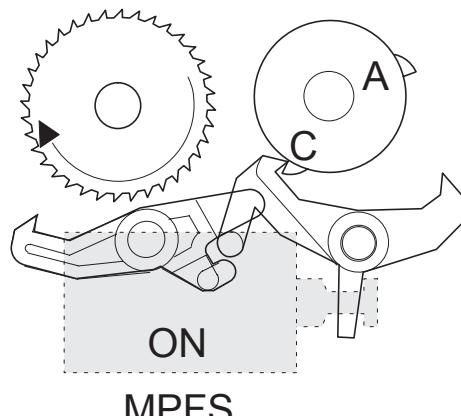
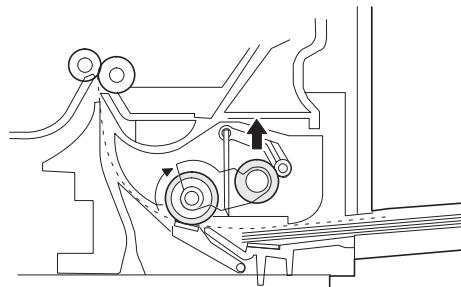


- When the PRINT button is pressed, the manual paper feed solenoid (MPFS) turns on to disengage the manual paper feed latch.

A from the manual paper feed clutch sleeve A, rotating the manual paper feed roller and the manual take-up roller. At the same time, the manual paper feed stopper opens and the manual take-up roller is pressed to the surface of the paper to start paper feeding.



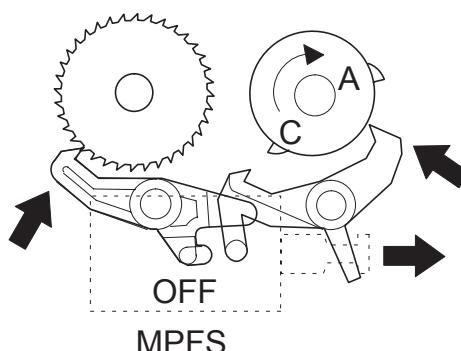
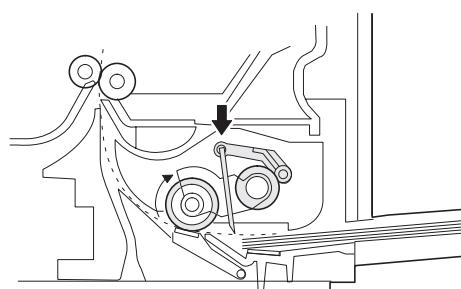
- When pawl C of the manual paper feed clutch sleeve is engaged with the manual feed latch, the manual feed stopper falls and the manual take-up roller rises. At that time, the manual paper feed roller is rotating.



- The lead edge of the transported paper is pressed on the resist roller by the transport roller. Then the paper is stopped temporarily to allow synchronization with the lead edge of the image on the OPC drum.

From this point, the operation is the same as the paper feed operation from the tray. (Refer to 7-5 - 8.)

- The solenoid turns off to close the gate and return to the initial state.



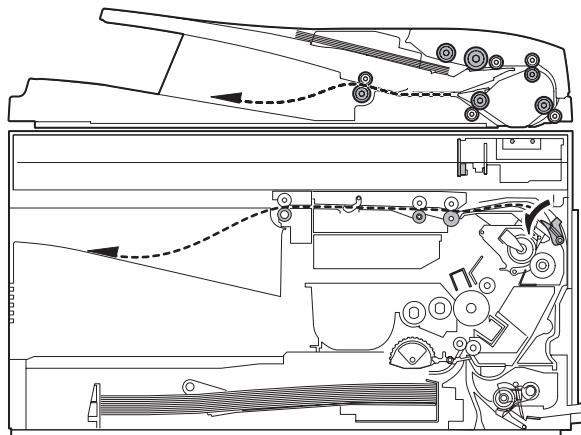
### (3) Conditions of occurrence of paper misfeed

#### a. When the power is turned on:

PPD or POD is ON when the power is turned on.

#### b. Copy operation

a	PPD1 jam	PPD1 does not turn off within 4 sec after turning on the resist roller.
b	PPD2 jam	PPD2 is off immediately after turning on the resist roller.
		PPD2 does not turn off within 1.2 sec after turning off the resist roller.
c	POD jam	POD does not turn on within 2.9 sec after turning on the resist roller.
		POD does not turn off within 1.5 sec - 2.7 sec after turning off PPD2.



## 6. D-D (Duplex to Duplex) mode paper/document transport (Duplex model) (AR-M201 only)

#### A. Initial state

Set duplex documents on the document tray.

Set paper on the cassette. (In the duplex mode, the manual feed tray cannot be selected.)

#### B. Front copy

##### Document transport:

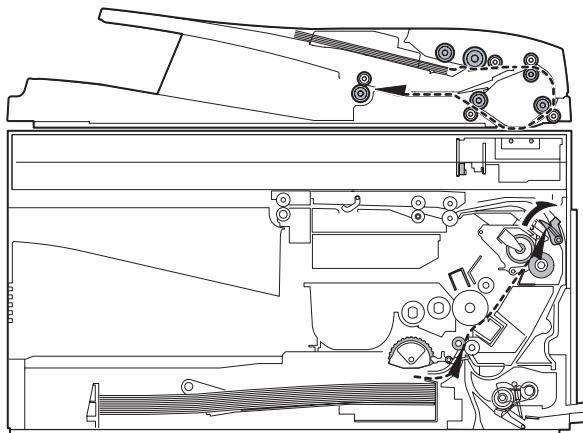
The document feed roller feeds the document from the paper feed roller to the PS roller.

- The document is exposed in the exposure section, and transported to the document exit section by the lower transport roller and the paper exit roller.
- The document is transported to the paper exit tray. (However, it is not discharged completely.)
- The document is stopped once, and then switchback operation is performed. (To the back copy)

##### Paper transport:

The paper is passed through the paper feed roller and the PS roller, and the images on the front surface are transferred.

- The paper is passed through the fusing section and the lower side of the gate section to the paper exit tray side. (However, it is not discharged completely.)
- The paper is stopped once, and switchback operation is performed. (To the back copy)



#### C. Back copy

##### Document transport:

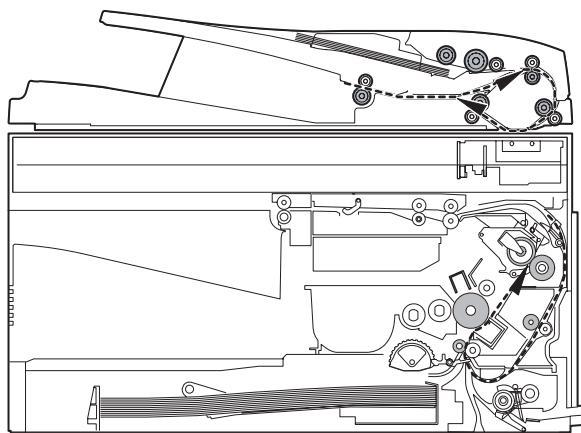
By switchback operation, the document is sent through the upper transport roller and the PS roller to the exposure section, where the back surface of the document is exposed.

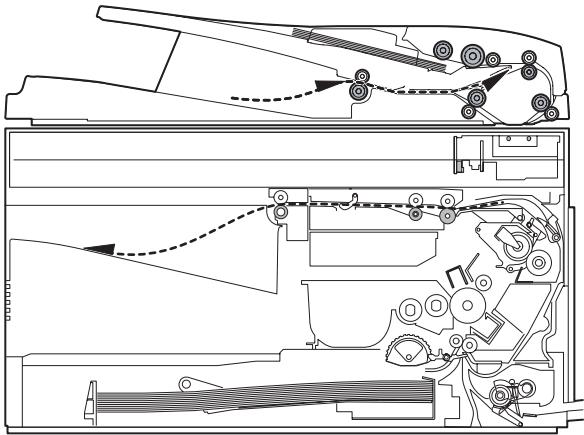
- The document is sent to the document exit section by the lower transport roller and the paper exit roller.
- The document is sent to the intermediate tray. (However, it is not discharged completely.)
- The document is stopped once, and switchback operation is performed.
- The document is sent through the upper transport roller and the PS roller and the exposure section (without being exposed) to the document exit section.
- The document is discharged to the document exit tray.

##### Paper transport:

Switchback operation is performed.

- The paper is sent through the upper side of the gate section and the duplex transport section and the PS roller, and the images on the back surface are transferred.
- The paper is sent through the fusing section and discharged to the paper exit tray.





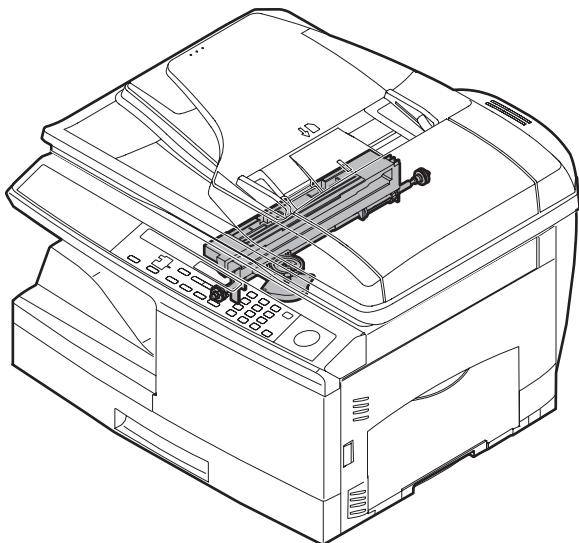
**Rotation copy mode:**

The front and the back are in upside down each other.

**Copy mode without rotation:**

The front and the back are not in upside down.

## 7. Shifter (AR-M200/M201)



Shift width: 2.5cm

The offset function by the shifter is turned ON/OFF by the user program.

According to the setting, offset operation is performed for every job.  
(Default: ON)

## [8] DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

**Before disassembly, be sure to disconnect the power cord for safety.**

1. Do not disconnect or connect the connector and the harness during the machine is powered. Especially be careful not to disconnect or connect the harness between the MCU PWB and the LSU (MCU PWB: CN119) during the machine is powered. (If it is disconnected or connected during the machine is powered, the IC inside the LSU will be destroyed.)
2. To disconnect the harness after turning on the power, be sure to turn off the power and wait for at least 10 sec before disconnection. (Note that a voltage still remains immediately after turning off the power.)

The disassembly and assembly procedures are described for the following sections:

1. High voltage section
2. Operation panel section
3. Optical section
4. Fusing section
5. Tray paper feed/transport section
6. Manual paper feed section
7. Rear frame section
8. Power section
9. DV unit section
10. Duplex motor section (AR-M201 only)
11. Reverse roller section (AR-M201 only)

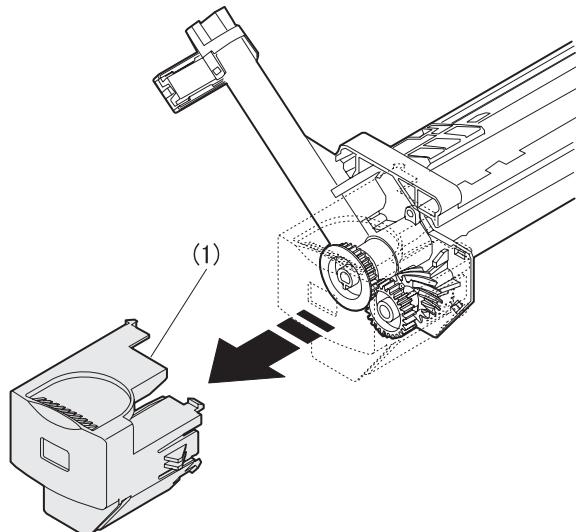
### 1. High voltage section

#### A. List

No.	Part name Ref.
1	Drum
2	Transfer charger unit
3	Charger wire

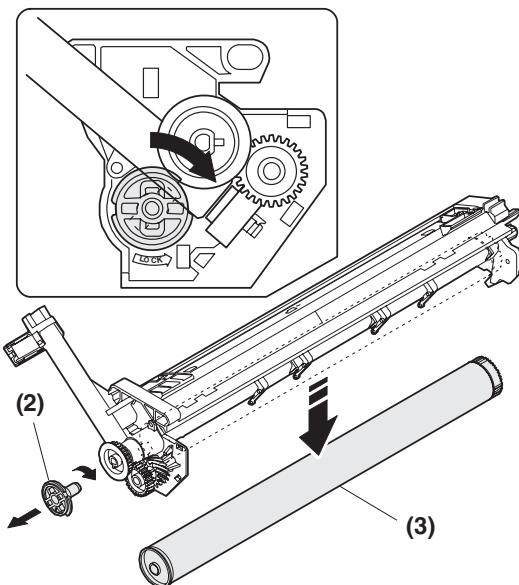
#### B. Drum replacement

- 1) Remove the drum cover. (4 Lock Tabs)



- 2) Remove the drum fixing plate and the photoconductor drum.

(Note) Dispose the drum fixing plate which was removed.



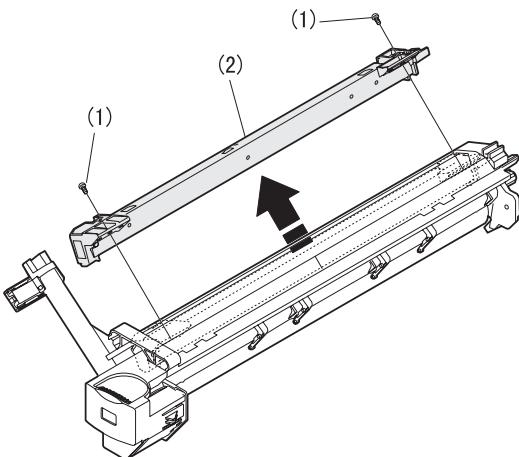
- 3) Check the cleaning blade and the red felt for no damage.

• If there is any damage, execute all procedures from item 5) and later.

• If there is no damage, execute the procedure of item 12).

- 4) Remove the main charger.

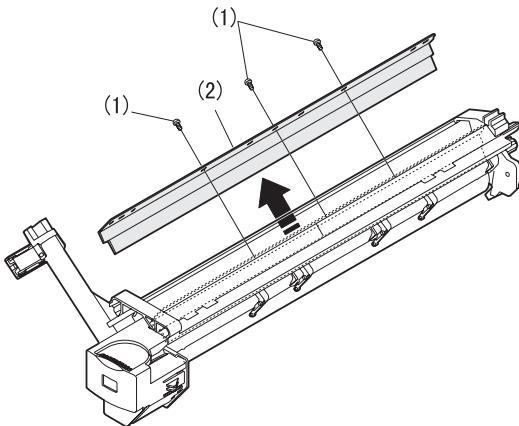
(When uneven charging occurs, clean the screen grid and the sawteeth with an air blower.)



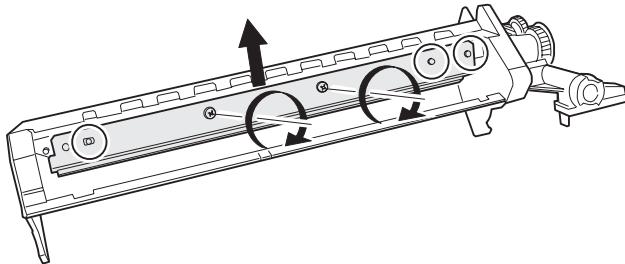
- 5) Remove the cleaning blade.

Note: Dispose the cleaning blade which was removed.

If a cleaning error occurs, replace the cleaning blade.  
(Recommendable replacement cycle: Every 25K)

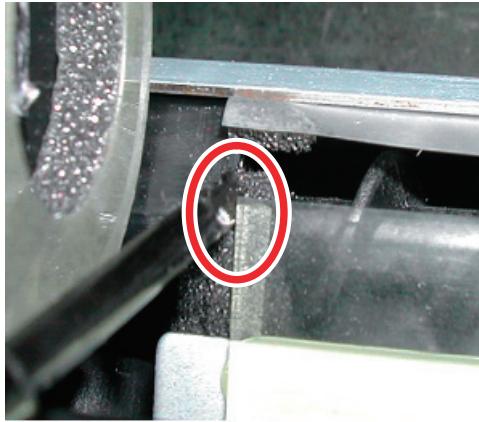


- 6) Clean the cleaning section and the waste toner pipe to remove waste toner completely with a vacuum cleaner.
- 7) Remove the felt and duplex tape completely.  
Note: Be careful not to scratch or bend the sub blade.
- 8) Attach the cleaning blade.  
Securely insert the plate section of the cleaning blade into the unit and fix it with a screw.  
Do not touch the cleaning blade rubber with your hand.  
When attaching the cleaning blade, press the cleaning blade in the arrow direction and attach.

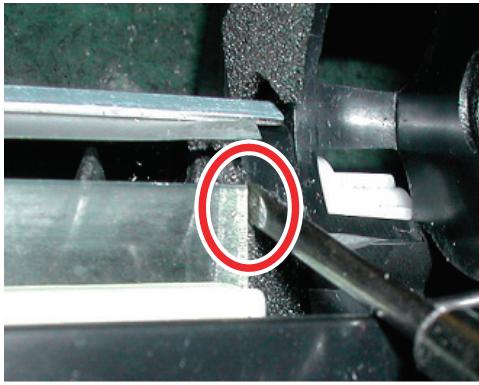


Attach the cleaning blade, press the molt on the process frame with a screwdriver (-), and push it in the clearance between the process frame and the cleaning blade.

- Machine F side

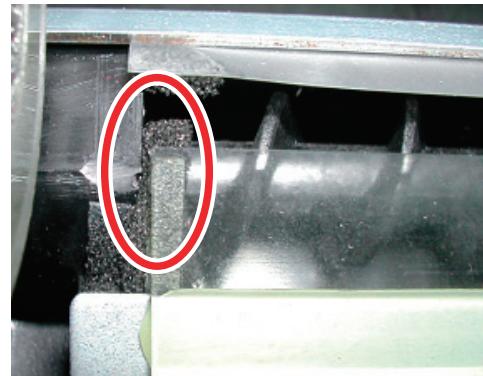


- Machine R side



Normal state of the molt

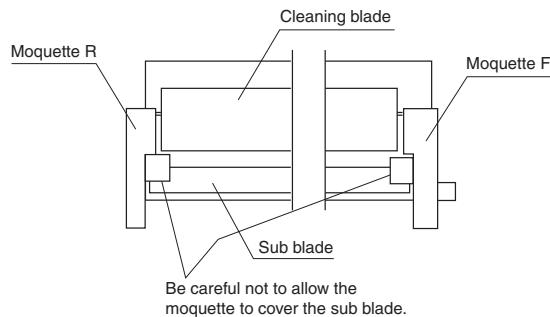
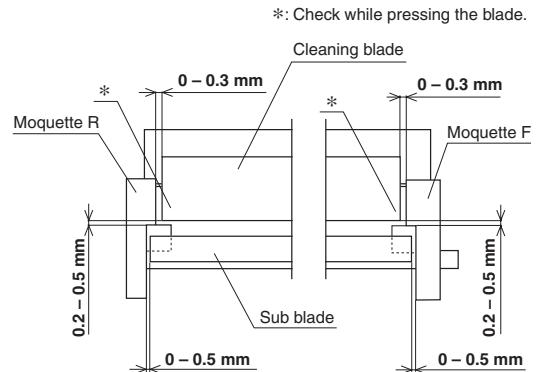
- Machine F side



- Machine R side



9) Attach the moquettes.



**Example of NG**

Attach the mocket with slightly pressing section A of the cleaning blade.

Do not touch the tip of the cleaning blade.

Do not put the mocket under the cleaning blade.

Do not put the mocket on the sub blade.

Do not press the sub blade with the mocket.

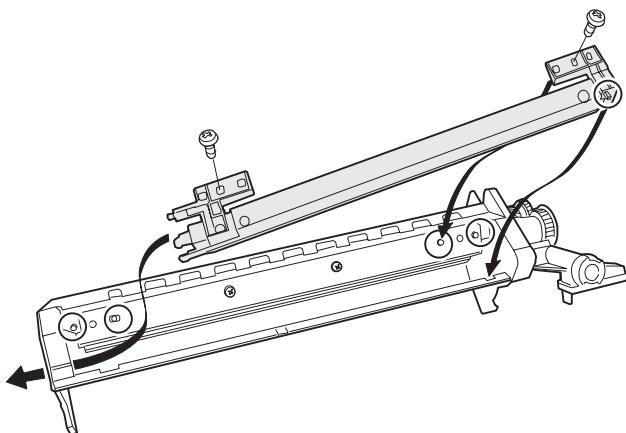
If the moquette F/R is deformed or damaged, replace it.  
(Recommendable replacement cycle: Every 25K)

10) Attach the main charger.

Securely set the MC holder on the projection of the process frame.

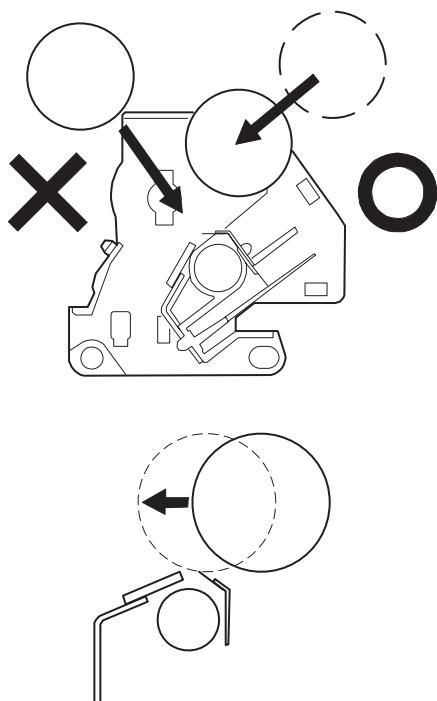
Securely insert two projections of the MC holder into the groove in the process frame.

When attaching the MC holder ass'y, be careful not to make contact with the cleaning blade.



11) Attach the drum fixing plate and the photoconductor drum.

Apply grease to the inside of the photoconductor drum. (Dia. 2)



Attach the drum from (b). (Prevention against the sub blade edge breakage)

Attach the drum so that its position with the sub blade is as shown.

12) Attach the drum cover.

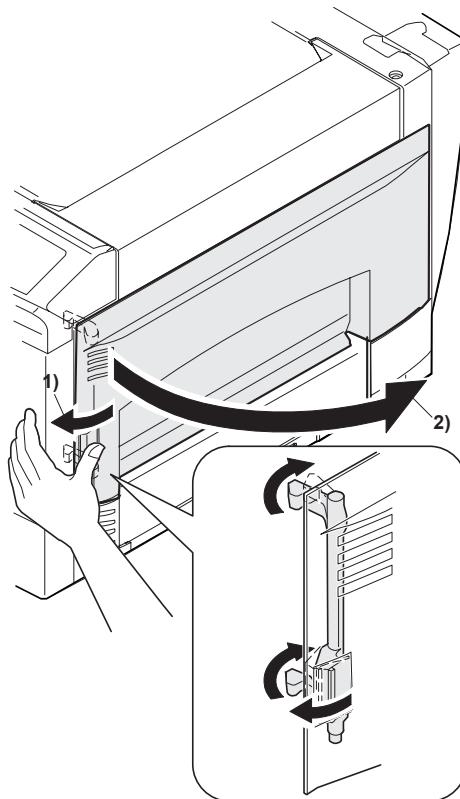
Note: After attaching the drum cover, do not make a copy.

When attaching the drum cover, engage the detection gear 20T rib with the 30T gear rib, and attach the drum cover to the process frame.

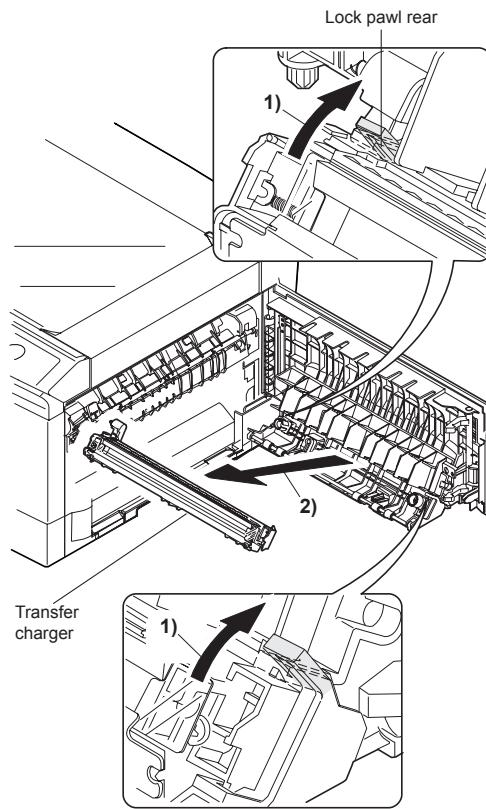
13) Insert the process unit into the machine until it is fully engaged.

### C. Disassembly procedure

- 1) Press the side cover open/close button and open the side cover.



- 2) Push up the lock pawls (2 positions) of the side cover, and remove the transfer charger.

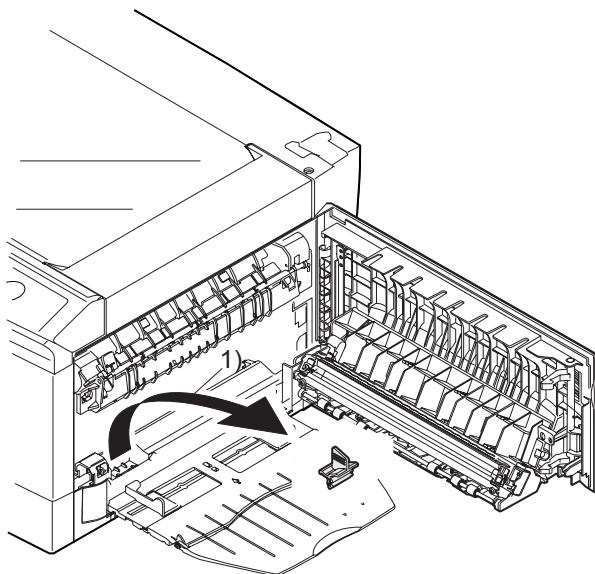


### D. Assembly procedure

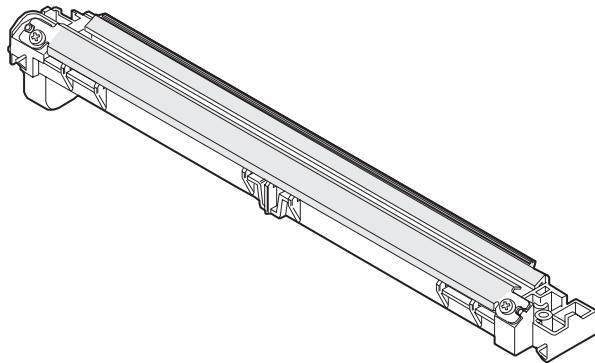
For assembly, reverse the disassembly procedure.

## E. Charger wire cleaning

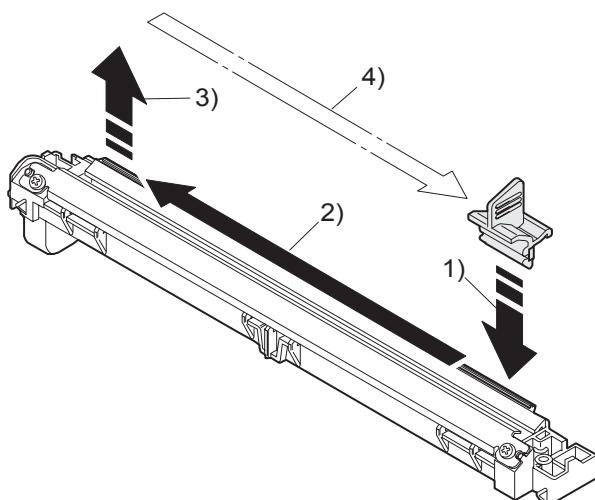
- 1) Remove the charger cleaner from the manual paper feed unit.



- 2) Clean the TC front guide and the TC holder with alcohol.



- 3) Set the charger cleaner to the transfer unit, and move it reciprocally a few times in the direction of the arrow shown in the figure below.



## F. Charger wire replacement

- 1) Remove the TC cover and remove the screw.
  - 2) Remove the spring and remove the charger wire.
  - 3) Install a new charger wire by reversing the procedures (1) and (2).
- At that time, be careful of the following items.
- The rest of the charger wire must be within 1.5mm. Refer to Fig.1
  - The spring hook section (charger wire winding section) must be in the range of the projection section.
  - Be careful not to twist the charger wire.

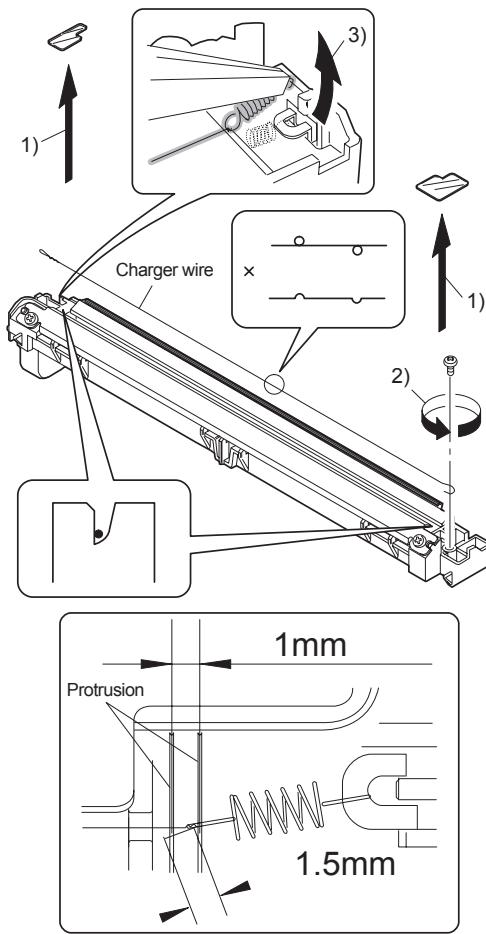


Fig.1

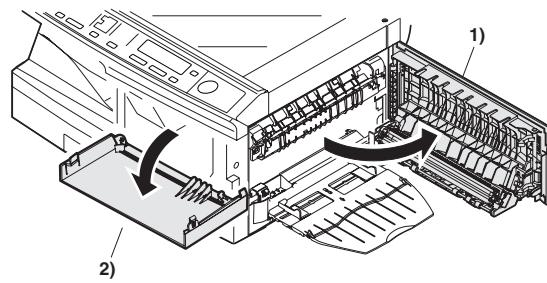
## 2. Operation panel section

### A. List

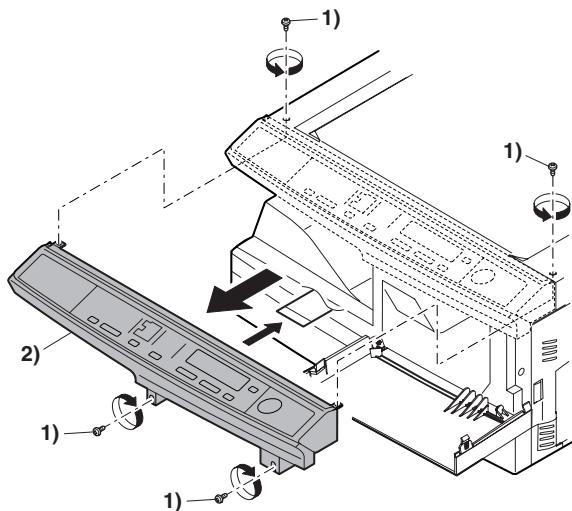
No.	Part name Ref.
1	Operation panel unit
2	Operation PWB

### B. Disassembly procedure

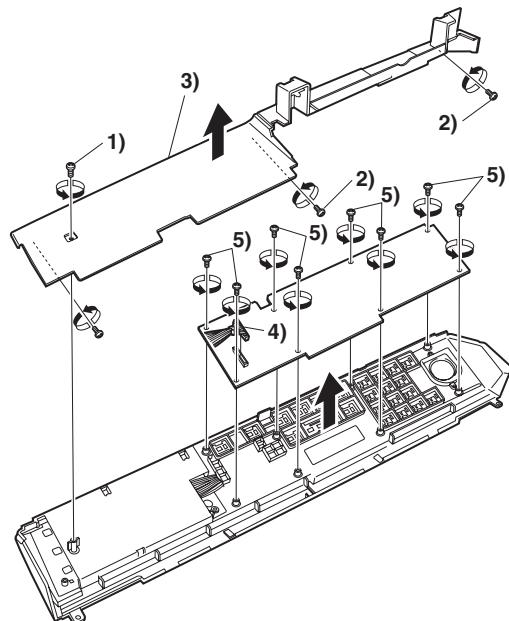
- 1) Open the side door, and Open the front cover.



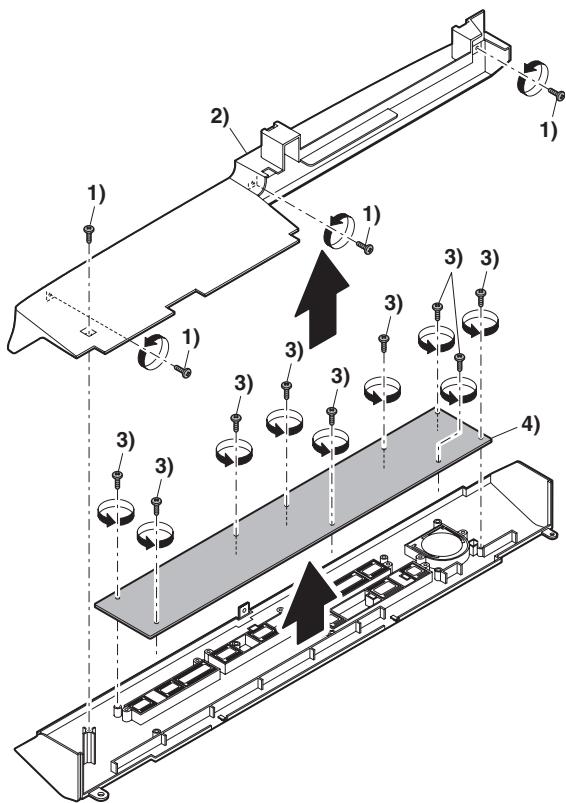
- 2) Remove the screws (4 pcs.), the harness, and the operation panel unit.



(AR-M200/M201)



- 3) Remove four screws, and remove the operation cabinet.  
4) Remove four screws, and remove the operation PWB.  
(AR-203E/5420)



### C. Assembly procedure

For assembly, reverse the disassembly procedure

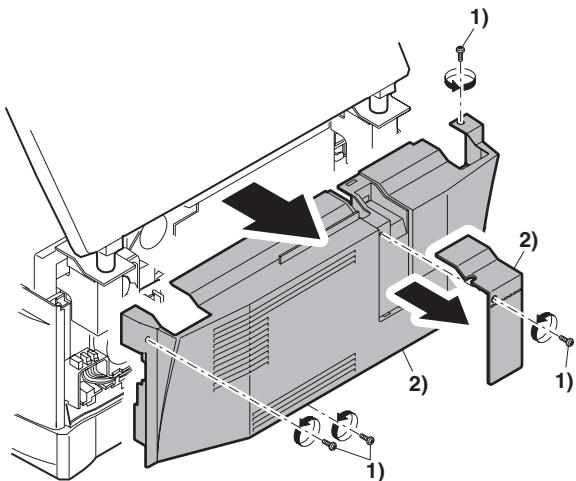
## 3. Optical section

### A. List

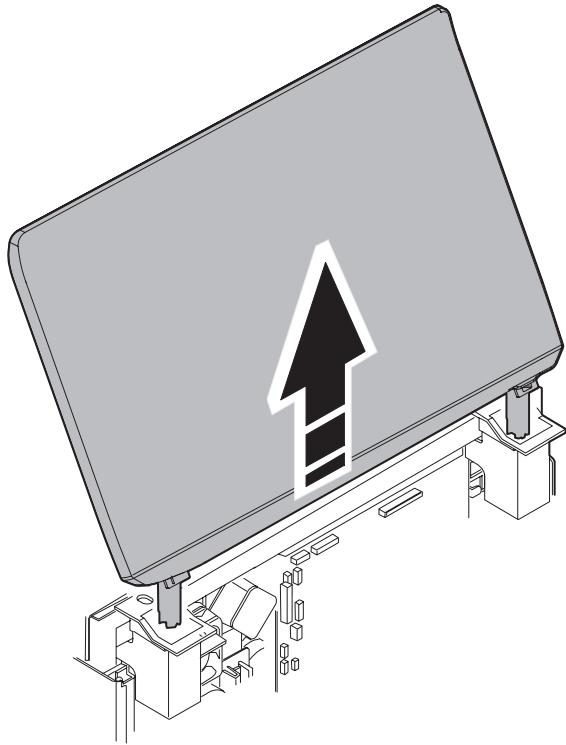
NO.	Part name Ref.
1	Copy lamp unit
2	Copy lamp
3	Lens unit

### B. Disassembly procedure

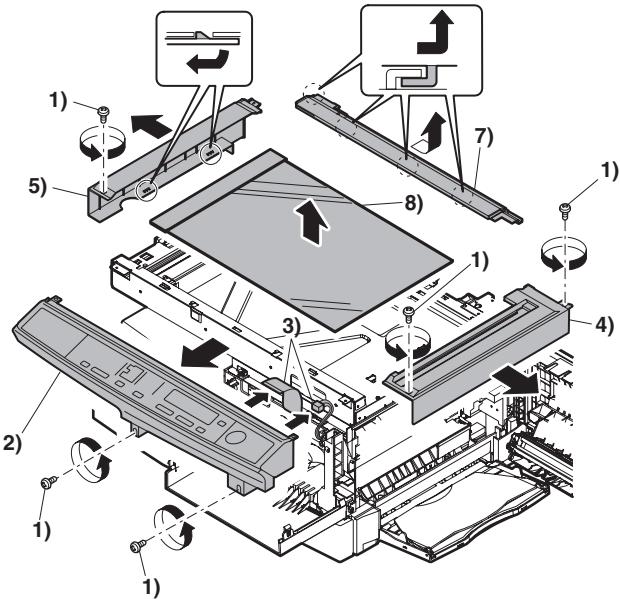
- 1) Remove four screws, and remove the rear cabinet and the rear cabinet cover.



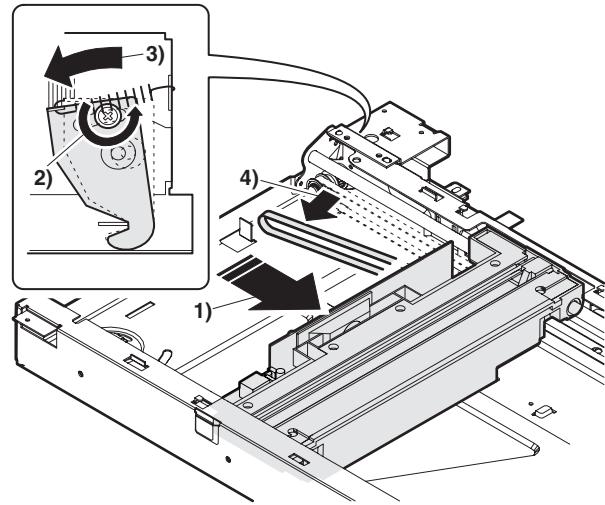
- 2) Remove two screws, and remove the earth wire.
- 3) Disconnect the connector.
- 4) Remove the original cover.



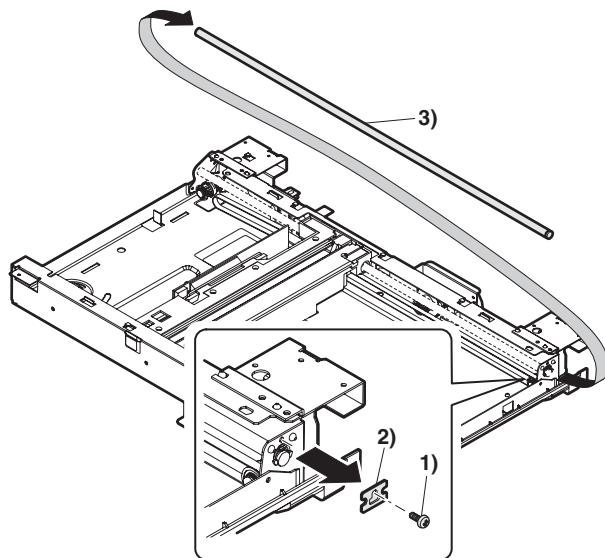
- 5) Remove five screws. Remove the operation unit, and disconnect the connector.
- 6) Remove the right cabinet.
- 7) Remove the left cabinet.
- 8) Remove the screw, and remove the rear cover.
- 9) Remove the table glass.



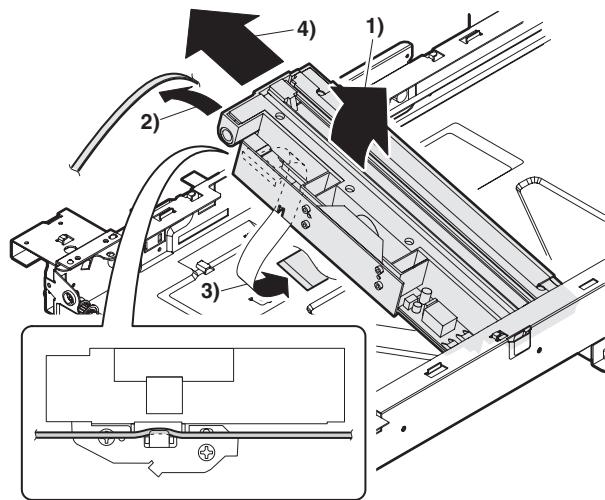
- 10) Move the carriage to the position indicated on the figure.
- 11) Loosen the screw which is fixing the tension plate.
- 12) Move the tension plate in the arrow direction to release the tension, and remove the belt.



- 13) Remove the screw, and remove the rod stopper.
- 14) Remove the rod.



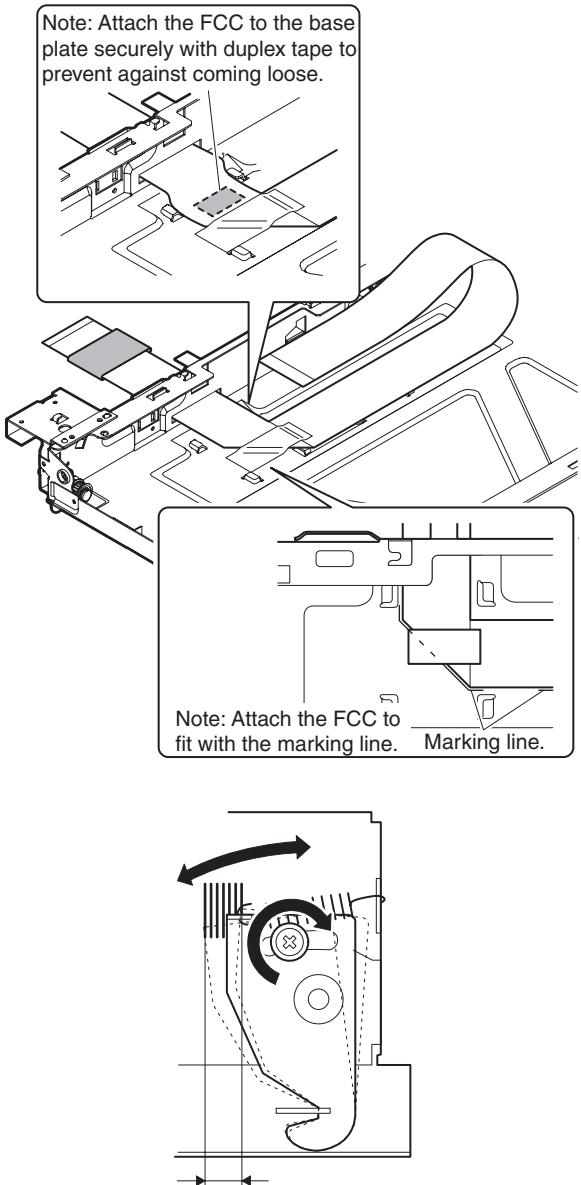
- 15) Lift the rear side of the carriage, remove the belt and the connector, and remove the carriage.



## C. Assembly procedure

### CCD core

- 1) Insert the CCD-MCU harness into the CCD PWB of the carriage unit.
- 2) Attach the CCD-MCU harness to the duplex tape on the back surface of the carriage unit. Clean and remove oil and dirt from the attachment surface.
- 3) Pass the CCD-MCU harness through the square hole in the base plate.
- 4) Attach the CCD-MCU harness to the base plate with duplex tape.
- 5) Attach two cable fixing sheets to fix the CCD-MCU harness to the base plate.
- 6) Pass the core through the CCD-MCU harness and fix the core.
- 7) Insert the CCD-MCU harness into the MCU PWB.



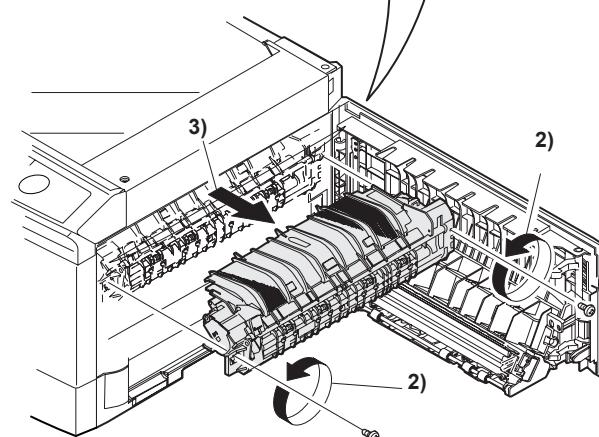
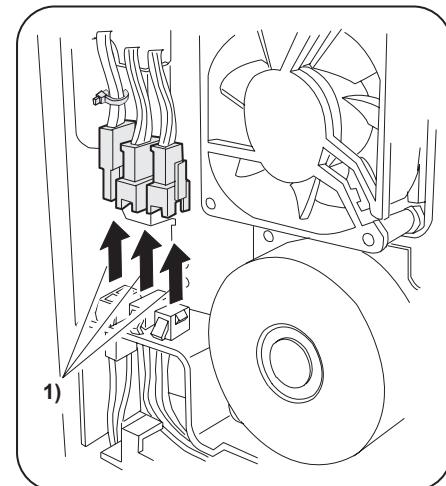
## 4. Fusing section

### A. List

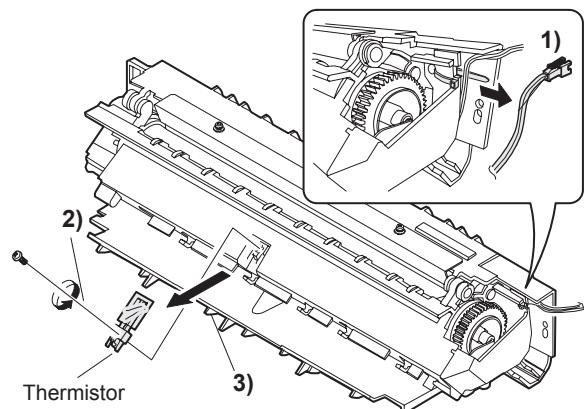
No.	Part name Ref.
1	Thermistor
2	PPD2 sensor
3	Heater lamp
4	Pressure roller
5	Heat roller

### B. Disassembly procedure

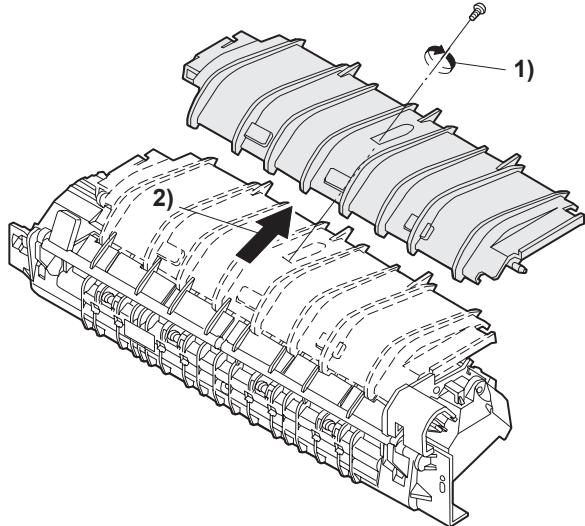
- 1) Remove the connectors (3 pcs.) of the rear cabinet.
- 2) Open the side cover, remove two screws, and remove the fusing unit.



- 3) Cut the binding band, remove the screw, and remove the thermistor.

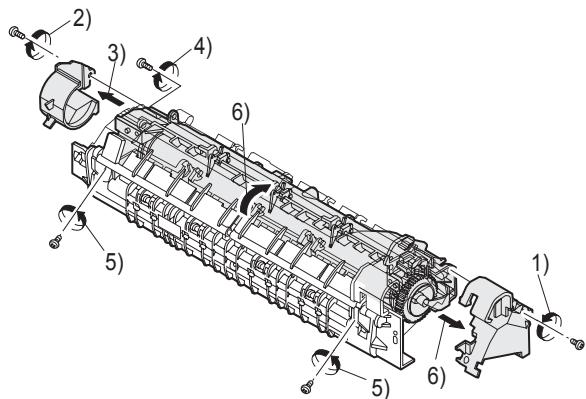


- 4) Remove the screw and remove the U-turn guide.

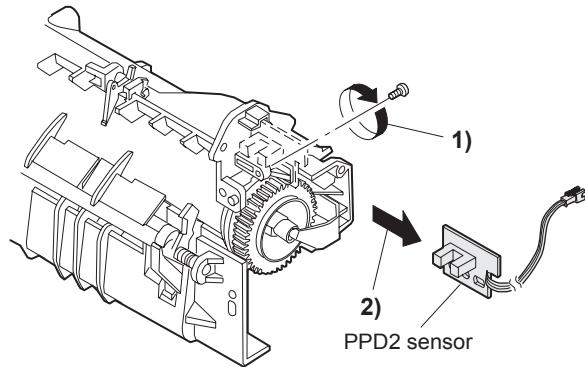


#### Pressure roller section disassembly

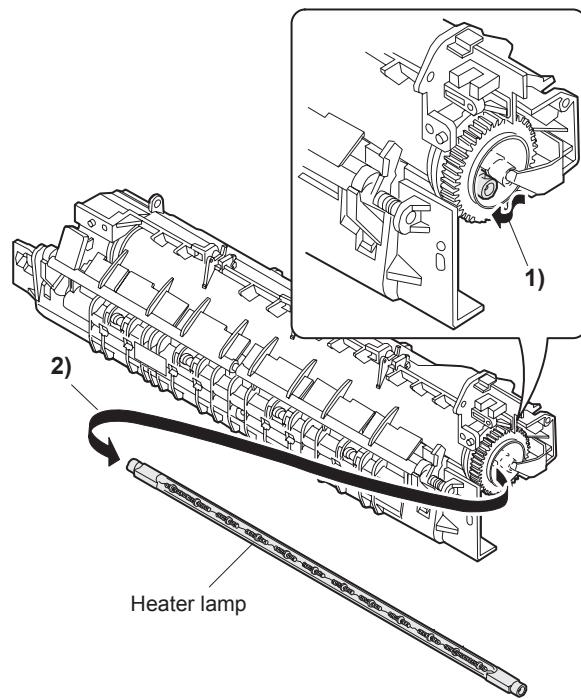
- 5) Remove the three screws, remove the fusing cover lower on the right side, and open the heat roller section.



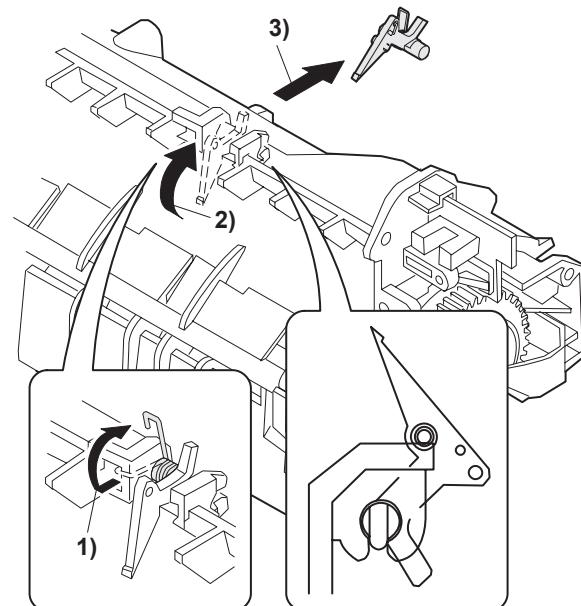
- 6) Remove the screw and remove the PPD2 sensor.



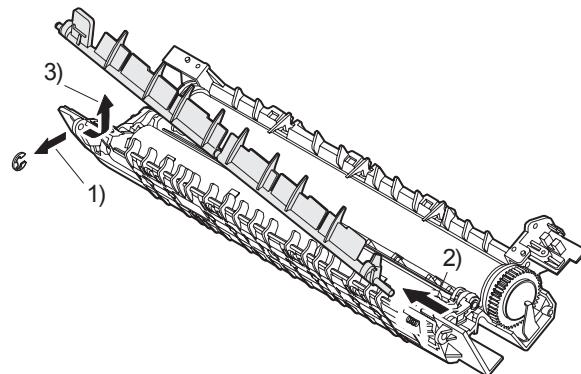
- 7) Remove the plate spring on the right and remove the heater lamp.



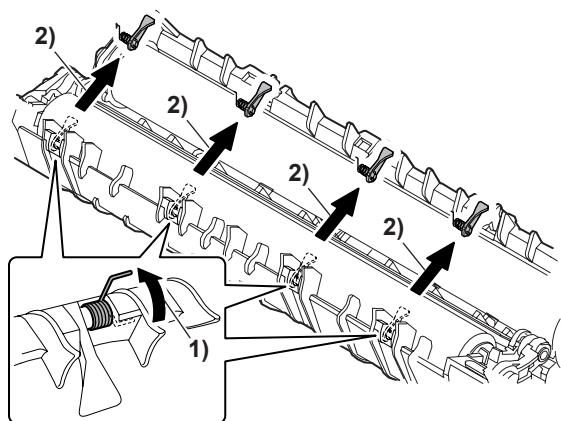
- 8) Remove the spring, and remove the upper separation pawls (3 pcs.).



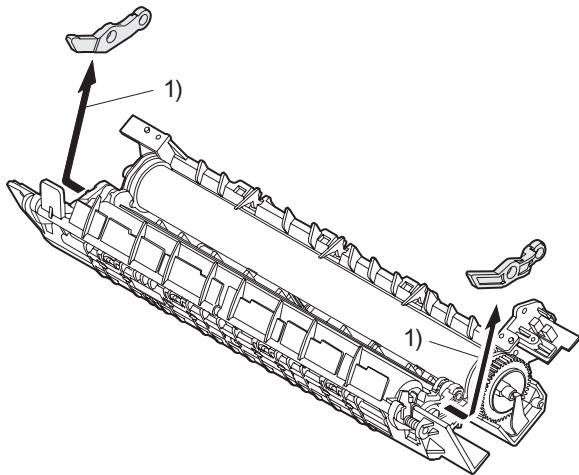
- 9) Remove the E-ring and remove the reverse gate.



- 10) Remove the spring, and remove the lower separation pawls (4 pcs.).

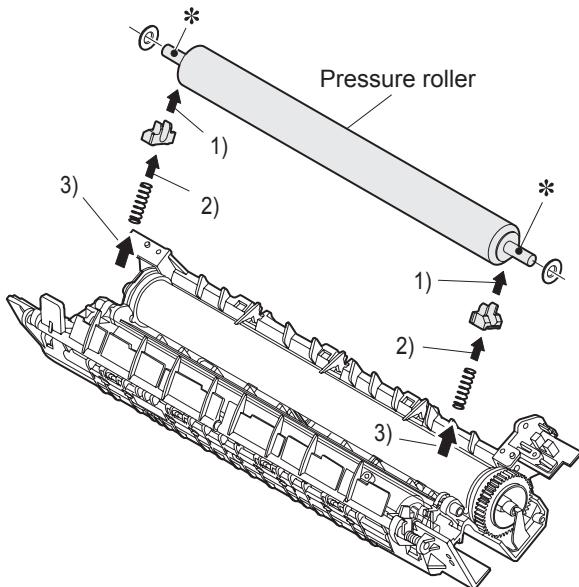


- 11) Remove the pressure release levers on the right and the left sides.



- 12) Remove the pressure roller, the pressure bearing, and the spring.

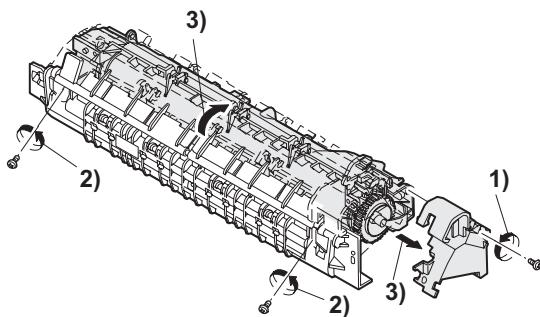
Note: Apply grease to the sections specified with an asterisk (\*).  
Grease: "JFE552" UKOG-0235FCZZ



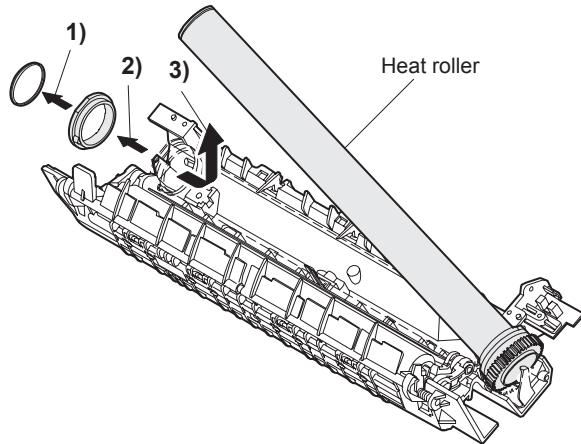
#### Heat roller disassembly

(Continued from procedure (4).)

- 5) Remove screws, remove the fusing cover, and open the heat roller section.

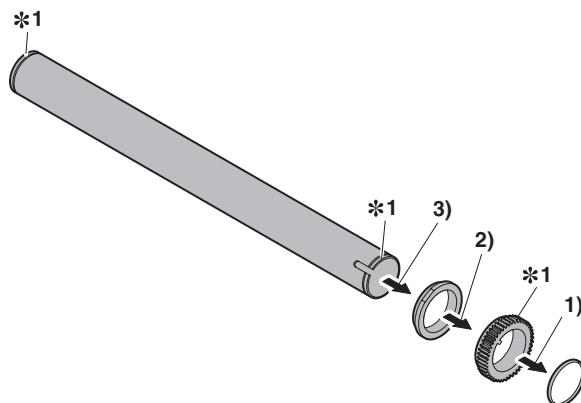


- 6) Remove the C-ring and the fusing bearing, and remove the heat roller.



- 7) Remove the parts from the heat roller.

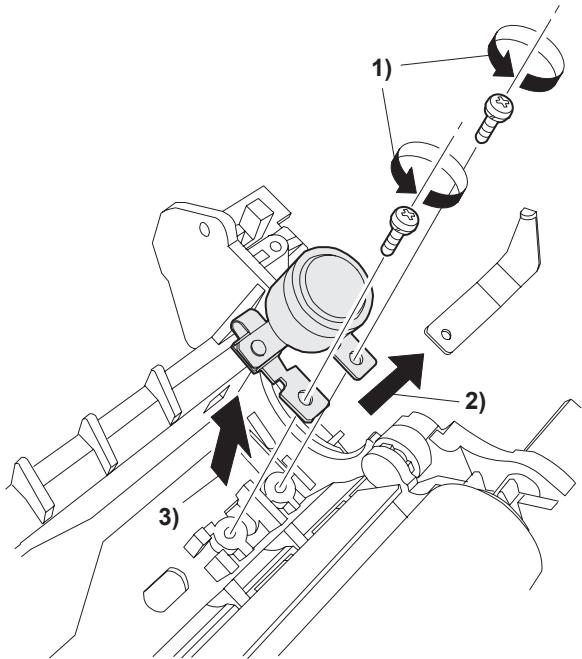
Note: Apply grease to the sections specified with \*1.  
Grease: "JFE552" UKOG-0235FCZZ



- 8) Remove two screws and remove the thermo unit.

Note: The set temperature of the thermostat differs from that of the current model.

	Temperature
Current model	210°C
AR-203E/5420	230°C
AR-M200/M201	



### C. Assembly procedure

For assembly, reverse the disassembly procedure.

## 5. Tray paper feed/transport section

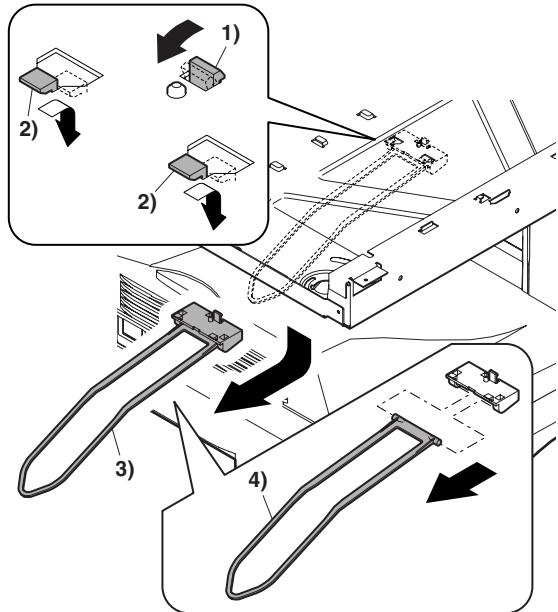
### A. List

No.	Part name Ref.
1	PPD1 sensor PWB
2	POD sensor PWB
3	LSU unit
4	Intermediate frame unit
5	Paper feed roller

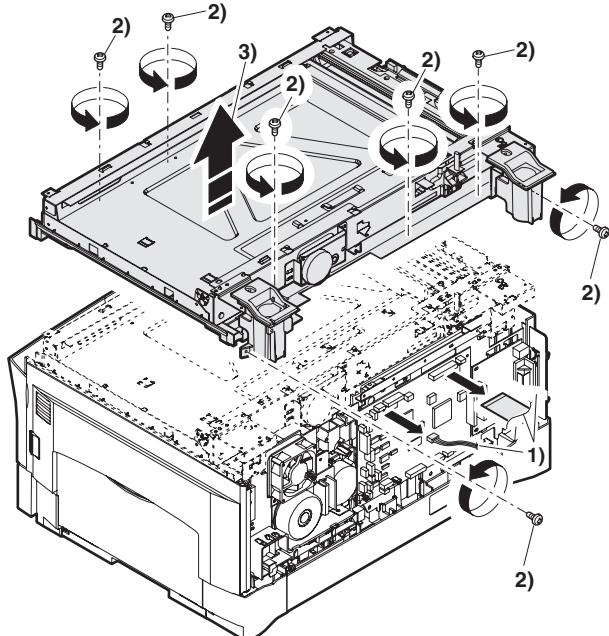
### B. Disassembly procedure

- 1) Remove the paper holding arm.

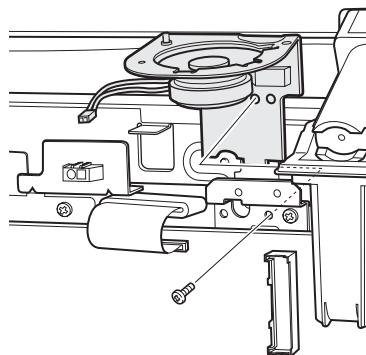
Remove the arm holder from the main unit, and remove the holder from the arm. (AR-M200/M201)



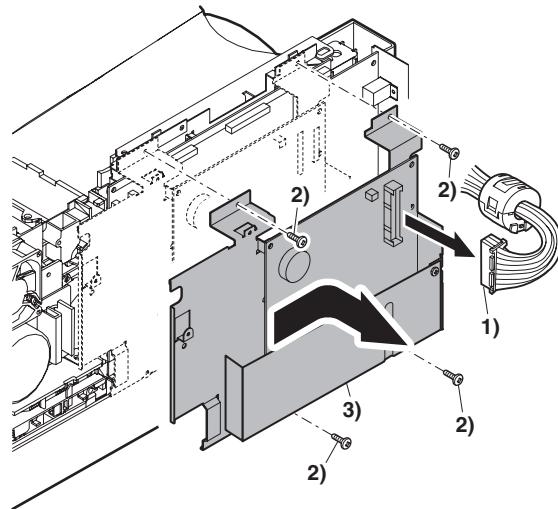
- 2) Remove two screws, and remove the hinge guide R.
- 3) Disconnect the connector. (2 positions)
- 4) Remove five screws, and remove the scanner unit.
- 5) Remove the fan duct.



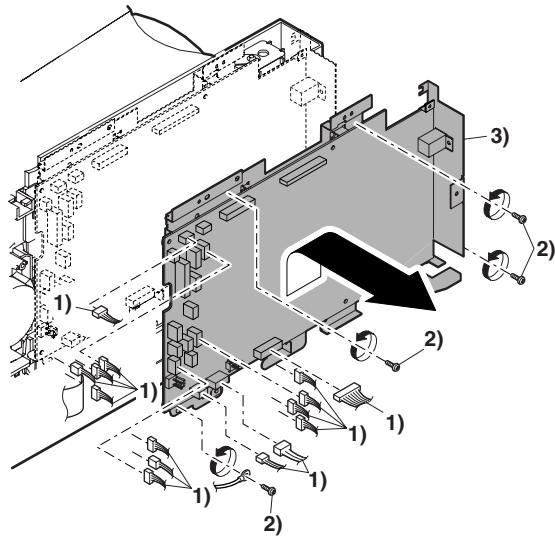
- 6) Remove the connector and the screw, and remove the speaker unit. (When the AR-FX13 is installed)



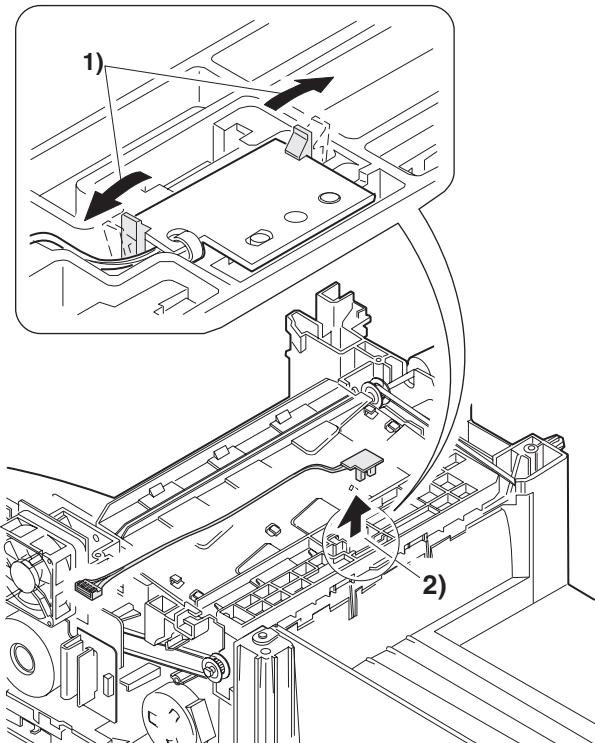
- 7) Remove the connector.
- 8) Remove four screws, and remove the FAX PWB unit. (When the AR-FX13 is installed)



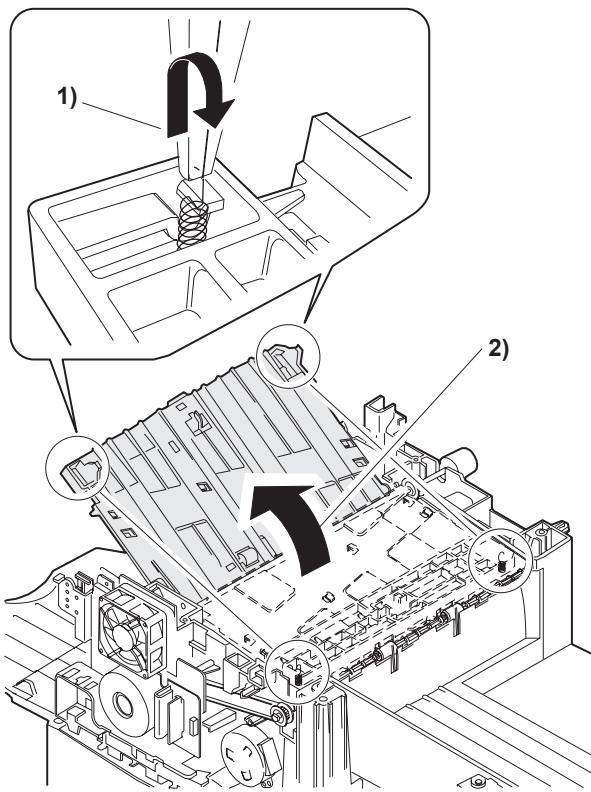
- 9) Remove each connector and four screws, and remove the MCU PWB. (The shape of the MCU PWB differs depending on the model.)



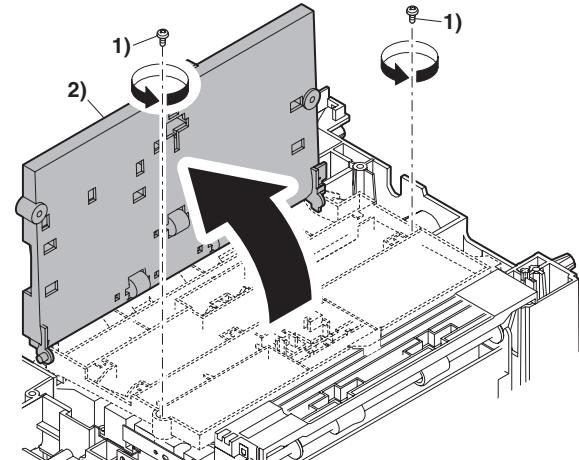
- 10) Remove the PWB insulation mylar and remove the paper transport detection sensor (POD).



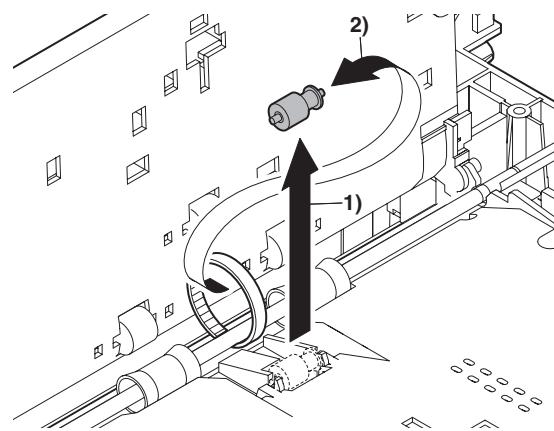
- 11) Remove two springs and open the intermediate frame unit. (AR-203E/5420)



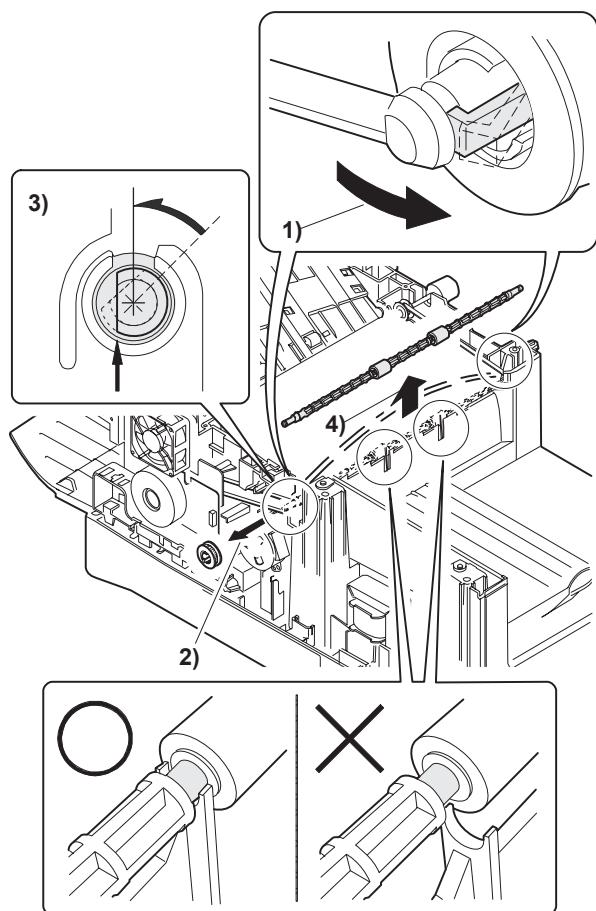
- 12) Remove the screw, and open the upper paper guide. (AR-M200/M201)



- 13) Remove the roller, and remove the belt. (AR-M200/M201)

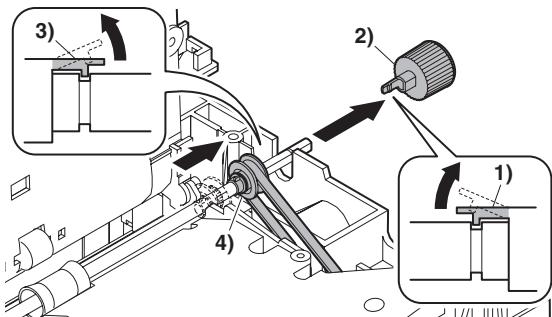


14) Remove the pulleys on the both sides and remove the paper exit roller. (AR-203E/5420)

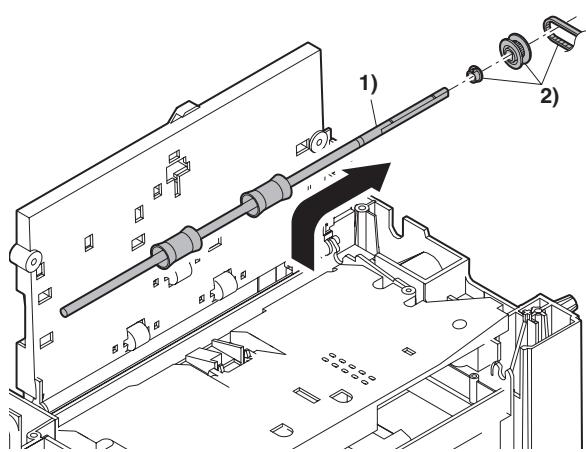


15) Disengage the pawl, and remove the roller knob.

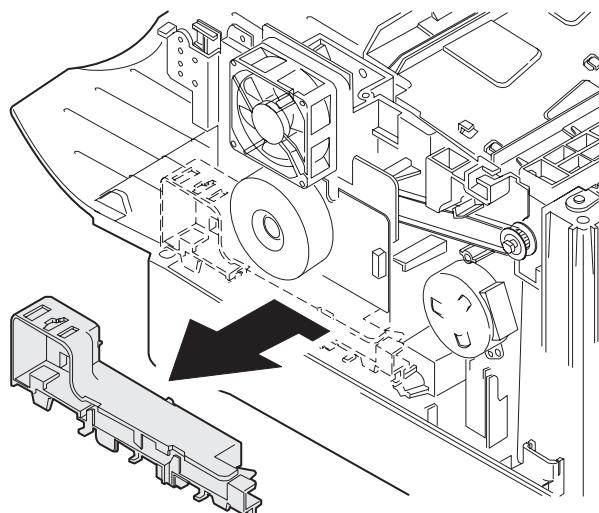
16) Disengage the pawl, and shift the pulley and the bearing.



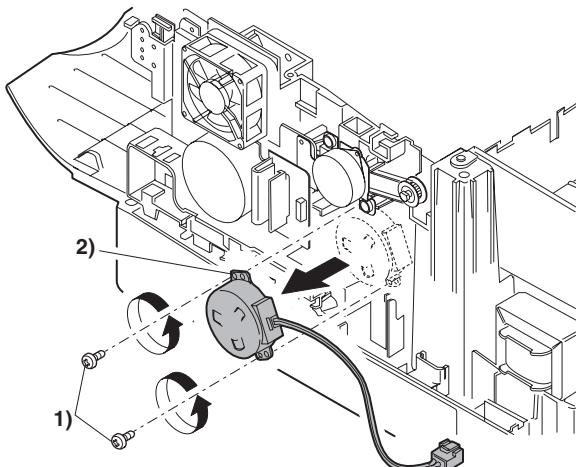
17) Remove the paper exit roller, and remove the belt, the pulley, and the bearing.



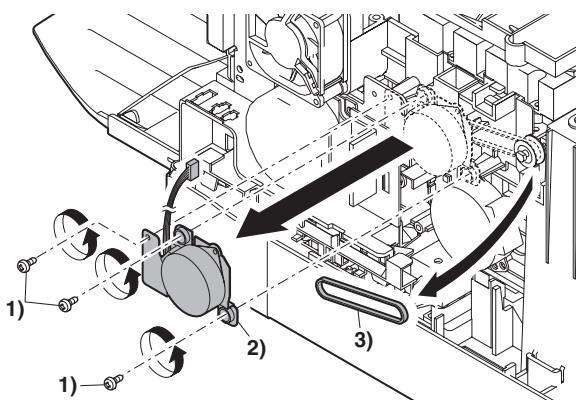
18) Remove the harness guide.



19) Remove two screws and remove the toner motor.



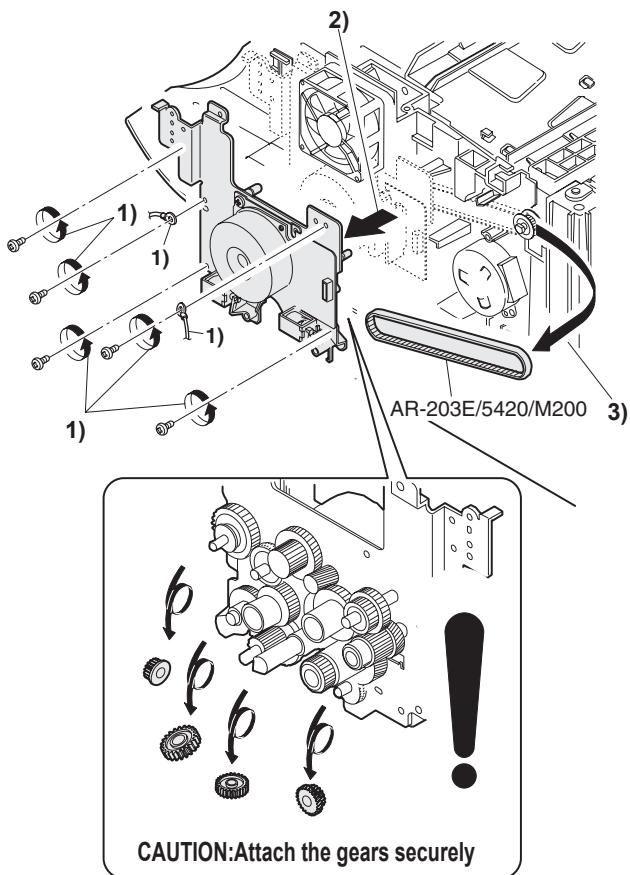
20) Remove three screws, and remove the DUP motor unit and the belt. (AR-M201)



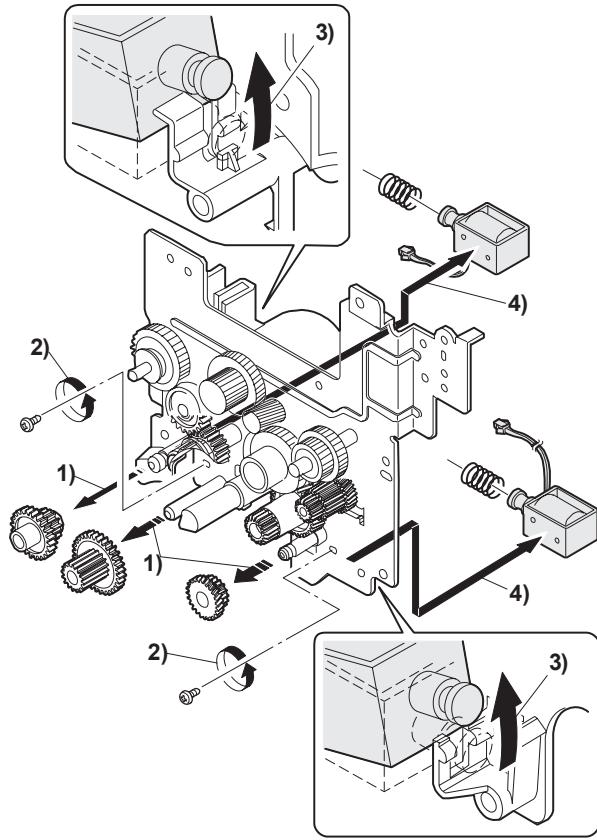
21) Remove five screws and the grounding wire.

For the AR-203E/5420/M200, remove the main drive plate and the belt.

For the AR-M201, remove the main drive plate.

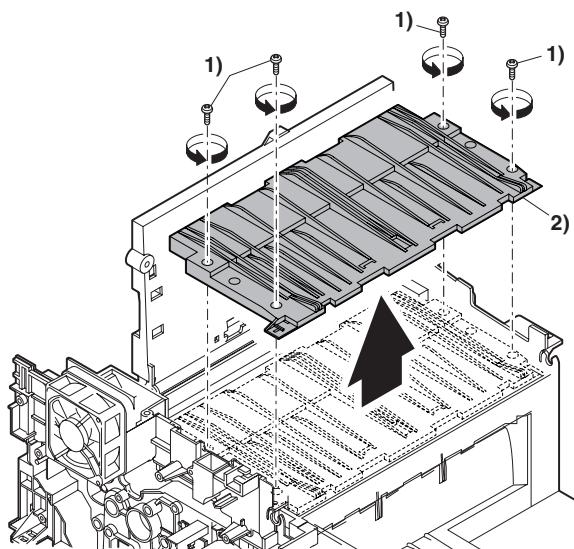


22) Remove the parts as shown below, and remove the pressure release solenoid and the paper feed solenoid.



23) Remove four screws, and remove the paper guide unit.

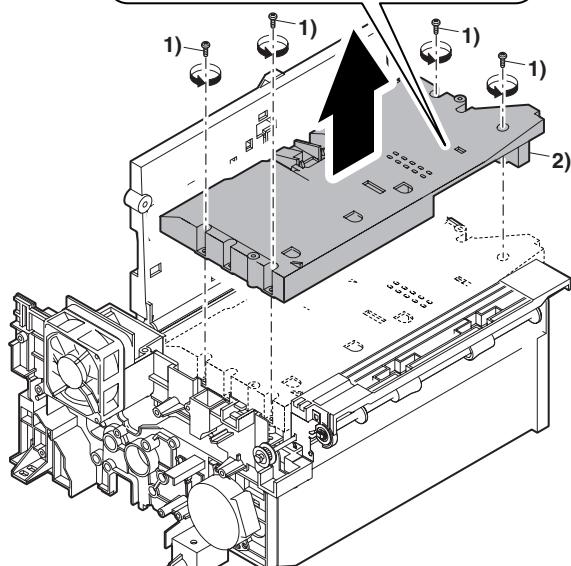
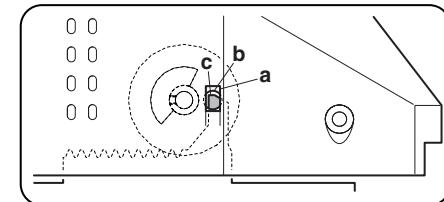
(AR-203E/5420)



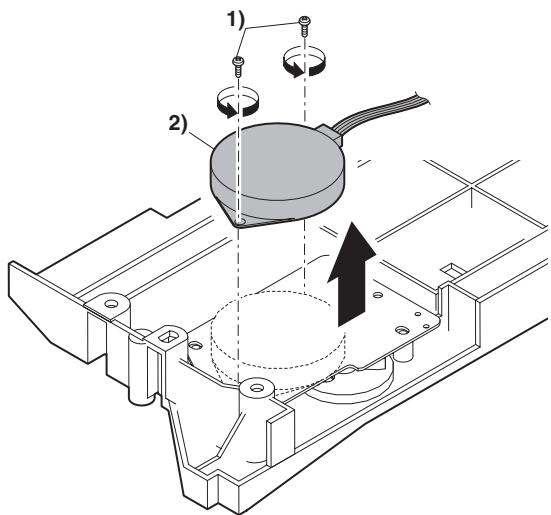
24) Remove four screws, and remove the lower paper guide unit.  
(AR-M200/M201)

[Note for installation]

Fit the lower paper guide hole (a) with the shifter gear hole (b) so that the black resin (c) of the shifter unit can be checked.

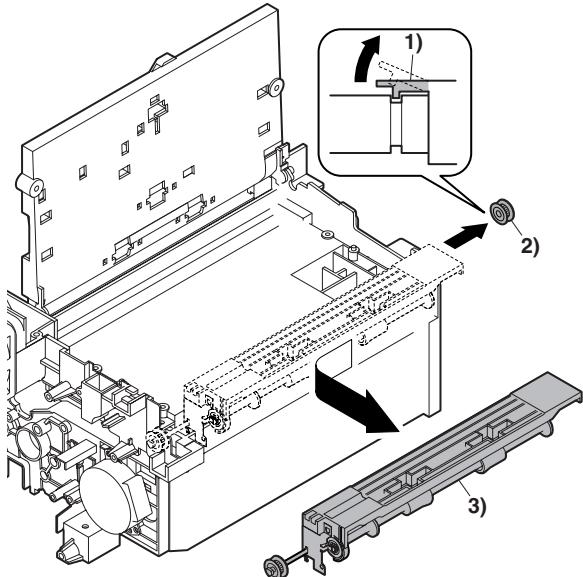


25) Put the lower paper guide unit upside down, remove two screws, and remove the shifter motor. (AR-M200/M201)



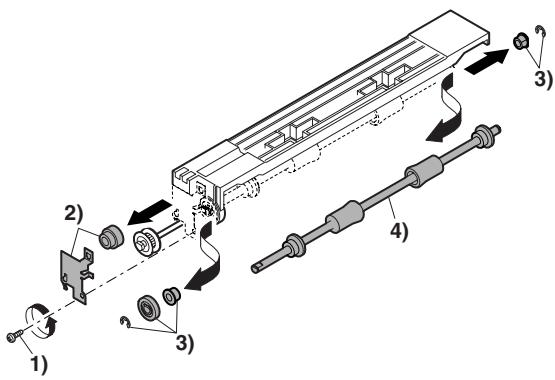
26) Remove the screw, and remove the grounding plate and the gear. (AR-M200/M201)

27) Remove the E-ring, the gear, and the bearing, and remove the shifter roller. (AR-M200/M201)

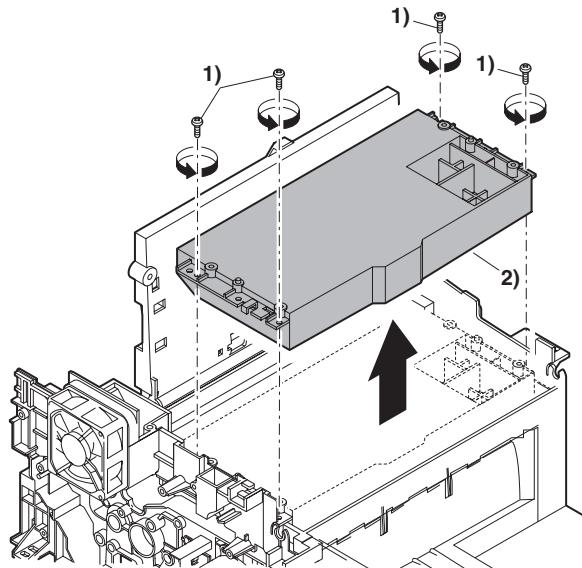


28) Disengage the pawl, and remove the pulley.

29) Shift and remove the shifter unit. (AR-M200/M201)



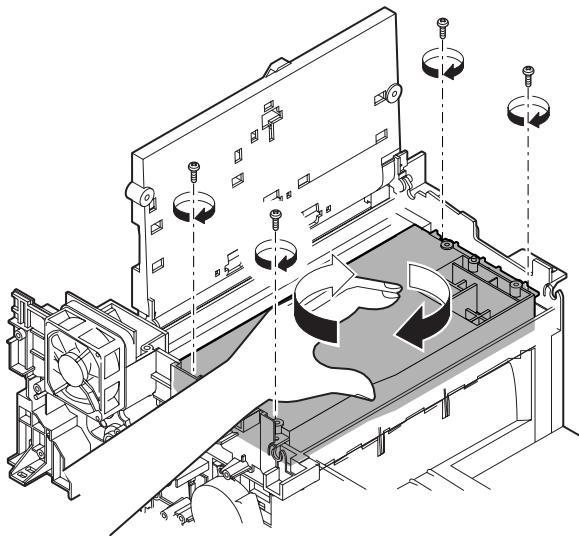
30) Remove four screws, and remove the LSU unit.



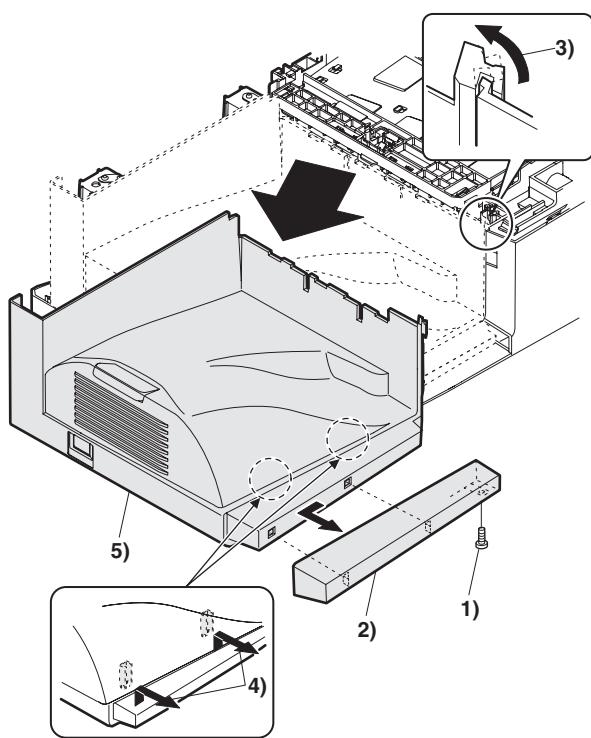
#### [Note for assembling the LSU]

When installing the LSU, turn the LSU clockwise and fix with screws in order to provide an attachment backlash in the proper direction.

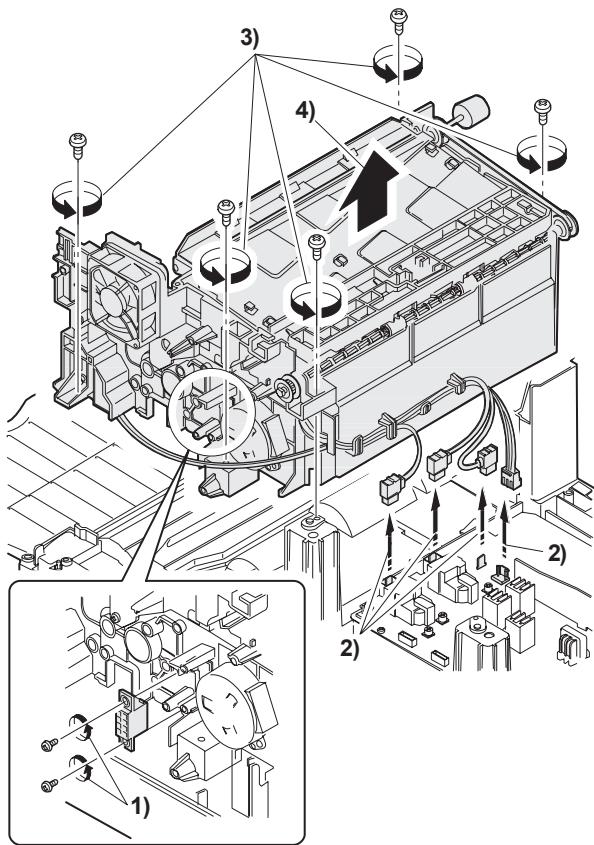
Observe the following sequence of fixing screws.



31) Remove the screw, slide the left cabinet to the left to detach it.  
Remove each pawl, and remove the paper exit tray.

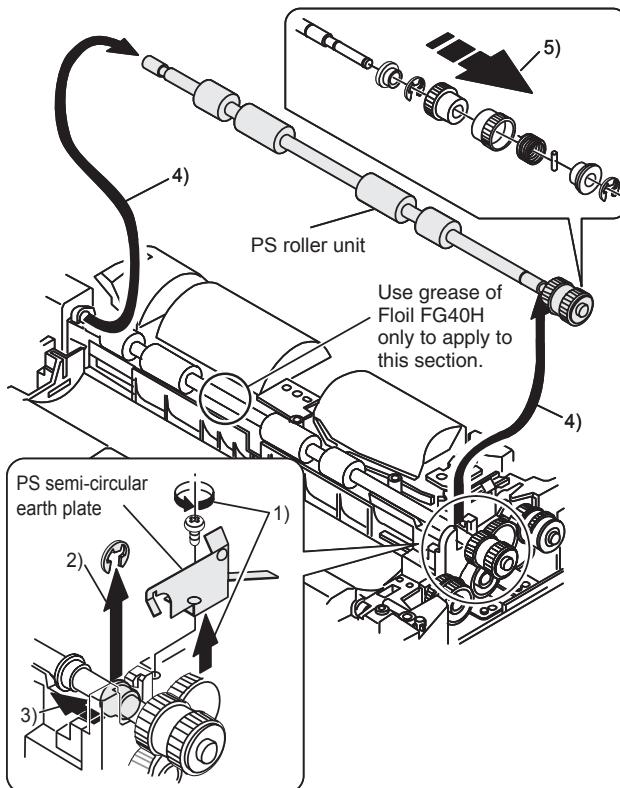


32) Remove two screws and remove the fusing connector.  
33) Remove five screws and the connector, and lift the intermediate frame unit to remove.

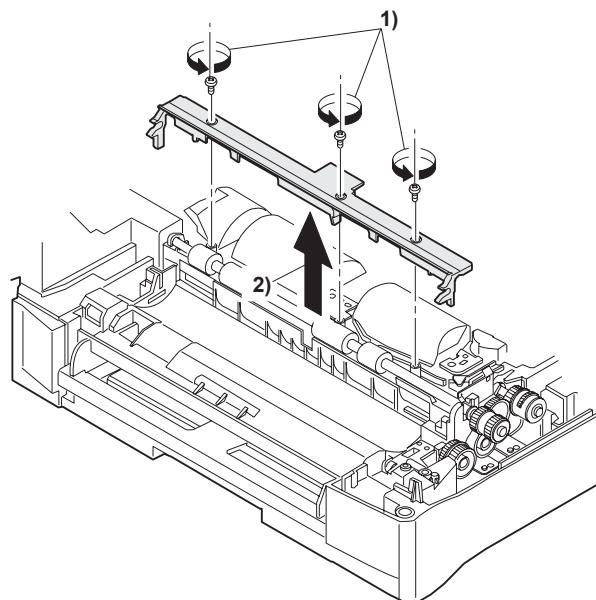


34) Remove the screw and the E-ring, and remove the PS semi-circular earth plate and the PS roller unit.

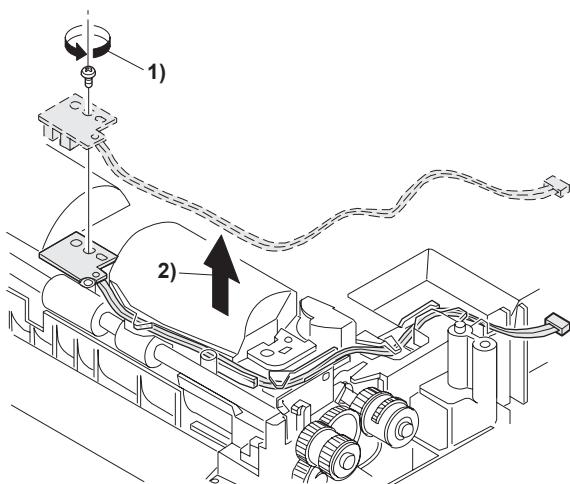
35) Remove the E-ring and remove the spring clutch from the PS roller unit.



36) Remove three screws and remove the TC front paper guide.

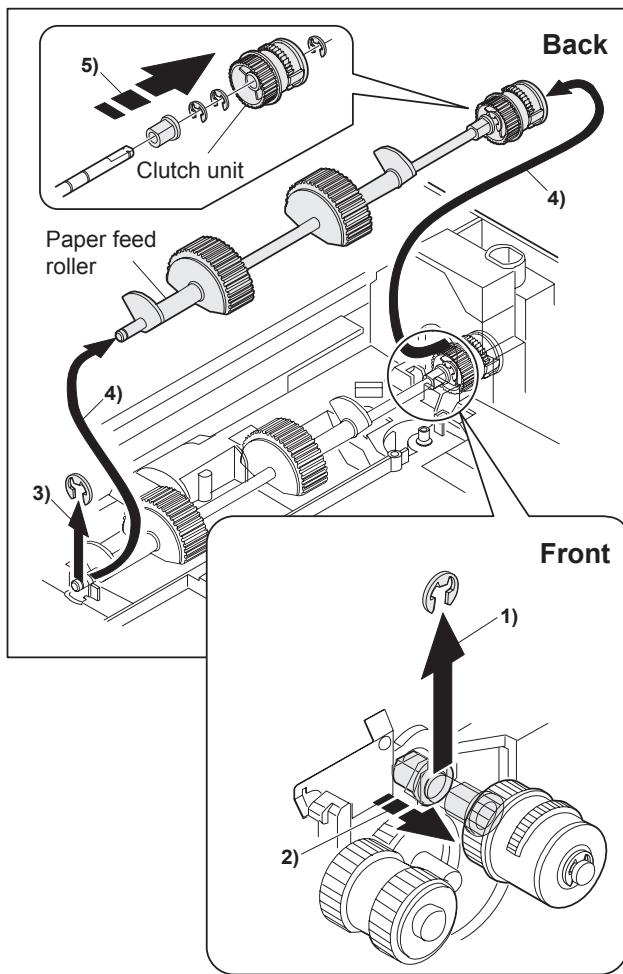


37) Remove the screw and the connector, and remove the PPD1 sensor PWB.



38) Remove two E-rings and remove the paper feed roller.

39) Remove three E-rings and remove the clutch unit.



## 6. Manual paper feed section

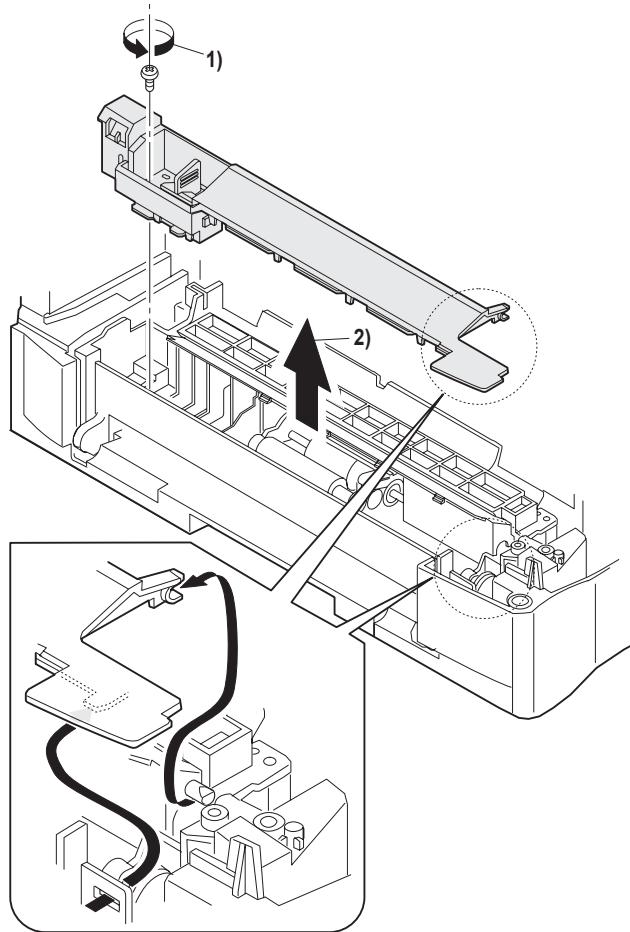
### A. List

No.	Part name Ref.
1	Manual transport roller
2	Cassette detection switch
3	PPD1 sensor PWB
4	Side door detection unit

### B. Disassembly procedure

#### Multi unit

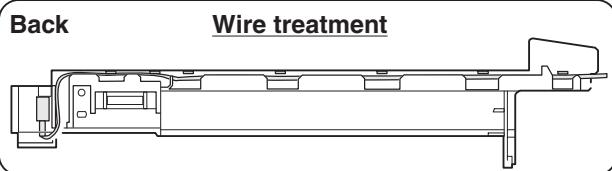
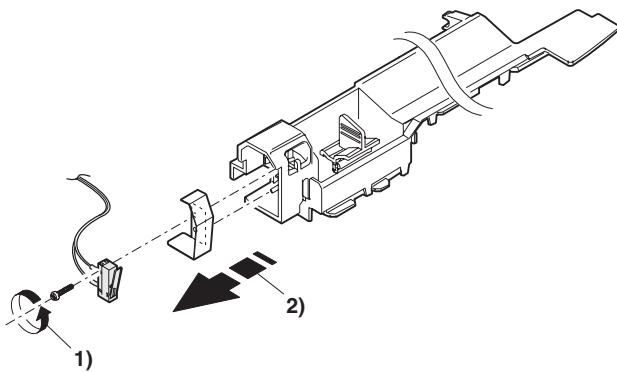
1) Remove the screw and remove the multi upper cover.



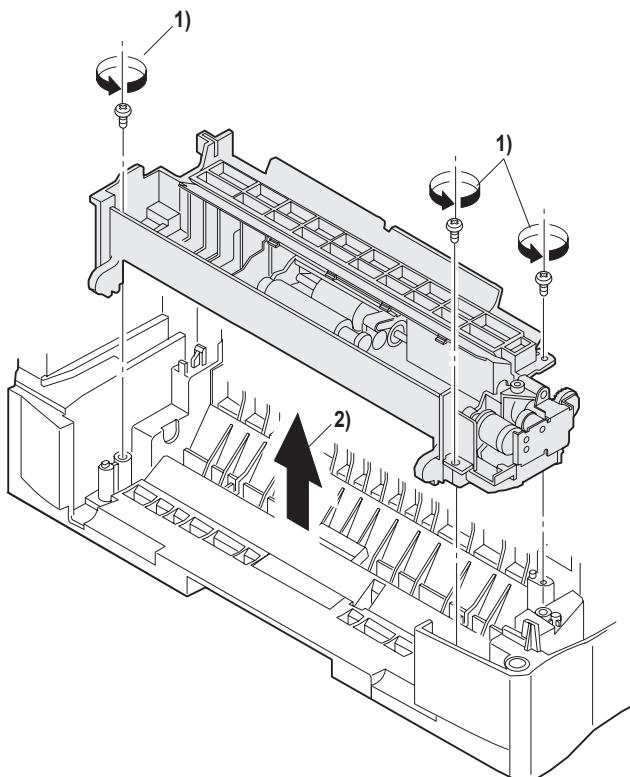
### C. Assembly procedure

For assembly, reverse the disassembly procedure.

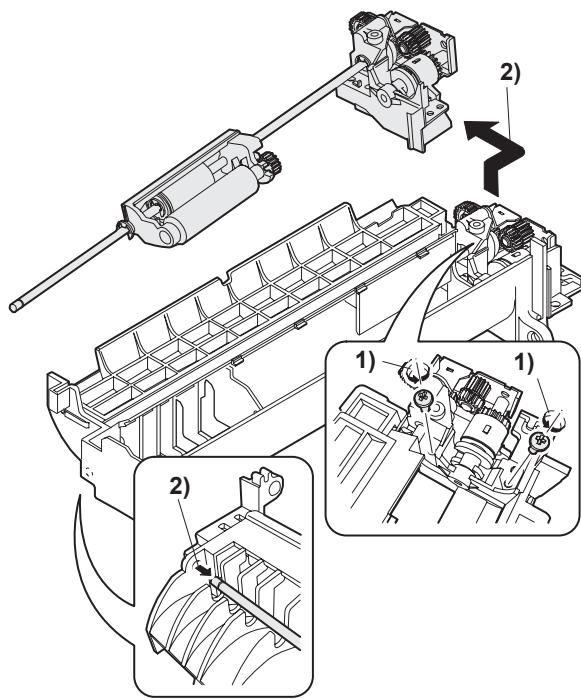
2) Remove the screw and remove the side door detection unit.



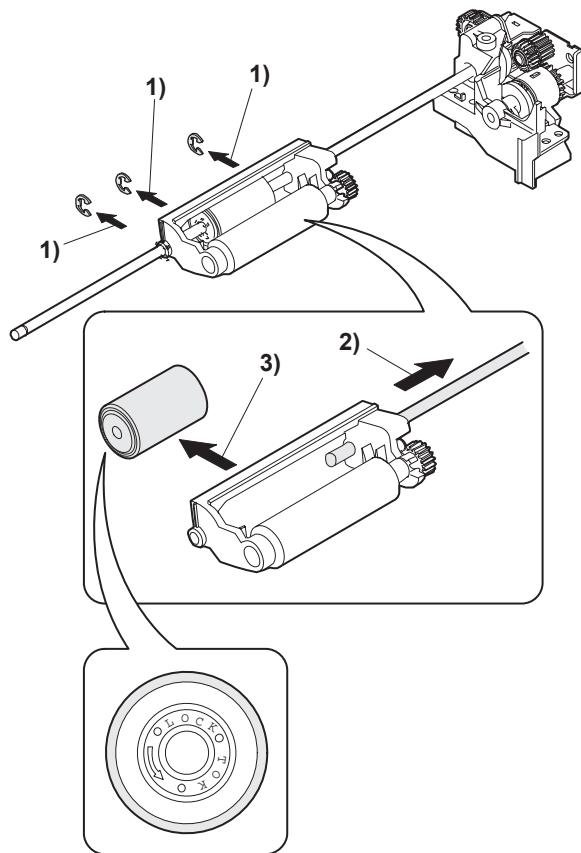
3) Remove three screws and remove the multi paper feed upper frame.



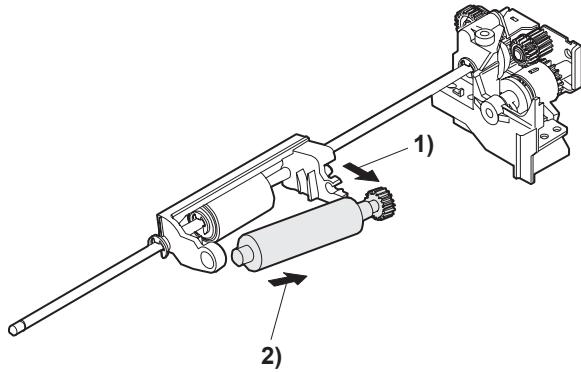
4) Remove two screws and remove the multi feed bracket unit from the multi paper feed upper frame.



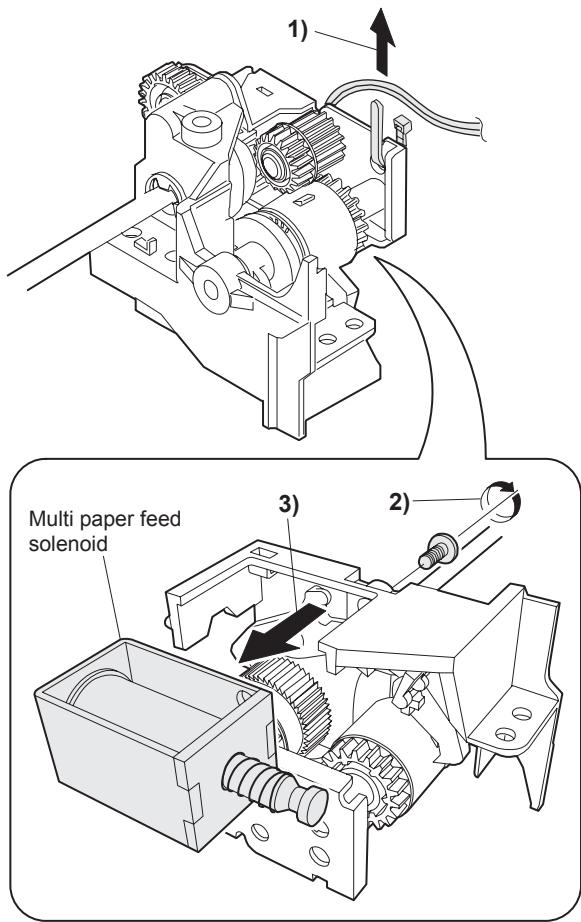
5) Remove three E-rings and remove the manual paper feed roller B9.



- 6) Remove the pick-up roller.



- 7) Cut the binding band and remove the multi paper feed solenoid.

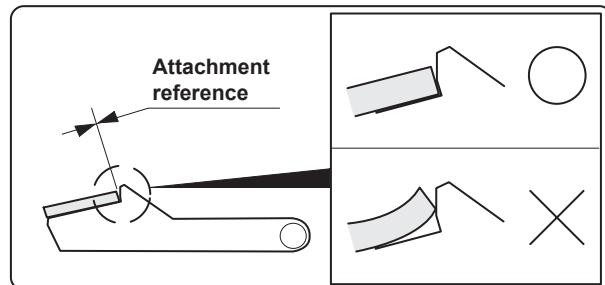
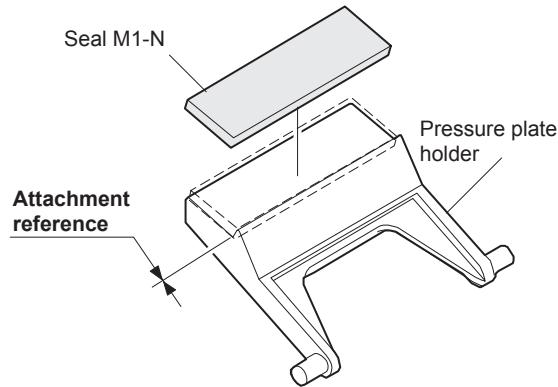


### C. Assembly procedure

For assembly, reverse the disassembly procedure.

### D. Pressure plate holder attachment

- 1) Attach the pressure plate holder so that the resin section is not covered with the seal M1-N.



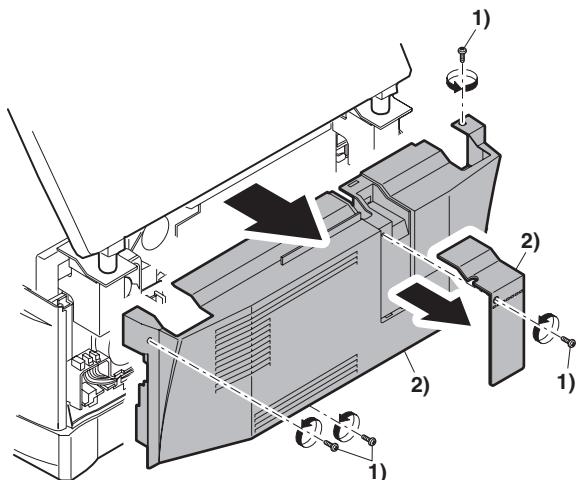
## 7. Rear frame section

### A. List

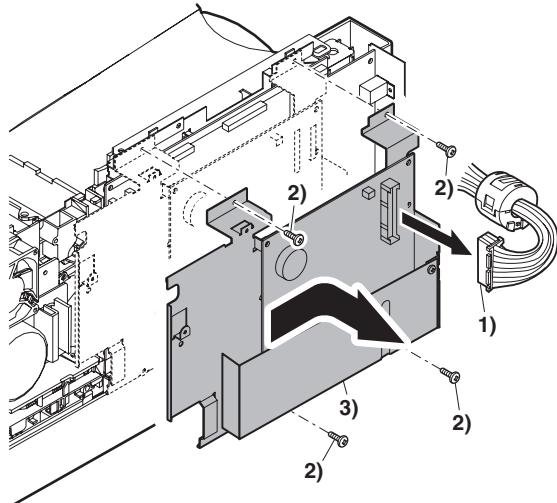
No.	Part name Ref.
1	Scanner motor
2	Main motor
3	Exhaust fan motor
4	Main PWB

### B. Disassembly procedure

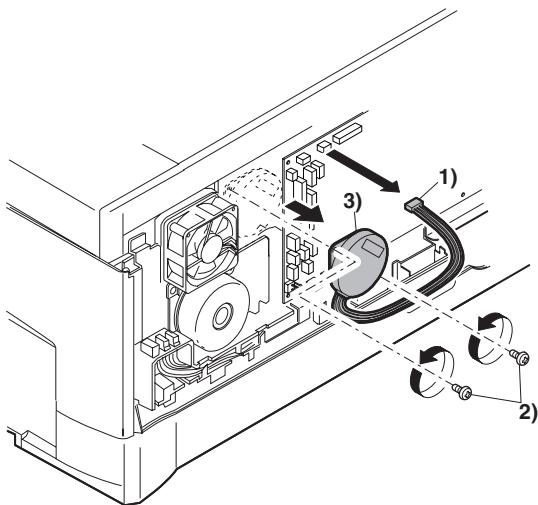
- 1) Remove four screws, and remove the rear cabinet and the rear cabinet cover.



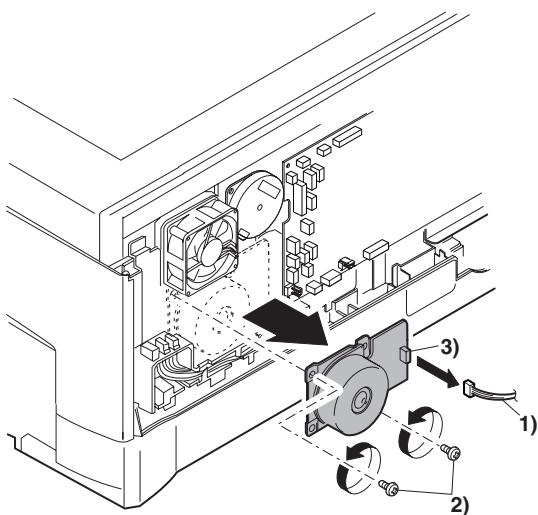
- 2) Remove the connector.
- 3) Remove four screws, and remove the FAX PWB unit. (When the AR-FX13 is installed)



- 4) Disconnect the connector.
- 5) Remove two screws, and remove the scanner motor.

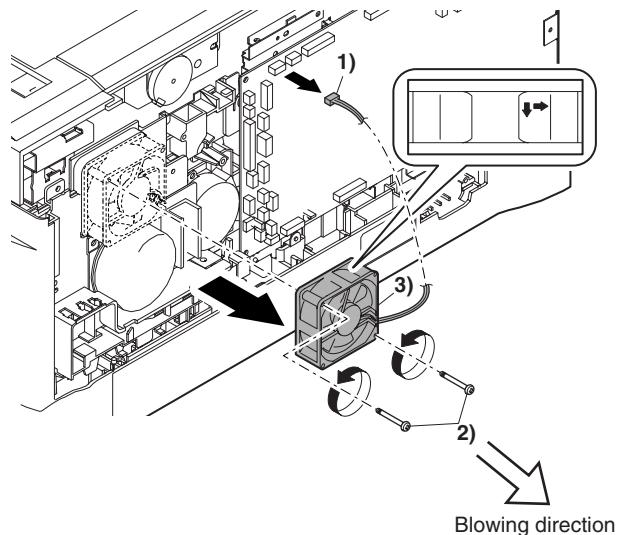


- 6) Remove two screws and one harness, and remove the main motor.

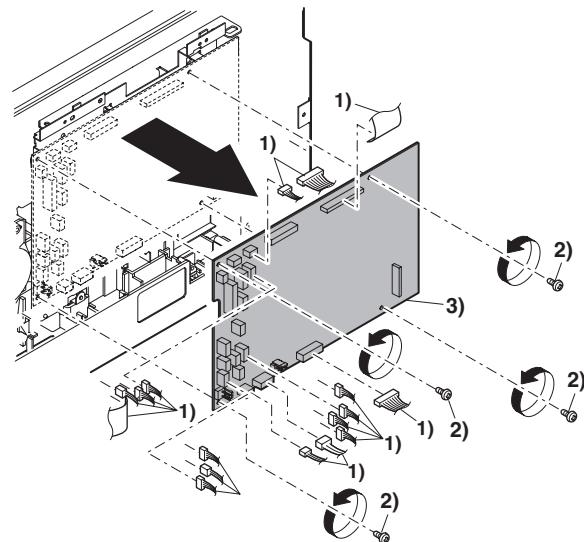


- 7) Remove two screws and one connector, and remove the exhaust fan motor.

Note: Be careful of the installing directions of the fan.  
Attach it so that the blowing direction faces outside.



- 8) Disconnect the connectors.
- 9) Remove the five screws, and remove the MCU PWB.



## C. Assembly procedure

For assembly, reverse the disassembly procedure.

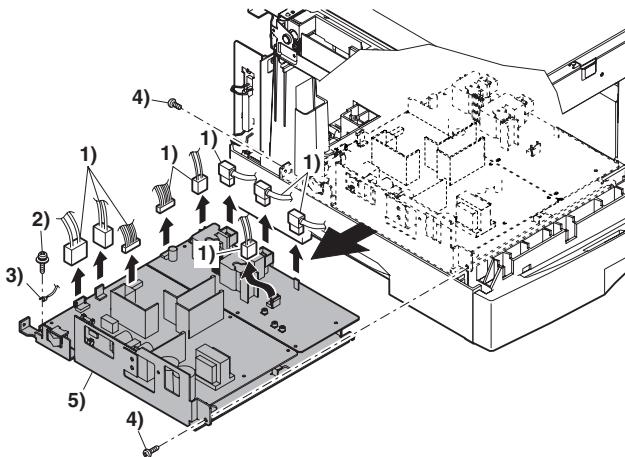
## 8 Power section

### A. List

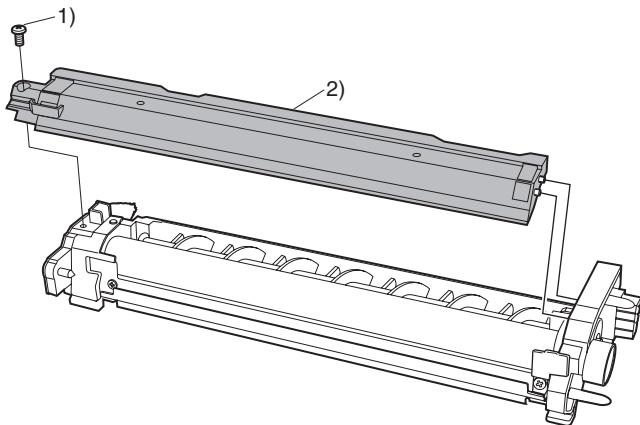
No.	Part name Ref.
1	Power PWB

### B. Disassembly procedure

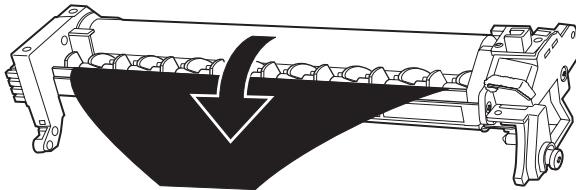
- 1) Disconnect each connector.
- 2) Remove the screw, and remove the earth line.
- 3) Remove two screws, and remove the power PWB unit.



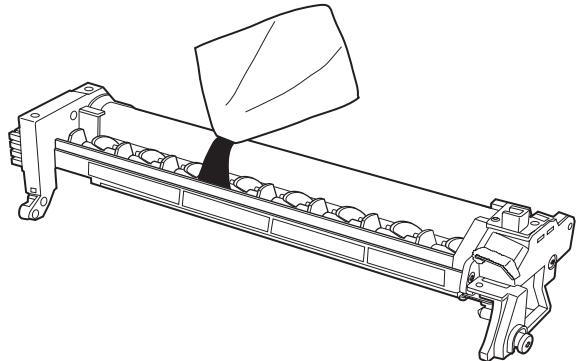
- 2) Remove the screw, and remove the DV cover.



- 3) Remove the used developer.



- 4) Supply new developer.



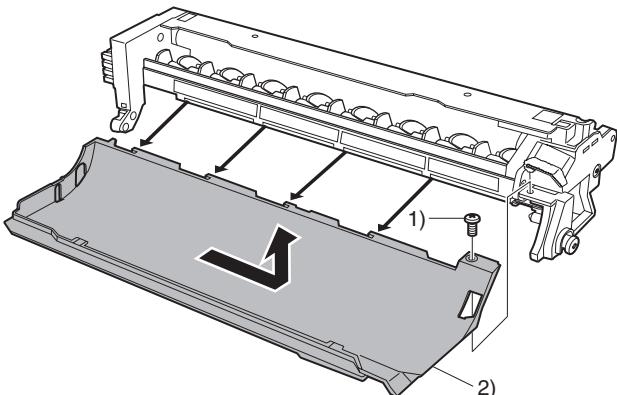
### C. Assembly procedure

For assembly, reverse the disassembly procedure.

## 9. DV unit section

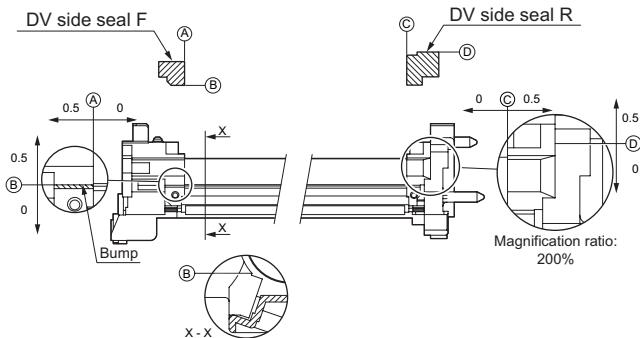
### A. Developer

- 1) Remove the screw, slide the pawl to the right side, and remove the TN guide.



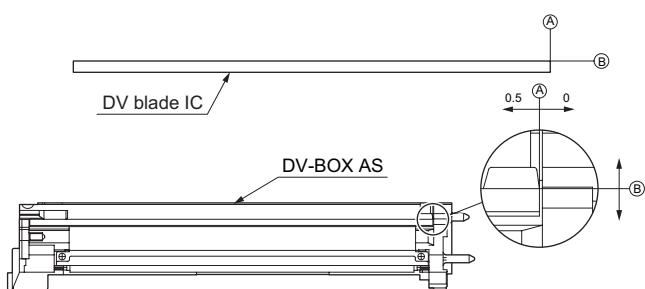
### B. DV seal

- 1) Peel off the old DV seal.
- 2) Clean the attachment surface with alcohol.
- 3) Attach the new DV seal to the reference position.



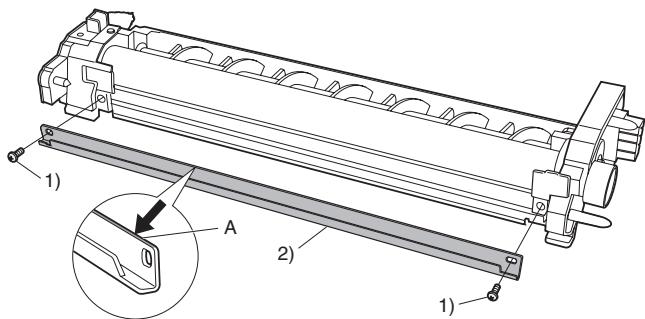
### C. DV blade

- 1) Peel off the old DV blade.
- 2) Clean the attachment surface with alcohol.
- 3) Attach the new DV blade to the reference position.



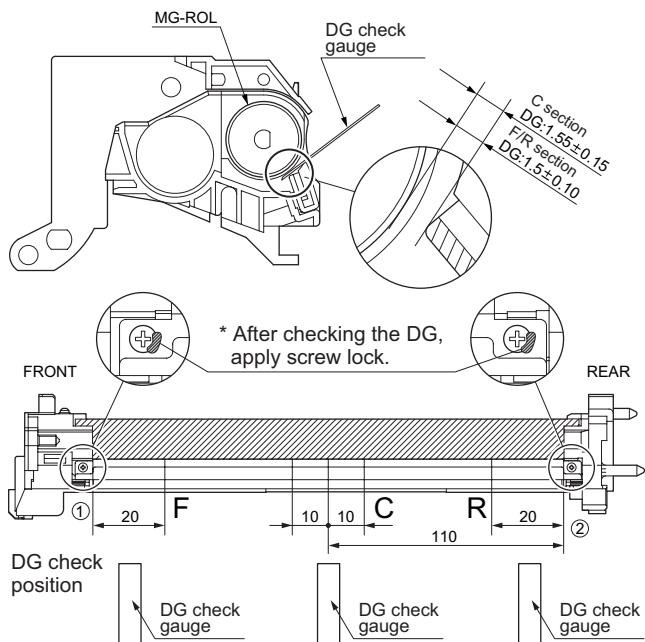
### D. DV doctor

- 1) Remove the screw, and remove the DV doctor.
- \* Clean the edge (A) section.



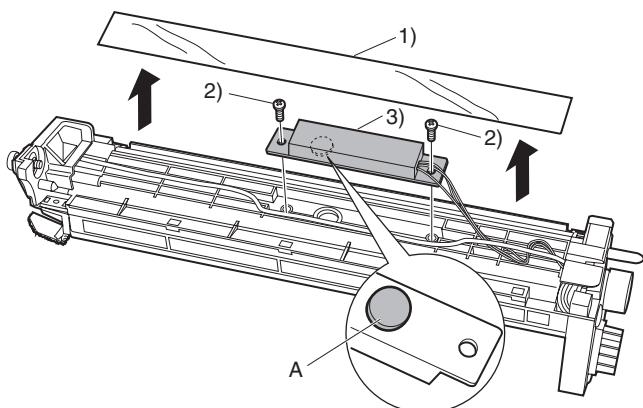
#### ■ Note for installation

- 1) Insert the DG check gauge as shown in the figure.
  - 2) After checking, install the doctor gap and fix it with a screw.
- \* Apply screw lock to the screw tightening section as shown in the figure below.



### E. DV sensor

- 1) Remove the Mylar.
  - 2) Remove the screw, and remove the DV sensor.
- \* Clean the sensor (A) section.



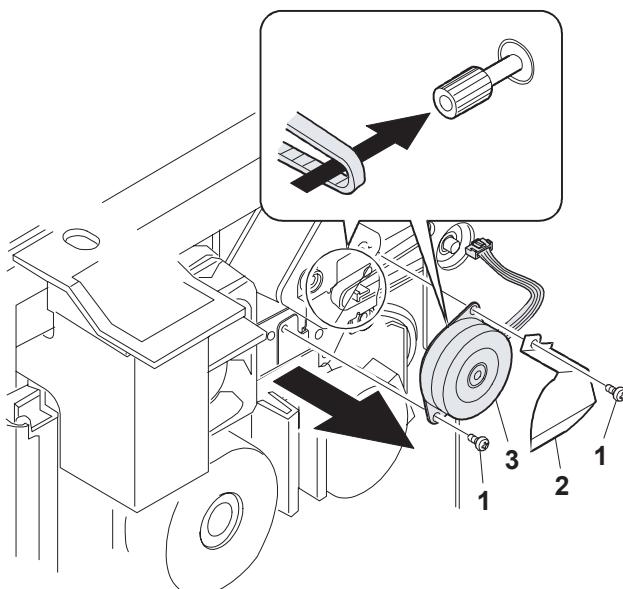
## 10. Duplex motor section (AR-M201 only)

### A. List

No.	Part name Ref.
1	Duplex motor

### B. Disassembly procedure

- 1) Remove the rear cabinet.
- 2) Remove two screws.
- 3) Remove the Duplex motor cover.
- 4) Remove the Duplex motor.



Note: When reassembling, be sure to engage the Duplex motor gear with the belt on the main body side.

### C. Assembly procedure

For assembly, reverse the disassembly procedure.

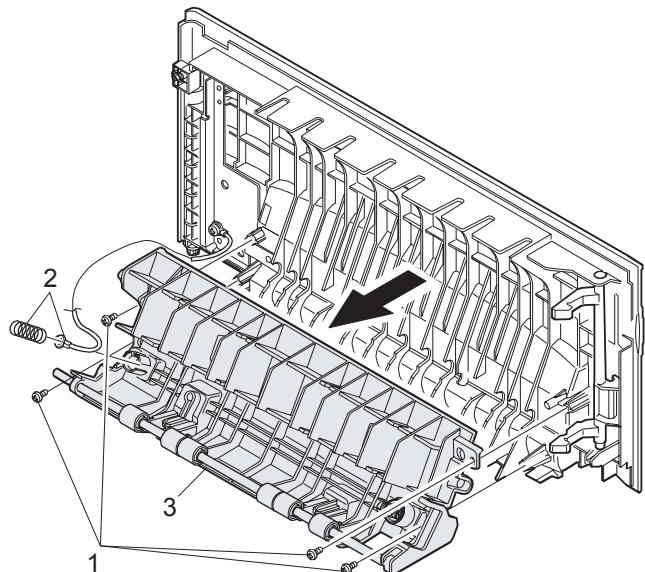
## 11. Reverse roller section (AR-M201 only)

### A. List

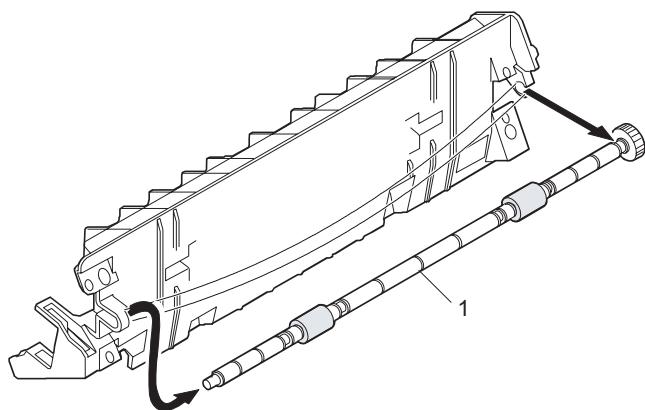
No.	Part name Ref.
1	Reverse roller

### B. Disassembly procedure

- 1) Remove four screws.
- 2) Remove the spring, and the earth wire.
- 3) Remove the reverse unit.



- 4) Bend the reverse roller and remove it.



### C. Assembly procedure

For assembly, reverse the disassembly procedure.

## [9] ADJUSTMENTS

### 1. Optical section

#### A. Copy magnification ratio adjustment

The copy magnification ratio must be adjusted in the main scanning direction and in the sub scanning direction. To adjust, use SIM 48-1.

##### (1) Outline

The main scanning (front/rear) direction magnification ratio adjustment is made automatically or manually.

Automatic adjustment: The width of the reference line marked on the shading correction plate is scanned to perform the main scanning (front/rear) direction magnification ratio adjustment automatically.

Manual adjustment: The adjustment is made by [Copy quantity] keys (or [Numeric] keys for the AR-M200/M201) operations. (In either of the automatic and manual adjustments, the zoom data register set value is changed for adjustment.)

The magnification ratio in the sub scanning direction is adjusted by changing the carriage (scanner) scanning speed.

##### (2) Main scanning direction magnification ratio adjustment

###### a. Cases when the adjustment is required

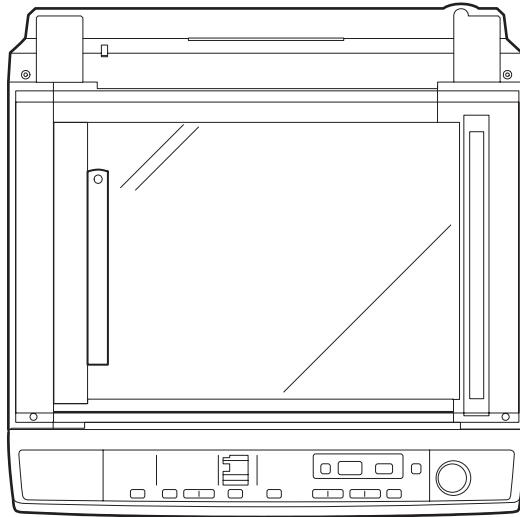
- 1) When the main PWB is replaced.
- 2) When the EEPROM in the main PWB is replaced.
- 3) When "U2" trouble occurs.
- 4) When repairing or replacing the optical section.

###### b. Necessary tools

- Screwdriver (+)
- Scale

###### c. Adjustment procedure

- 1) Set the scale vertically on the document table. (Use a long scale for precise adjustment.)



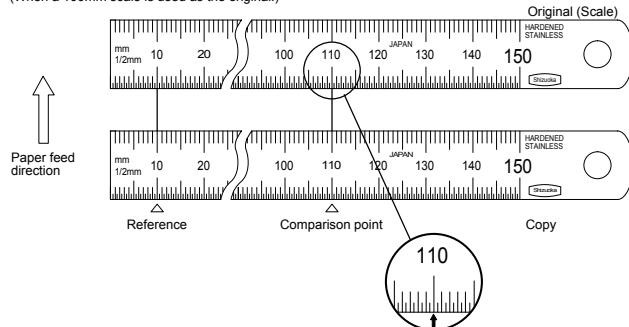
- 2) Set the copy magnification ratio to 100%.
- 3) Make a copy on A4 or 8 1/2" x 11" paper.
- 4) Measure the length of the copied scale image.

- 5) Calculate the main scanning direction magnification ratio.

Main scanning direction magnification ratio

$$= \frac{\text{Copy image dimensions}}{\text{Original dimension}} \times 100 (\%)$$

(When a 100mm scale is used as the original.)



- 6) Check that the copy magnification ratio is within the specified range. If it is not within the specified range, perform the following procedures.

- 7) Execute SIM 48-1 to select the main scanning direction copy magnification ratio adjustment mode.  
To select the adjustment mode, use the [Exposure mode selector] key (or [◀] [▶] key for the AR-M200/M201).

In the case of the automatic adjustment, when the START switch is pressed, the mirror base unit moves to the white plate for shading to scan the width of the reference line, calculating the correction value and displaying and storing this value.

After execution of the automatic adjustment, go out from the simulation mode and make a copy to check the magnification ratio.

If the magnification ratio is not in the specified range ( $100 \pm 1.0\%$ ), manually adjust as follows.

(AR-203E/5420)

Adjustment mode	Display lamp	Default
Main scanning direction magnification ratio	TEXT mode lamp	50
OC mode sub scan direction magnification ratio	PHOTO mode lamp	50

(AR-M200/M201)

Adjustment mode	Display item	LED	Default
Main scan direction magnification ratio	F-R	PRINT mode lamp	50
OC mode sub scan direction magnification ratio	SCAN	SCAN mode lamp	50

- 8) Enter the new set value of main scanning direction copy magnification ratio with the copy quantity key (or [Numeric] key for the AR-M200/M201), and press the [START] key.
- 9) Change the set value and repeat the adjustment until the ratio is within the specified range.  
When the set value is changed by 1, the magnification ratio is changed by 0.1%.

##### (3) Sub scanning direction copy magnification ratio

###### a. Cases when the adjustment is required

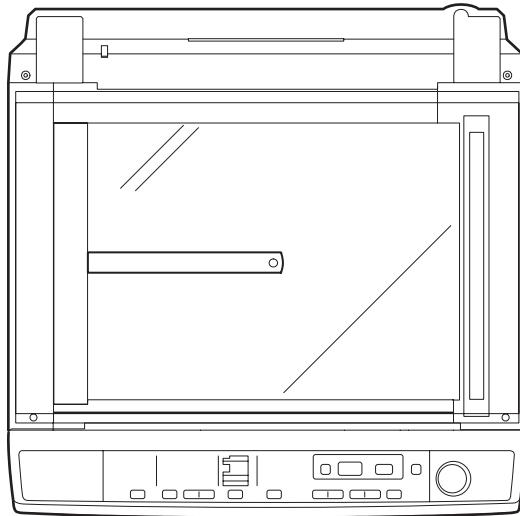
- 1) When the scanner unit drive section is disassembled or the part is replaced.
- 2) When the main PWB is replaced.
- 3) When the EEPROM in the main PWB is replaced.
- 4) When "U2" trouble occurs.

###### b. Necessary tools

- Scale

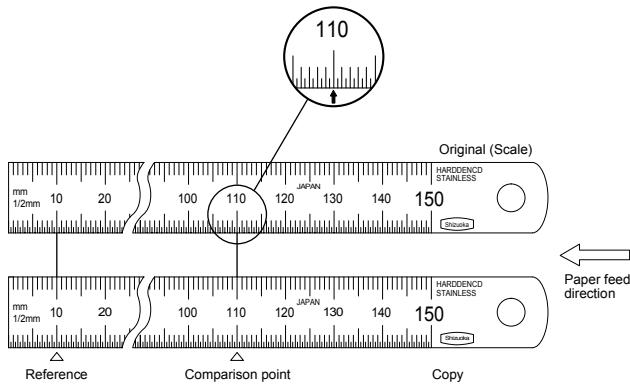
### c. Adjustment procedure

- Set the scale on the document table as shown below. (Use a long scale for precise adjustment.)



- Set the copy magnification ratio to 100%.
- Make a copy on A4 or 8 1/2" x 11" paper.
- Measure the length of the copied scale image.
- Calculate the sub scanning direction copy magnification ratio using the formula below.

$$= \frac{\text{Copy image dimensions}}{\text{Original dimension}} \times 100 (\%)$$



- Check that the actual copy magnification ratio is within the specified range. ( $100 \pm 1.0\%$ ). If it is not within the specified range, perform the following procedures.
- Execute SIM 48-1 to select the sub scanning direction copy magnification ratio adjustment mode.  
To select the adjustment mode, use the [Exposure mode selector] key (or [ $\blacktriangleleft$ ] [ $\triangleright$ ] key for the AR-M200/M201). (PHOTO lamp ON (or SCAN mode lamp ON for the AR-M200/M201))
- Enter the new set value of sub scanning direction copy magnification ratio with the [Copy quantity] keys (or [Numeric] keys for the AR-M200/M201), and press the [START] key.

Repeat procedures 1) - 8) until the sub scanning direction actual copy magnification ratio in 100% copying is within the specified range.

When the set value is changed by 1, the magnification ratio is changed by 0.1%.

### B. Image position adjustment

There are following eleven kinds of image position adjustments, which are made by laser control except for the image scan start position adjustment. For the adjustments, SIM 50-01 and 50-10 are used.

No.	Mode	SIM
1	Print start position (Main cassette paper feed)	50-01
2	Print start position (2nd cassette paper feed)	50-01
3	Print start position (Manual paper feed)	50-01
4	Image lead edge void amount	50-01
5	Image scan start position	50-01
6	Image rear edge void amount (Cassette paper feed)	50-01
7	Image rear edge void amount (Manual paper feed)	50-01
8	Print center offset (Main cassette paper feed)	50-10
9	Print center offset (2nd cassette paper feed)	50-10
10	Print center offset (Manual paper feed)	50-10
11	2nd print center offset (Main cassette paper feed)	50-10

#### (AR-203E/5420)

To select the adjustment mode with SIM 50-01, use the [Exposure mode selector] key.

The relationship between the adjustment modes and the lighting lamps are as shown in the table below.

Adjustment mode	Lamp ON
Print start position (Main cassette paper feed)	AE, main cassette lamp
★ Print start position (2nd cassette paper feed)	AE, 2nd cassette lamp
Print start position (Manual paper feed)	AE, manual feed lamp
Image lead edge void quantity	TEXT lamp
Image scan start position	PHOTO lamp
Image rear edge void quantity	AE, TEXT, PHOTO lamp

★ : Supported for the installing model and skipped for non-installing mode.

To select the adjustment mode with SIM 50-10, use the [Exposure mode selector] key.

The relationship between the adjustment modes and the lighting lamps are as shown in the table below.

#### Machine with the multi manual paper feed unit

Adjustment mode	Lamp ON
Print center offset (Main cassette paper feed)	AE, main cassette lamp
★ Print center offset (2nd cassette)	AE, 2nd cassette lamp
Print center offset (Manual paper feed)	AE, manual paper feed lamp
★ Second side center offset	TEXT lamp

★ : Supported for the installing model and skipped for non-installing mode.

## (AR-M200/M201)

To select the adjustment mode with SIM 50-01, use the [◀] [▶] key.

The relationship between the adjustment modes and the lighting lamps are as shown in the table below.

Adjustment mode	Display item	Lamp ON
Print start position (Main cassette paper feed)	TRAY1	COPY mode lamp Main cassette lamp
(*) Print start position (2nd cassette paper feed)	TRAY2	COPY mode lamp 2nd cassette lamp
Print start position (Manual paper feed)	MFT	COPY mode lamp Manual paper feed lamp
Image lead edge void amount	DEN-A	PRINT mode lamp Main cassette lamp
Image scan start position	RRC-A	SCAN mode lamp Main cassette lamp
Image rear edge void amount (Cassette paper feed)	DEN-B	COPY mode lamp PRINT mode lamp SCAN mode lamp Main cassette lamp
Image rear edge void amount (Manual paper feed)	RRC-B	COPY mode lamp PRINT mode lamp Manual paper feed lamp

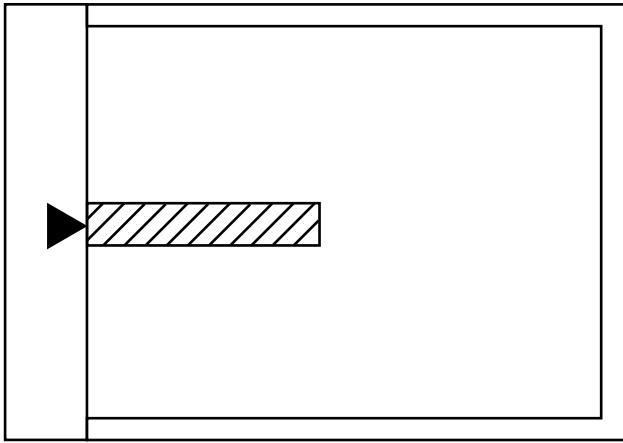
To select the adjustment mode with SIM 50-10, use the [◀] [▶] key.

The relationship between the adjustment modes and the lighting lamps are as shown in the table below.

Adjustment mode	Display item	Lamp ON
Print center offset (Main cassette paper feed)	TRAY1	COPY mode lamp Main cassette lamp
Print center offset (2nd cassette paper feed)	TRAY2	COPY mode lamp 2nd cassette lamp
Print center offset (Manual paper feed)	MFT	COPY mode lamp Manual paper feed lamp
2nd print center offset (Main cassette paper feed)	SIDE2	PRINT mode lamp Main cassette lamp

### (1) Lead edge adjustment

- Set a scale to the center of the paper lead edge guide as shown below, and cover it with B4 or 8 1/2" x 14" paper.



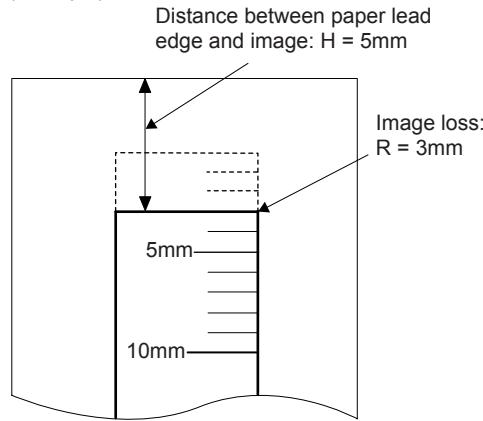
- Execute SIM 50-01
- Set the print start position (AE lamp ON) (A), the lead edge void amount (TEXT lamp ON) (B), and the scan start position (PHOTO lamp ON) (C) to 0, and make a copy of a scale at 100%. (AR-203E/5420)

For the AR-M200/M201, the following LED's are lighted:

- AE lamp/COPY mode lamp: (A)
- TEXT lamp/PRINT mode lamp: (B)
- PHOTO lamp/SCAN mode lamp: (C)

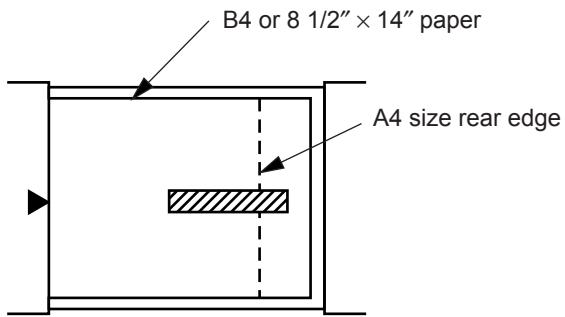
- Measure the image loss amount (R mm) of the scale image.  
Set C = 10 X R (mm). (Example: Set the value of C to 30.)  
When the value of C is increased by 10, the image loss is decreased by 1mm. (Default: 50)
- Measure the distance (H mm) between the paper lead edge and the image print start position.  
Set A = 10 X H (mm). (Example: Set the value of A to 50.)  
When the value of A is increased by 10, the image lead edge is shifted to the paper lead edge by 1mm. (Default: 50)
- Set the lead edge void amount to B = 50 (2.5mm).  
When the value of B is increased by 10, the void amount is increased by about 1mm. For 25 or less, however, the void amount becomes zero. (Default: 50)

(Example)



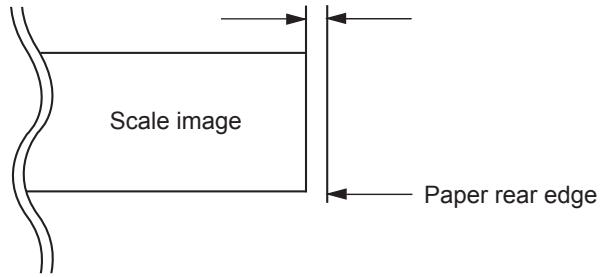
### (2) Image rear edge void amount adjustment

- Set a scale to the rear edge section of A4 or 11" x 8 1/2" paper size as shown in the figure below, and cover it with B4 or 8 1/2" x 14" paper.



- Execute SIM 50-01 to select the image rear edge void amount adjustment mode.  
The set adjustment value is displayed on the copy quantity display.
- Make a copy and measure the void amount of image rear edge.

Void amount (Standard value: 2 - 3mm)



- 4) If the measurement value is out of the specified range, change the set value and repeat the adjustment procedure.

The default value is 50.

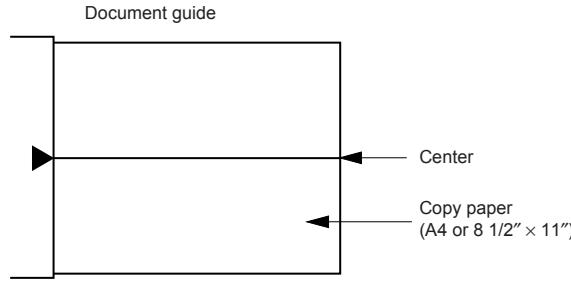
Note: The rear edge void cannot be checked with the first sheet after entering the simulation mode, the first sheet after turning off/on the power, or the first sheet after inserting the cassette. Use the second or later sheet to check the rear edge void.

### (3) Center offset adjustment

- Set the self-made test chart for the center position adjustment so that its center line is aligned with the center mark of the document guide.

- Test chart for the center position adjustment.

Draw a line at the center of A4 or 8 1/2" x 11" paper in the paper transport direction.

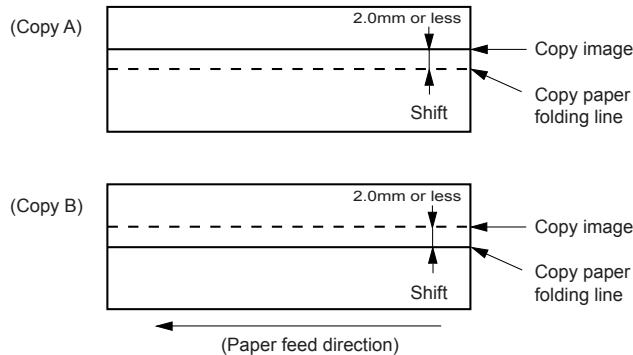


- Execute SIM 50-10 to select the print center offset (cassette paper feed) adjustment mode.

The set adjustment value is displayed on the copy quantity display.

- Make a copy and check that the copied center line is properly positioned.

The standard value is  $0 \pm 2\text{mm}$  from the paper center.



- If the measured value is out of the specified range, change the set value and repeat the adjustment procedure.

When the set value is increased by 1, the copy image is shifted by 0.1mm toward the rear frame.

- For the manual paper feed, change the manual paper feed adjustment mode and perform the similar procedures.
- Since the document center offset is automatically adjusted by the CCD which scan the reference lines (F/R) on the back of document guide, there is no need to adjust manually.

## 2. Copy density adjustment

### A. Copy density adjustment timing

The copy density adjustment must be performed in the following cases:

- When maintenance is performed.
- When the developing bias/grid bias voltage is adjusted.
- When the optical section is cleaned.
- When a part in the optical section is replaced.
- When the optical section is disassembled.
- When the OPC drum is replaced.
- When the main control PWB is replaced.
- When the EEPROM on the main control PWB is replaced.
- When the memory trouble (U2) occurs.

### B. Note for copy density adjustment

- Arrangement before execution of the copy density adjustment

- Clean the optical section.
- Clean or replace the charger wire.

- Check that the voltage at the high voltage section and the developing bias voltage are in the specified range.

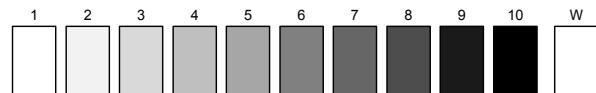
### C. Necessary tool for copy density adjustment

- One of the following test charts:

UKOG-0162FCZZ, UKOG-0089CSZZ, KODAK GRAY SCALE

- B4 (14" x 8 1/2") white paper

- The user program AE setting should be "3."



### Test chart comparison table

UKOG-0162FCZZ DENSITY No.	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	W
UKOG-0089CSZZ DENSITY No.	0.1		0.2		0.3				0.5	1.9	0
KODAK GRAY SCALE		1		2		3		4		19	A

### D. Features of copy density adjustment

For the copy density adjustment, the image data shift function provided in the image process LSI is used.

#### List of the adjustment modes

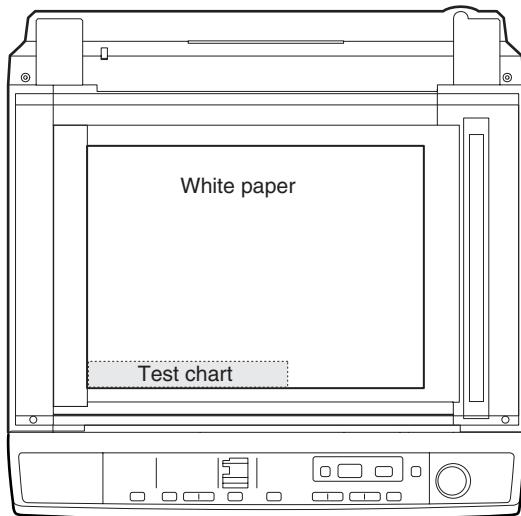
Auto mode	Brightness 1 step only
Manual mode	Brightness 5 steps. Adjustment of only the center brightness is made.
Photo mode	Brightness 5 steps. Adjustment of only the center brightness is made.
Manual T/S mode	Brightness 5 steps. Adjustment of only the center brightness is made.
T/S Auto mode	Brightness 1 step only

## E. Copy density adjustment procedure

Use SIM 46-1 to set the copy density for each copy mode. For selection of modes, use the [Exposure mode selector] key (or [◀] [▶] key for the AR-M200/M201).

### (1) Test chart (UKOG-0162FCZZ) setting

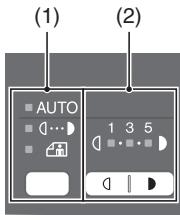
- Place the test chart so that its edge is aligned with the A4 (Letter) reference line on the document table. Then place a A4 (14" x 8 1/2") white paper on the test chart and close the document cover.



### (2) Perform the adjustment in each mode.

- Execute SIM 46-01 (300dpi). To adjust in 600dpi, execute SIM 46-02.
- AR-203E/5420

Select the mode to be adjusted with the exposure mode select key. Set the exposure level to 3 for all adjustment. (Except for the auto mode.)

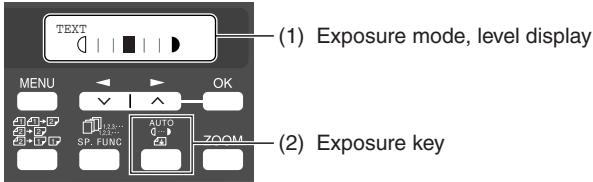


(1) Exposure mode select key/display lamp  
(2) [Exposure mode selector] key/  
display lamp

Adjustment mode	Exposure mode display lamp	Sharp gray chart adjustment level
Auto mode	Auto lamp ON	"3" is slightly copied.
Manual mode	Manual lamp ON	"3" is slightly copied.
Photo mode	Photo lamp ON	"3" is slightly copied.
Manual T/S mode	Manual lamp/Photo lamp ON	"3" is slightly copied.
Auto T/S mode	Auto lamp/Photo lamp ON	"3" is slightly copied.

- AR-M200/M201

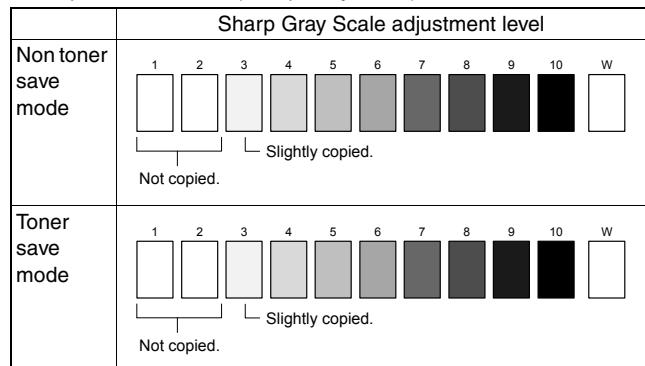
Select the mode to be adjusted with the exposure key. Set the exposure level to 3 (center) for all adjustment. (Except for the auto mode.)



Adjustment mode	Display item	LED	Sharp gray chart adjustment level
Auto mode	AE	COPY mode lamp	"3" is slightly copied.
Text mode	TEXT	PRINT mode lamp	"3" is slightly copied.
Photo mode	PHOTO	SCAN mode lamp	"3" is slightly copied.
Text T/S mode	TSTXT	PRINT mode lamp SCAN mode lamp	"3" is slightly copied.
Auto T/S mode	TSAE	COPY mode lamp SCAN mode lamp	"3" is slightly copied.

- Make a copy.

Check the adjustment level (shown in the above table) of the exposure test chart (Sharp Gray Scale).



(When too bright): Decrease the value displayed on the copy quantity display.

(When too dark): Increase the value displayed on the copy quantity display.

\* The value can be set in the range of 1 - 99.

## 3. High voltage adjustment

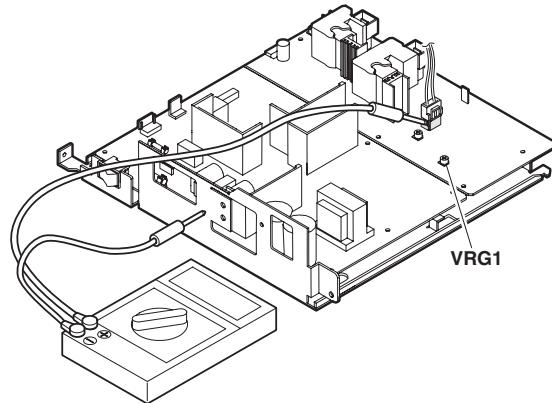
### A. Main charger (Grid bias)

Note:

- Use a digital multi meter with internal resistance of  $10M\Omega$  or more measurement.
- After adjusting the grid LOW output, adjust the HIGH output. Do not reverse the sequence.

#### Procedures

- Set the digital multi meter range to DC700V.
- Set the positive side of the test rod to the connector CN11-3 (GRID) of high voltage section of the power PWB and set the negative side to the frame ground (power frame).
- Execute SIM 8-2. (The main charger output is supplied for 30 sec in the grid voltage HIGH output mode.)
- Adjust the control volume (VRG1) so that the output voltage is  $580 \pm 12V$ .

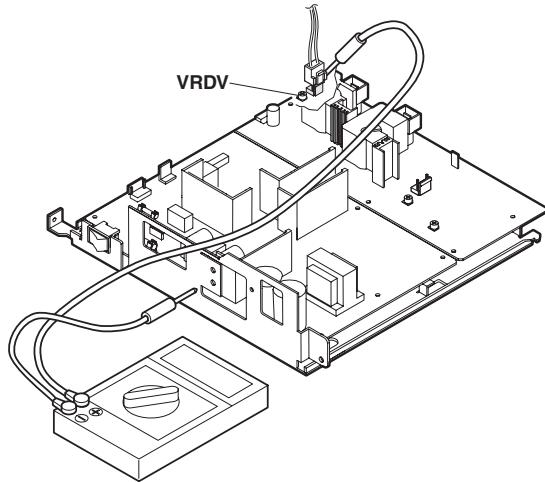


## B. DV bias check

- Note:
- A digital multi meter with internal resistance of  $1G\Omega$  must be used for correct check.
  - The adjustment volume is locked, and no adjustment can be made.

### Procedures

- Set the digital multi meter range to DC500V.
- Set the positive side of the test rod to the connector CN-10-1 (DV BIAS) and set the negative side to the frame ground (power frame).
- Execute SIM 8-1 to output the developing bias for 30sec, and check that the output is  $-400 \pm 8V$ .



## 4. Duplex adjustment

### A. Adjusting the paper reverse position in memory for duplex copying (AR-M200/M201)

This step adjusts the front surface printing (odd-number pages of a document set) in the S-D mode copying and the leading edge position of an image on even-number pages in the D-S mode.

That is, it covers the adjustment of the second surface printing mode (image loss at the front edge of an image) in which image data is once stored in memory.

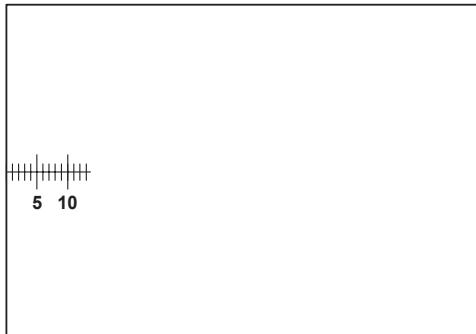
The image data is read, starting from its front end in the document delivery direction (Reference direction of document setting in the OC mode) and stored in memory.

This stored image data is printed starting at the printing start position, in the order of last-stored data to the first-stored data.

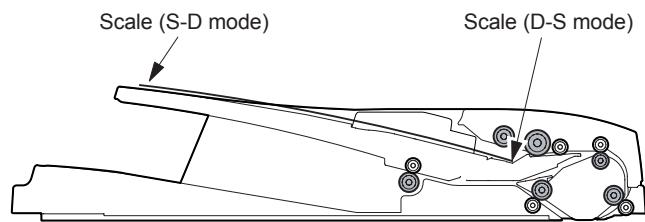
In other words, the front edge image loss of the image can be adjusted by changing the document read end position.

#### (Adjustment procedure)

- Preparing test chart (Draw a scale at the rear end of one side of a sheet of A4 white paper or letter paper)



- Set the test chart so that the scale is positioned as shown below, in the S-D mode and the D-S mode.



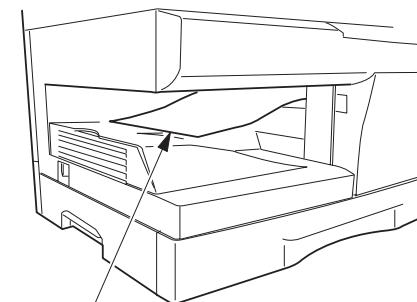
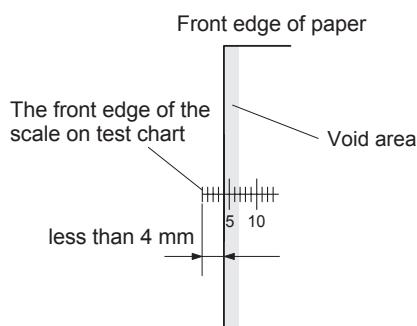
- Execute simulation 50-18.

Mode	Display item	Default	LED
OC memory reverse output position	OC	50	COPY mode lamp
SPF/RSPF memory reverse output position	SPF	50	PRINT mode lamp

Select the SPF/RSPF memory reverse output position, and press [START] key to make a copy.

Adjust the setting so that the front edge image loss is less than 4.0 mm in the SPF/RSPF mode.

An increase of 1 in setting represents an increase of 0.1 mm in image loss.



2nd printing surface where scale is printed (lower side)

### B. Adjusting trailing edge void in duplex copy mode (AR-M201)

This is the adjustment of the first surface printing mode (rear end void) in duplex copying.

In a duplex copying operation, the paper is delivered starting from the rear end of the first printing surface. It is therefore necessary to make a void area at the rear end on the first printing surface to prevent paper jam at the fusing part.

There are two adjustment modes:

- Paper trailing edge void quantity 50-19 (TEXT)

This adjustment is made when the cassette paper size is recognized. The trailing edge void quantity can be adjusted by changing the trailing edge image laser OFF timing.

- 2) Print start position (Duplex back surface) (SPF/RSPF) 50-19 (PHOTO)

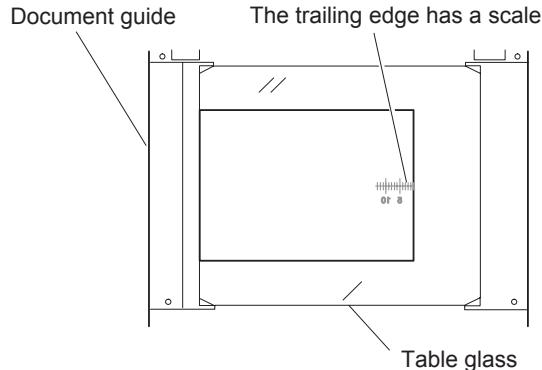
The size (length) of a document read from the SPF/RSPF is detected, the image at the trailing edge of the first printing surface is cut to make a void area. (The adjustment of void quantity at the time when the cassette paper size is not recognized.)

The paper void quantity should be first adjusted before the image cut trailing edge void quantity (SPF/RSPF) is adjusted.

#### (Adjustment procedure)

##### (1) Paper trailing edge void quantity

- 1) Preparing test chart (Draw a scale at the rear end of one side of a sheet of A4 white paper or letter paper)
- 2) Set the test chart on the document glass as shown below.

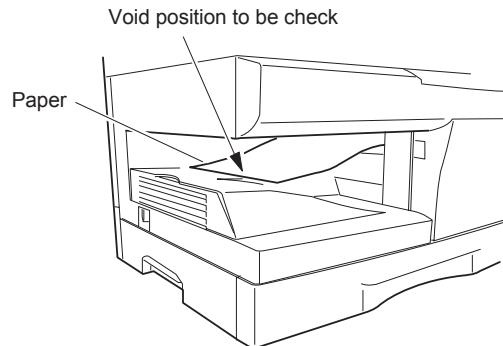


- 3) Using the user simulation [18], set the paper size of the first cassette.

- Letter paper: 4
- A4 paper: 3

- 4) Execute SIM 50-19 to turn on the PRINT mode lamp and make the printing mode in OC-D mode.

Make a copy of the test chart to check the void area of the scale on the image.

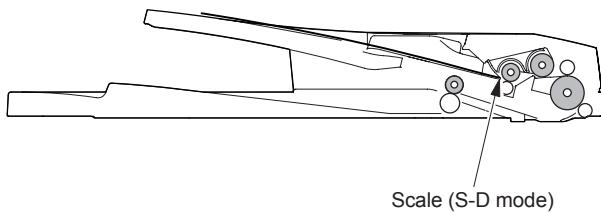


The trailing edge void on the first printing surface is shown above.

Adjust the setting so that the void area is 4 - 5 mm. An increase in 1 of setting represents 0.1 mm in void area.

##### (2) Print start position (Duplex back surface)

- 1) Set the test chart so that the scale is positioned as shown below.



- 2) Execute SIM 50-19 to turn on the SCAN mode lamp and make the printing mode in the S-D mode.

- 3) Remove and reinsert the cassette.

Note: Make sure to carry out this step before making a copy during this adjustment.

- 4) Make a copy and check the void area of the scale on the image.

Adjust the setting so that the void area is 2 - 4 mm. An increase of 1 in setting represents an increase of 0.1 mm in void area.

Void position to be checked

## 5. Automatic black level correction

#### a. Cases when the adjustment is required

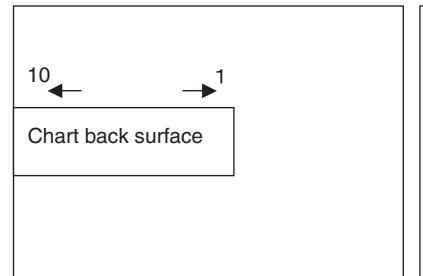
- 1) When the main PWB is replaced.
- 2) When the EEPROM in the main PWB is replaced.
- 3) When "U2" trouble occurs.
- 4) When repairing or replacing the optical section.

#### b. Adjustment procedure

Used to acquire the black level target value used for the black level adjustment of white balance.

When SIM 63-02 is executed, the current correction value is displayed in 3 digits of 12bit hexadecimal number.

Place the gray gradation chart (UKOG-0162FCZZ) used as the correction document so that the density 10 (black side) comes on the left side and that the chart is upside down at the center of the plate left center.



When [START] key is pressed, the mirror base unit scans the chart and calculates the correction value.

After completion of correction, the corrected value is displayed on the display section.

\* Default: 0

\* If the value is set to the default, operation is made with 0x60.

#### AR-M200/M201

##### c. Operation

- 1) Initial display

```
63-02 BLACK LEVEL
0
```

- 2) [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key: Correction start

```
63-02 BLACK LEVEL
EXECUTING...
```

<During canceling - When [Clear]/[Clear All] key is pressed->

After canceling, the machine goes into the sub code entry standby mode.

```
THE JOB IS BEING
CANCELED.
```

- 3) After execution

```
63-02 BLACK LEVEL
*** OK
```

- 3) In case of an error

```
63-02 BLACK LEVEL
*** ERR
```

# [10] SIMULATION, TROUBLE CODES

## 1. Entering the simulation mode

To enter the serviceman simulation mode, press the keys as follows:

### AR-203E/AR-5420

[Clear] key → Exposure mode selector key → [Clear] key → Exposure mode selector key

### AR-M200/AR-M201

[#] key → [\*] key → [Clear] key → [\*] key

To cancel the simulation mode, press the [Clear All] key.

## 2. Key rule

### AR-203E/AR-5420

[▲][▲] key:	Entry of MAIN CODE/SUB CODE Setting of the adjustment values for the adjustment-related simulations When [%] key is pressed simultaneously, the value is displayed in the descending sequence such as [0] → [9], not as [0] → [1].
[START] key:	Settlement <In case of simulations for print> [START] key: Settlement / Print
[Exposure mode selector] key:	Selection of an item (Interrupting operation check) Returns to the upper hierarchy.
[Clear] key:	On the initial display (00-00), it terminates the simulation. Exits from the simulation mode. For a simulation of adjustment, the display returns to the initial display (00-00).

### AR-M200/AR-M201

[Numeric] key:	Entry of MAIN CODE/SUB CODE Selection of an item Setup of an adjustment value in case of simulations for adjustment
[◀][▶] key:	Selection of MAIN CODE/SUB CODE Selection of an item
[OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key:	Settlement <In case of simulations for print> [OK]/[ENTER] key: Settlement (Without print) [START] key: Settlement / Print
[Clear] key:	(Interrupting operation check) Returns to the upper hierarchy. In case of simulation of operation check, terminates the operations.
[Clear All] key:	Exits from the simulation mode. For a simulation of adjustment, the display returns to the initial display (00-00).

## 3. List of simulations

Sim No.	Sub code	Operation
01	01	Mirror scan operation
	02	Mirror home position sensor (MHPS) status display
	06	Aging of mirror scanning
02	01	SPF/RSPF aging operation (Only the AR-203E/M200/M201 with the SPF/RSPF installed)
	02	SPF/RSPF sensor status display (Only the AR-203E/M200/M201 with the SPF/RSPF installed)

Sim No.	Sub code	Operation
02	03	SPF/RSPF Motor ON (Only the AR-203E/M200/M201 with the SPF/RSPF installed)
	06	Resist clutch ON (SPF) (AR-203E only)
	08	RSPF paper feed solenoid operation check (Only the AR-M200/M201 with the RSPF installed)
	09	RSPF reverse solenoid operation check (Only the AR-M200/M201 with the RSPF installed)
03	03	Shifter operation check (AR-M200/M201)
05	01	Operation panel display check
	02	Fusing lamp, cooling fan operation check
	03	Copy lamp ON
06	01	Paper feed solenoid ON
	02	Resist solenoid ON
	07	01 Warm-up display and aging with jam 06 Intermittent aging 08 Shift to copy with the warm-up display
08	01	Developing bias
	02	Main charger (Grid high)
	03	Grid voltage (Low)
	06	Transfer charger
09	01	Duplex motor normal rotation operation check (AR-M201 only)
	02	Duplex motor reverse operation check (AR-M201 only)
	04	Duplex motor rotation speed adjustment (AR-M201 only)
10		Toner motor aging
14		Cancel of troubles other than U2
16		Cancel of U2 trouble
20	01	Maintenance counter clear
21	01	Maintenance cycle setting
22	01	Maintenance counter display
	02	Maintenance preset display
	04	JAM total counter display
	05	Total counter display
	06	Developer counter display
	08	SPF/RSPF counter display (Only the AR-203E/M200/M201 with the SPF/RSPF installed)
	11	FAX-related counter display (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)
	12	Drum counter display
	13	CRUM type display
	14	ROM version display
	16	Duplex counter display (AR-M201 only)
	17	Copy counter display
24	18	Printer counter display
	19	Scanner mode counter display (AR-203E/M200/M201)
	21	Scanner counter display
	22	SPF/RSPF JAM counter display (Only the AR-203E/M200/M201 with the SPF/RSPF installed)
	01	JAM total counter clear
04	04	SPF/RSPF counter clear (Only the AR-203E/M200/M201 with the SPF/RSPF installed)
	05	Duplex counter clear (AR-M201 only)
	06	Developer counter clear
	07	Drum counter clear
	08	Copy counter clear
	09	Printer counter clear
	10	FAX counter clear (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)
	13	Scanner counter clear
	14	SPF/RSPF JAM total counter clear (Only the AR-203E/M200/M201 with the SPF/RSPF installed)

Sim No.	Sub code	Operation
24	15	Scanner mode counter clear (AR-203E/M200/M201)
25	01	Main motor operation check (Cooling fan motor rotation check)
	10	Polygon motor ON
26	02	SPF/RSPF setup
	03	Second cassette setup
	04	Machine duplex setup
	06	Destination setup
	07	Machine conditions check
	20	Rear edge void setup
	30	CE mark support control ON/OFF
	37	Cancel of stop at developer life over
	39	Memory capacity check
	40	Polygon motor OFF time setup (Time required for turning OFF after completion of printing)
	42	Transfer ON timing control setup
	43	Side void setup
	54	$\gamma$ life correction setting
	62	Energy-save mode copy lamp setup
30	01	Paper sensor status display
41	06	OC cover float detection level adjustment (Only the AR-203E/M200/M201 with the SPF/RSPF installed)
	07	OC cover float detection margin setting (Only the AR-203E/M200/M201 with the SPF/RSPF installed)
43	01	Fusing temperature setting (Normal copy)
	04	Fusing temperature setting in multi copy
	05	Fusing temperature setup in duplex copy (AR-M201 only)
	14	Fusing start temperature setting
46	01	Copy density adjustment (300dpi)
	02	Copy density adjustment (600dpi)
	12	Density adjustment in the FAX mode (Collective adjustment) (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)
	13	FAX mode density adjustment (Normal text) (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)
	14	FAX mode density adjustment (Fine text) (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)
	15	FAX mode density adjustment (Super fine) (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)
	18	Image contrast adjustment (300dpi)
	19	Exposure mode setup
	20	SPF/RSPF exposure correction (Only the AR-203E/M200/M201 with the SPF/RSPF installed)
	29	Image contrast adjustment (600dpi)
	30	AE limit adjustment
	31	Image sharpness adjustment
	32	Copier color reproduction setup
	39	FAX mode sharpness adjustment (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)
48	01	Front/rear (main scanning) direction and scan (sub scanning) direction magnification ratio adjustment
	05	SPF/RSPF mode sub scan direction magnification ratio in copying (Only the AR-203E/M200/M201 with the SPF/RSPF installed)
49	01	Flash ROM program writing mode
50	01	Lead edge image position
	06	Copy lead edge position adjustment (SPF/RSPF) (Only the AR-203E/M200/M201 with the SPF/RSPF installed)
	10	Center offset adjustment

Sim No.	Sub code	Operation
50	12	Document off-center adjustment
	18	Memory reverse position adjustment in duplex copy (Only the AR-M201, or the AR-M200 with the SPF installed)
	19	Duplex copy rear edge void adjustment (AR-M201 only)
51	02	Resist quantity adjustment
53	08	SPF/RSPF scan position automatic adjustment (Only the AR-203E/M200/M201 with the SPF/RSPF installed)
61	03	Polygon motor check (Hsync output check)
63	01	Shading check
	02	Black level automatic correction
	12	Light quantity stabilization wait time setting
	13	Light quantity stabilization band setting
64	01	Self print (1by2 mode)
66	01	FAX soft SW setting (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)
	02	FAX soft SW initializing (excluding the adjustment values) (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)
03		FAX PWB memory check (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)
04		Signal send mode (Max. value) (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)
05		Signal send mode (Soft SW set value) (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)
07		Image memory content print (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)
10		Image memory content clear (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)
11		300bps signal send (Max. value) (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)
12		300bps signal send (Soft SW set value) (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)
13		Dial test (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)
17		DTMF signal send (Max. value) (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)
18		DTMF signal send (Soft SW set value) (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)
21		FAX information print (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)
24		FAST SRAM clear (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)
30		TEL/LIU status change check (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)
33		Signal detection check (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)
34		Communication time measurement (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)
37		Speaker sound volume setting (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)
38		Time setting/check (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)
67	50	USB receive speed adjustment (USB1.1) (AR-203E only)

#### 4. Descriptions of various simulations

Main code	Sub code	Contents	Details of function/operation
01	01	Mirror scan operation	<p><b>[Function]</b> When [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key is pressed, the home position is checked and the mirror base performs full scan at the speed of the set magnification ratio. During operation, the set magnification ratio is displayed. The mirror home position sensor status is displayed with the "Drum replacement required lamp (or the copy mode indicator for the AR-M200/M201)". (When the mirror is in the home position, the lamp lights up.) During operation, the copy lamp lights up. When [Clear] key is pressed, if the operation is on the way, it is terminated and the machine goes to the sub code entry standby mode.</p> <p><b>[Operation] (AR-M200/M201)</b></p> <p>1) Initial display        2) [ZOOM]/[COPY RATIO] key        3) [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key  </p> <p>2) [◀] key  </p> <p>2) [▶] key  </p>
02		Mirror home position sensor (MHPS) status display	<p><b>[Function]</b> Monitors the mirror home position sensor, and makes the "Drum replacement required lamp (or the copy mode indicator for the AR-M200/M201)" turn on during the sensor ON status.</p> <p><b>[Operation] (AR-M200/M201)</b></p> <p>1) Initial display  </p>
06		Aging of mirror scanning	<p><b>[Function]</b> When [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key is pressed, the mirror base performs full scan at the speed of the set magnification ratio. During operation, the set magnification ratio is displayed. After 3sec, the mirror base performs full scan again. * When [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key is pressed once, the ready lamp remains OFF. The mirror home position sensor status is displayed on the "Drum replacement required lamp (or the copy mode indicator for the AR-M200/M201)." (The lamp is ON when the mirror is in the home position.) During aging, the copy lamp is ON.</p> <p><b>[Operation] (AR-M200/M201)</b> The operation is similar to simulation 01-01.</p>
02	01	SPF/RSPF aging operation (Only the AR-203E/M200/M201 with the SPF/RSPF installed)	<p><b>[Function]</b> When [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key is pressed, the set magnification ratio is obtained. For the SPF, the single-face document transport is performed. For the RSPF, the duplex document transport is performed. However, the operating conditions don't matter and the operation is not stopped even in case of a jam. Also the magnification ratio is displayed on the LCD/display.</p> <p><b>[Operation] (AR-M200/M201)</b> The operation is similar to simulation 01-01.</p>

Main code	Sub code	Contents	Details of function/operation																			
02	02	SPF/RSPF sensor status display (Only the AR-203E/M200/M201 with the SPF/RSPF installed)	<p><b>[Function]</b> The ON/OFF status of the SPF/RSPF sensors can be checked with the LCD/LED. When a sensor is ON, the sensor name is displayed on the LCD/LED.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Sensor</th><th>Display item (AR-M200/M201)</th><th>Display item (AR-203E)</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Document set sensor</td><td>SPID</td><td>TD cartridge replacement required lamp</td></tr> <tr> <td>RSPF document transport sensor</td><td>SPPD</td><td>Misfeed lamp</td></tr> <tr> <td>RSPF paper feed cover open/close sensor</td><td>SDSW</td><td>—</td></tr> <tr> <td>RSPF paper exit sensor</td><td>SPOD</td><td>—</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>[Operation] (AR-M200/M201)</b></p> <p>1) Initial display      2) When the sensor is ON:</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>02-02 SPF SENSOR</td> <td>02-02 SPF SENSOR SPID SPPD SDSW SPOD</td> </tr> </table>			Sensor	Display item (AR-M200/M201)	Display item (AR-203E)	Document set sensor	SPID	TD cartridge replacement required lamp	RSPF document transport sensor	SPPD	Misfeed lamp	RSPF paper feed cover open/close sensor	SDSW	—	RSPF paper exit sensor	SPOD	—	02-02 SPF SENSOR	02-02 SPF SENSOR SPID SPPD SDSW SPOD
Sensor	Display item (AR-M200/M201)	Display item (AR-203E)																				
Document set sensor	SPID	TD cartridge replacement required lamp																				
RSPF document transport sensor	SPPD	Misfeed lamp																				
RSPF paper feed cover open/close sensor	SDSW	—																				
RSPF paper exit sensor	SPOD	—																				
02-02 SPF SENSOR	02-02 SPF SENSOR SPID SPPD SDSW SPOD																					
03	03	SPF/RSPF Motor ON (Only the AR-203E/M200/M201 with the SPF/RSPF installed)	<p><b>[Function]</b> When [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key is pressed, the motor rotates for 10sec at the speed corresponding to the set magnification ratio.</p> <p><b>[Operation] (AR-M200/M201)</b> The operation is similar to simulation 01-01.</p>																			
06	06	Resist clutch ON (SPF) (AR-203E only)	When the [START] key is pressed, the SPF resist clutch (SRRC) repeats ON (500 ms) and OFF (500 ms) 20 times.																			
08	08	RSPF paper feed solenoid operation check (Only the AR-M200/M201 with the RSPF installed)	<p><b>[Function]</b> The RSPF paper feed solenoid (SPUS) repeats ON for 500ms and OFF for 500ms 20 times by the use of the solenoid drive control Bios.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b></p> <p>1) Initial display</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>02-08 SPF SPUS CHK EXECUTING...</td> </tr> </table>			02-08 SPF SPUS CHK EXECUTING...																
02-08 SPF SPUS CHK EXECUTING...																						
09	09	RSPF reverse solenoid operation check (Only the AR-M200/M201 with the RSPF installed)	<p><b>[Function]</b> The RSPF reverse solenoid (SPFS) repeats ON for 500ms and OFF for 500ms 20 times by the use of the solenoid drive control Bios.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b></p> <p>1) Initial display</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>02-09 RSPF SPFS CHK EXECUTING...</td> </tr> </table>			02-09 RSPF SPFS CHK EXECUTING...																
02-09 RSPF SPFS CHK EXECUTING...																						
03	03	Shifter operation check (AR-M200/M201)	<p><b>[Function]</b> The shifter is moved back and forth in four reciprocations.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b></p> <p>1) Initial display</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>03-03 SHIFTER CHK EXECUTING...</td> </tr> </table>			03-03 SHIFTER CHK EXECUTING...																
03-03 SHIFTER CHK EXECUTING...																						

Main code	Sub code	Contents	Details of function/operation				
05	01	Operation panel display check	<p><b>[Function]</b>          &lt;LED check mode (All ON/Individual ON)&gt;          When [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key is pressed, all the LCD's on the operation panel are turned ON (all pixels ON).          After 5sec of ON, the machine goes into the sub code entry standby mode.          When [Mode Select] key is pressed under the all ON state, the mode is shifted to the individual ON mode, where the LED's are turned on one by one from the left upper end to the left lower side then from the right upper side to the right lower side. (All the pixels of LCD are lighted simultaneously.) After lighting all the LCD's sequentially, all the LCD's are lighted simultaneously. After 5sec from lighting all the LCD's simultaneously, the machine goes into the sub code entry standby mode. (Cycle of individual ON mode: ON 300ms, OFF 20ms)          When [Clear] key is pressed in the LED check mode, the machine goes into the sub code entry standby mode.          When [START] key is pressed, the machine goes into the key input check mode.</p> <p>&lt;Key input check mode&gt;          When the machine goes into the key input check mode, the value display section indicates "—" (For the AR-M200/M201, 0 of the LCD is indicated).          When any key is pressed after pressing a key on the operation panel, "+1" is added to the value.          Once a key is pressed, it is not recounted.          When [START] key is pressed, counting is made and the machine goes into the LED ON check mode (LED all ON status) after 3sec.          When [Clear] key is pressed for the first time, it is counted. When it is pressed for the second time, the key check mode is retained as well as when another key is pressed.          (Note in the key input check mode)         <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Be sure to press [START] key at the last. (If it is pressed on the way, the machine goes into the LED ON check mode.) (LED all ON status)</li> <li>• Multi key input is ignored.</li> </ul> <b>[Operation] (AR-M200/M201)</b>  &lt;LED check mode (All ON/Individual ON)&gt; <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Initial display   </li> <li>2) When [Mode Select] key is pressed, the machine goes into the individual ON mode.  <b>&lt;Key input check mode&gt;</b> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Initial display</li> <li>2) [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key  <table border="1" style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: middle;"> <tr><td>05-01 LCD/LED CHK.</td><td style="text-align: center;">0</td></tr> </table> <table border="1" style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: middle;"> <tr><td>05-01 LCD/LED CHK.</td><td style="text-align: center;">**</td></tr> </table> </li> </ol> </li> </ol> </p>	05-01 LCD/LED CHK.	0	05-01 LCD/LED CHK.	**
05-01 LCD/LED CHK.	0						
05-01 LCD/LED CHK.	**						
02		Fusing lamp, cooling fan operation check	<p><b>[Function]</b>          When [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key is pressed, the fusing lamp repeats ON for 500ms and OFF for 500ms 5 times. During this period, the cooling fan motor rotates.</p> <p>Note:          When the CE mark setting is ON, the slow start function may operate depending on the employed frequency. If the state of the heater lamp cannot be checked, temporarily set SIM 26-30 to "0" and check the lamp state. After confirming that the heater lamp is ON, set SIM 26-30 to "1" again.</p> <p><b>[Operation] (AR-M200/M201)</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Initial display  <table border="1" style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: middle;"> <tr><td>05-02 HT LAMP CHK</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>EXECUTING...</td><td></td></tr> </table> </li> </ol>	05-02 HT LAMP CHK		EXECUTING...	
05-02 HT LAMP CHK							
EXECUTING...							
03		Copy lamp ON	<p><b>[Function]</b>          When [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key is pressed, the copy lamp turns ON for 5sec.</p> <p><b>[Operation] (AR-M200/M201)</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Initial display  <table border="1" style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: middle;"> <tr><td>05-03 C-LAMP CHK</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>EXECUTING...</td><td></td></tr> </table> </li> </ol>	05-03 C-LAMP CHK		EXECUTING...	
05-03 C-LAMP CHK							
EXECUTING...							

Main code	Sub code	Contents	Details of function/operation																			
06	01	Paper feed solenoid ON	<p><b>[Function]</b>            When [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key is pressed, the selected paper feed solenoid repeats ON for 500ms and OFF for 500ms 20 times.            When tray select key (or [Numeric] key or [◀] [▶] key for the AR-M200/M201) is pressed, the paper feed solenoid setting is switched.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Code number</th> <th>Setting</th> <th colspan="2">Remark</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>CPFS1</td> <td colspan="2"></td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>CPFS2</td> <td colspan="2">Operation is possible only when No. 2 cassette is installed.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>MPFS</td> <td colspan="2"></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>[Operation] (AR-M200/M201)</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Initial display</li> <li>[Numeric] key or [▶] key 06-01 PSOL CHK 0 : CPFS1</li> <li>[OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key 06-01 PSOL CHK 1 : CPFS2</li> <li>Returns to the initial display.</li> </ol>				Code number	Setting	Remark		0	CPFS1			1	CPFS2	Operation is possible only when No. 2 cassette is installed.		2	MPFS		
Code number	Setting	Remark																				
0	CPFS1																					
1	CPFS2	Operation is possible only when No. 2 cassette is installed.																				
2	MPFS																					
	02	Resist solenoid ON	<p><b>[Function]</b>            When [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key is pressed, the resist solenoid repeats ON for 500ms and OFF for 500ms 20 times.</p> <p><b>[Operation] (AR-M200/M201)</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Initial display 06-02 RES.R SOL CHK EXECUTING...</li> </ol>																			
07	01	Warm-up display and aging with jam	<p><b>[Function]</b>            Copying is repeated to make the set quantity of copies.            When the simulation is executed, warm-up is started and warm-up time is added for every second from 0 and displayed.            When warm-up is completed, addition is stopped. When [Clear All] key is pressed, the ready lamp lights up.            After that, enter the copy quantity with [▲] [▲] key (or [Numeric] key for the AR-M200/M201) and press [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key to repeat copying of the set quantity (interval 0sec).            To cancel the simulation, turn off the power or execute a simulation which causes hardware reset.</p> <p><b>[Operation] (AR-M200/M201)</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Initial display</li> <li>After 10sec 07-01 W-UP/AGING 0</li> </ol>																			
	06	Intermittent aging	<p><b>[Function]</b>            Copying is repeated to make the set quantity of copies.            When the simulation is executed, warm-up is performed and the ready lamp is lighted.            Enter the copy quantity with the [▲] [▲] key (or [Numeric] key for the AR-M200/M201) and press [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key, and copying is executed to make the set quantity of copies, and the ready state is kept for 3sec, and copying is executed again to make the set quantity of copies. These operations are repeated.            To cancel the simulation, turn off the power or execute a simulation which executes hardware reset.</p> <p><b>[Operation] (AR-M200/M201)</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Initial display (Basic display of copy) READY TO COPY 100% A4 0</li> </ol>																			
	08	Shift to copy with the warm-up display	<p><b>[Function]</b>            Enter the simulation code, and warm-up is started and warm-up time is counted for every second from 0 and displayed.            When [Clear All] key is pressed during counting up, "0" is displayed on the display and counting is stopped. However, warm-up is continued.            After completion of warm-up, counting is terminated. (The aging function is removed from simulation 07-01.)</p> <p><b>[Operation] (AR-M200/M201)</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Initial display</li> <li>After 10sec 07-08 W-UP C-MODE 0</li> </ol>																			

Main code	Sub code	Contents	Details of function/operation
08	01	Developing bias	<p><b>[Function]</b> When [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key is pressed, the developing bias signal is turned ON for 30sec. When, however, an actual output value is measured, use simulation 25-01. After completion of this process, the machine goes into the sub code entry standby mode.</p> <p><b>[Operation] (AR-M200/M201)</b></p> <p>1) Initial display</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">08-01 DVLP BIAS SET. EXECUTING...</div>
	02	Main charger (Grid high)	<p><b>[Function]</b> When [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key is pressed, the main charger is outputted for 30sec in the grid voltage HIGH move. After completion of this process, the machine goes into the sub code entry standby mode.</p> <p><b>[Operation] (AR-M200/M201)</b></p> <p>1) Initial display</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">08-02 MHV (H) SET. EXECUTING...</div>
	03	Grid voltage (Low)	<p><b>[Function]</b> When [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key is pressed, the main charger is outputted for 30sec in the grid voltage LOW move. After completion of this process, the machine goes into the sub code entry standby mode.</p> <p><b>[Operation] (AR-M200/M201)</b></p> <p>1) Initial display</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">08-03 MHV (L) SET. EXECUTING...</div>
06		Transfer charger	<p><b>[Function]</b> When [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key is pressed, the transfer charger is outputted for 30sec. After completion of this process, the machine goes into the sub code entry standby mode.</p> <p><b>[Operation] (AR-M200/M201)</b></p> <p>1) Initial display</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">08-06 THV SET. EXECUTING...</div>
09	01	Duplex motor normal rotation operation check (AR-M201 only)	<p><b>[Function]</b> Use the duplex motor Bios to drive the duplex motor in the normal direction (paper exit direction) for 30sec. After completion of this process, the machine goes into the sub code entry standby mode.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b></p> <p>1) Initial display</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">09-01 DPLX ROT. EXECUTING...</div>
	02	Duplex motor reverse operation check (AR-M201 only)	<p><b>[Function]</b> Use the duplex motor Bios to drive the duplex motor in the reverse direction for 30sec. After completion of this process, the machine goes into the sub code entry standby mode.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b></p> <p>1) Initial display</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">09-02 DPLX ROT.REV. EXECUTING...</div>
	04	Duplex motor rotation speed adjustment (AR-M201 only)	<p><b>[Function]</b> When this simulation is executed, the currently set value is displayed. Enter the adjustment value with [Numeric] key and press [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key. The entered value is stored and the machine goes into the sub code entry standby mode. The greater the set value is, the higher the speed is. The smaller the set value is, the lower the speed is. (Setting range: 1 - 13, Default: 8)</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b></p> <p>1) Initial display</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">09-04 DPLX ROT.SPEED 8 ( 1-13 )</div> <p>2) [Numeric] key</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">09-04 DPLX ROT.SPEED 7 ( 1-13 )</div> <p>3) [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">09-04 DPLX ROT.SPEED 7 ( 1-13 )</div>

Main code	Sub code	Contents	Details of function/operation																					
10		Toner motor aging	<p><b>[Function]</b> When [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key is pressed, the toner motor is rotated for 30sec. After completion of this process, the machine goes into the main code entry standby mode.</p> <p><b>[Operation] (AR-M200/M201)</b></p> <p>1) Initial display</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">10-00 TONER MOTOR EXECUTING...</div>																					
14		Cancel of troubles other than U2	<p><b>[Function]</b> Used to cancel troubles other than U2. * Cancel troubles such as H trouble which writes data into EEPROM, and perform hardware reset.</p> <p><b>[Operation] (AR-M200/M201)</b></p> <p>1) Initial display</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">14-00 TRBL CANC. CLEARED</div>																					
16		Cancel of U2 trouble	<p><b>[Function]</b> Used to cancel U2 trouble. When [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key is pressed, check sum of the total counter in the EEPROM is rewritten and hardware reset is made.</p> <p><b>[Operation] (AR-M200/M201)</b></p> <p>1) Initial display</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">16-00 U2 TRBL CANC. CLEARED</div>																					
20	01	Maintenance counter clear	<p><b>[Function]</b> When [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key is pressed, the maintenance count value is cleared and "000,000" is displayed.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b></p> <table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 50%; vertical-align: top;"> <b>AR-M200/M201</b>            1) Initial display  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; width: 100%;">20-01 M-CNT CLR. CLEARED 000,000</div> </td> <td style="width: 50%; vertical-align: top;"> <b>AR-203E/5420</b>            The count value is displayed in 3 digits X 2 times repeatedly.  &lt;Display example: 012,345&gt;            012 → Blank → 345 → Blank → 012            0.7s    0.3s    0.7s    1.0s    0.7s         </td> </tr> </table>	<b>AR-M200/M201</b> 1) Initial display <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; width: 100%;">20-01 M-CNT CLR. CLEARED 000,000</div>	<b>AR-203E/5420</b> The count value is displayed in 3 digits X 2 times repeatedly. <Display example: 012,345> 012 → Blank → 345 → Blank → 012 0.7s    0.3s    0.7s    1.0s    0.7s																			
<b>AR-M200/M201</b> 1) Initial display <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; width: 100%;">20-01 M-CNT CLR. CLEARED 000,000</div>	<b>AR-203E/5420</b> The count value is displayed in 3 digits X 2 times repeatedly. <Display example: 012,345> 012 → Blank → 345 → Blank → 012 0.7s    0.3s    0.7s    1.0s    0.7s																							
21	01	Maintenance cycle setting	<p><b>[Function]</b> The currently set code of the maintenance cycle is displayed, and the newly set data are saved. Enter the code number with [<math>\Delta</math>] [<math>\Delta</math>] key (or [Numeric] key or [<math>\blacktriangleleft</math>] [<math>\triangleright</math>] key for the AR-M200/M201) and press [START] key. The entered value is saved and the display returns to the sub code input standby state.</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse; margin-top: 10px;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: center;">Code number</th> <th style="text-align: center;">Setting</th> <th style="text-align: center;">Remark</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td style="text-align: center;">0</td><td style="text-align: center;">3,000 sheets</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td style="text-align: center;">1</td><td style="text-align: center;">6,000 sheets</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td style="text-align: center;">2</td><td style="text-align: center;">9,000 sheets</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td style="text-align: center;">3</td><td style="text-align: center;">13,000 sheets</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td style="text-align: center;">4</td><td style="text-align: center;">25,000 sheets</td><td style="text-align: center;">Default</td></tr> <tr><td style="text-align: center;">5</td><td style="text-align: center;">Free (999,999 sheets)</td><td></td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>[Operation] (AR-M200/M201)</b></p> <p>1) The current set value is displayed.    2) [<math>\triangleright</math>] key or [Numeric] key    3) [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key</p> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-top: 10px;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; width: 30%;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; width: 100%;">21-01 M-CYCLE 5:FREE ( 0-5 ) 4:25,000 ( 0-5 )</div> </div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; width: 30%;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; width: 100%;">21-01 M-CYCLE 5:FREE ( 0-5 ) 2) [<math>\blacktriangleleft</math>] key or [Numeric] key</div> </div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; width: 30%;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; width: 100%;">21-01 M-CYCLE 3:13,000 ( 0-5 )</div> </div> </div>	Code number	Setting	Remark	0	3,000 sheets		1	6,000 sheets		2	9,000 sheets		3	13,000 sheets		4	25,000 sheets	Default	5	Free (999,999 sheets)	
Code number	Setting	Remark																						
0	3,000 sheets																							
1	6,000 sheets																							
2	9,000 sheets																							
3	13,000 sheets																							
4	25,000 sheets	Default																						
5	Free (999,999 sheets)																							

Main code	Sub code	Contents	Details of function/operation
22	01	Maintenance counter display	<p><b>[Function]</b> When [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key is pressed, the maintenance counter is displayed.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b> <b>AR-M200/M201</b></p> <p>1) Initial display</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">22-01 M-CNT ***, ***</div> <p><b>AR-203E/5420</b> The operation is similar to simulation 20-01.</p>
	02	Maintenance preset display	<p><b>[Function]</b> When [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key is pressed, the preset value (25,000 sheets, etc.) corresponding to the code set with simulation 21-01 is displayed.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b> <b>AR-M200/M201</b></p> <p>1) Initial display</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">22-02 M-CNT PRESET ***, ***</div> <p><b>AR-203E/5420</b> The operation is similar to simulation 20-01.</p>
	04	JAM total counter display	<p><b>[Function]</b> The JAM total counter is displayed.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b> <b>AR-M200/M201</b></p> <p>1) Initial display</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">22-04 JAM TTL CNT ***, ***</div> <p><b>AR-203E/5420</b> The operation is similar to simulation 20-01.</p>
	05	Total counter display	<p><b>[Function]</b> The total counter value is displayed.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b> <b>AR-M200/M201</b></p> <p>1) Initial display</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">22-05 TTL CNT ***, ***</div> <p><b>AR-203E/5420</b> The operation is similar to simulation 20-01.</p>
	06	Developer counter display	<p><b>[Function]</b> When [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key is pressed, the developer counter value is obtained and displayed.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b> <b>AR-M200/M201</b></p> <p>1) Initial display</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">22-06 DVLP CNT ***, ***</div> <p><b>AR-203E/5420</b> The operation is similar to simulation 20-01.</p>
	08	SPF/RSPF counter display (Only the AR-203E/M200/M201 with the SPF/RSPF installed)	<p><b>[Function]</b> The SPF/RSPF counter is displayed.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b> <b>AR-M200/M201</b></p> <p>1) Initial display</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">22-08 SPF CNT ***, ***</div> <p><b>AR-203E</b> The operation is similar to simulation 20-01.</p>
	11	FAX-related counter display (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)	<p><b>[Function]</b> The FAX-related counter is displayed.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b></p> <p>1) Initial display</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">SELECT COUNTER 1 : PAGE      2 : TIME</div> <p>* [Clear] key: FAX control is terminated.</p> <p>2) Select 1</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">SEND PAGE :xxx,xxx RECV PAGE :xxx,xxx</div> <p>("xxx,xxx" is the current value.)</p> <p>2) Select 2</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">TX TIME :xxxxx:xx.xx RX TIME :xxxxx:xx.xx</div> <p>("xxxxx: xx. xx" is the current value.)</p> <p>* [Clear] key: Returns to "1) Initial display".</p>

Main code	Sub code	Contents	Details of function/operation																		
22	12	Drum counter display	<p><b>[Function]</b> The drum counter is displayed.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b> <b>AR-M200/M201</b></p> <p>1) Initial display</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">22-12 DRUM CNT ***, ***</div> <p><b>AR-203E/5420</b> The operation is similar to simulation 20-01.</p>																		
	13	CRUM type display	<p><b>[Function]</b> The CRUM type currently set (written) in the CRUM chip is displayed.</p> <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Code number</th> <th>CRUM type</th> <th>Display item</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>00</td> <td>Not set</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>01</td> <td>BTA-A</td> <td>BTA-A</td> </tr> <tr> <td>02</td> <td>BTA-B</td> <td>BTA-B</td> </tr> <tr> <td>03</td> <td>BTA-C</td> <td>BTA-C</td> </tr> <tr> <td>99</td> <td>Conversion</td> <td>CONVERSION</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>[Operation] (AR-M200/M201)</b></p> <p>1) The CRUM type is displayed.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">22-13 CRUM TYPE 01:BTA-A</div>	Code number	CRUM type	Display item	00	Not set	0	01	BTA-A	BTA-A	02	BTA-B	BTA-B	03	BTA-C	BTA-C	99	Conversion	CONVERSION
Code number	CRUM type	Display item																			
00	Not set	0																			
01	BTA-A	BTA-A																			
02	BTA-B	BTA-B																			
03	BTA-C	BTA-C																			
99	Conversion	CONVERSION																			
	14	ROM version display	<p><b>[Function]</b> The P-ROM version is displayed. Press [▲][▲] key (or [Numeric] key or [◀][▶] key for the AR-M200/M201) to switch the display version.</p> <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Code number</th> <th>Version</th> <th>Display item</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>Main unit Program</td> <td>MAIN PROG.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>F-IMC Program</td> <td>F-IMC PROG.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>LCD DATA</td> <td>LCD DATA</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>[Operation]</b> <b>AR-M200/M201</b></p> <p>1) Initial display</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">22-14 ROM VER. MAIN PROG. 00.00</div> <p>2) [Numeric] key or [▶] key</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">22-14 ROM VER. F-IMC PROG. 00.00</div> <p>2) [Numeric] key or [◀] key</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">22-14 ROM VER. LCD DATA 00.00</div> <p><b>AR-203E/5420</b> The operation is similar to simulation 20-01.</p>	Code number	Version	Display item	0	Main unit Program	MAIN PROG.	1	F-IMC Program	F-IMC PROG.	2	LCD DATA	LCD DATA						
Code number	Version	Display item																			
0	Main unit Program	MAIN PROG.																			
1	F-IMC Program	F-IMC PROG.																			
2	LCD DATA	LCD DATA																			
16	Duplex counter display (AR-M201 only)	<p><b>[Function]</b> The duplex counter is displayed.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b></p> <p>1) Initial display</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">22-16 DPLX CNT ***, ***</div>																			
17	Copy counter display	<p><b>[Function]</b> The copy counter is displayed.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b> <b>AR-M200/M201</b></p> <p>1) Initial display</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">22-17 COPIES CNT ***, ***</div>	<p><b>AR-203E/5420</b> The operation is similar to simulation 20-01.</p>																		

Main code	Sub code	Contents	Details of function/operation
22	18	Printer counter display	<p><b>[Function]</b> The printer counter is displayed.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b> <b>AR-M200/M201</b> 1) Initial display</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">22-18 PRT.CNT ***, ***</div> <p><b>AR-203E/5420</b> The operation is similar to simulation 20-01.</p>
	19	Scanner mode counter display (AR-203E/M200/M201)	<p><b>[Function]</b> The scanner mode counter is displayed.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b> <b>AR-M200/M201</b> 1) Initial display</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">22-19 S-MODE CNT ***, ***</div> <p><b>AR-203E</b> The operation is similar to simulation 20-01.</p>
	21	Scanner counter display	<p><b>[Function]</b> The scanner counter is displayed.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b> <b>AR-M200/M201</b> 1) Initial display</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">22-21 SCAN CNT ***, ***</div> <p><b>AR-203E/5420</b> The operation is similar to simulation 20-01.</p>
	22	SPF/RSPF JAM counter display (Only the AR-203E/M200/M201 with the SPF/RSPF installed)	<p><b>[Function]</b> The SPF/RSPF JAM counter is displayed.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b> <b>AR-M200/M201</b> 1) Initial display</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">22-22 S JAM CNT ***, ***</div> <p><b>AR-203E</b> The operation is similar to simulation 20-01.</p>
24	01	JAM total counter clear	<p><b>[Function]</b> When [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key is pressed, the JAM total counter is cleared to 0 and "000,000" is displayed on the LCD/display.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b> <b>AR-M200/M201</b> 1) Initial display</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">24-01 JAM TTL CLR. Cleared 000,000</div> <p><b>AR-203E/5420</b> The operation is similar to simulation 20-01.</p>
	04	SPF/RSPF counter clear (Only the AR-203E/M200/M201 with the SPF/RSPF installed)	<p><b>[Function]</b> When [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key is pressed, the SPF/RSPF counter value is cleared to 0 and "000,000" is displayed on the LCD/display.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b> <b>AR-M200/M201</b> 1) Initial display</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">24-04 SPF CLR. Cleared 000,000</div> <p><b>AR-203E</b> The operation is similar to simulation 20-01.</p>
	05	Duplex counter clear (AR-M201 only)	<p><b>[Function]</b> When [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key is pressed, the duplex counter value is cleared to 0, and "000,000" is displayed on the LCD/display.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b> 1) Initial display</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">24-05 DPLX CLR. Cleared 000,000</div>

Main code	Sub code	Contents	Details of function/operation		
24	06	Developer counter clear	<p><b>[Function]</b> When [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key is pressed, the developer counter value is cleared to 0, and "000,000" is displayed.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b> <b>AR-M200/M201</b> 1) Initial display</p> <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr><td>24-06 DVLP CLR.</td></tr> <tr><td>CLEARED 000,000</td></tr> </table>	24-06 DVLP CLR.	CLEARED 000,000
24-06 DVLP CLR.					
CLEARED 000,000					
	07	Drum counter clear	<p><b>[Function]</b> When [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key is pressed, the drum counter value is cleared to 0, and "000,000" is displayed on the LCD/display.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b> <b>AR-M200/M201</b> 1) Initial display</p> <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr><td>24-07 DRUM CLR.</td></tr> <tr><td>CLEARED 000,000</td></tr> </table>	24-07 DRUM CLR.	CLEARED 000,000
24-07 DRUM CLR.					
CLEARED 000,000					
	08	Copy counter clear	<p><b>[Function]</b> When [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key is pressed, the copy counter value is cleared to 0, and "000,000" is displayed on the LCD/display.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b> <b>AR-M200/M201</b> 1) Initial display</p> <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr><td>24-08 COPIES CLR.</td></tr> <tr><td>CLEARED 000,000</td></tr> </table>	24-08 COPIES CLR.	CLEARED 000,000
24-08 COPIES CLR.					
CLEARED 000,000					
	09	Printer counter clear	<p><b>[Function]</b> When [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key is pressed, the printer counter value is cleared to 0, and "000,000" is displayed on the LCD/display.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b> <b>AR-M200/M201</b> 1) Initial display</p> <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr><td>24-09 PRT.CLR.</td></tr> <tr><td>CLEARED 000,000</td></tr> </table>	24-09 PRT.CLR.	CLEARED 000,000
24-09 PRT.CLR.					
CLEARED 000,000					
	10	FAX counter clear (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)	<p><b>[Function]</b> When [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key is pressed, the FAX count value is set to 0 and "000,000" is displayed on the LCD.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b> 1) Initial display</p> <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr><td>24-10 FAX CLR.</td></tr> <tr><td>CLEARED 000,000</td></tr> </table>	24-10 FAX CLR.	CLEARED 000,000
24-10 FAX CLR.					
CLEARED 000,000					
	13	Scanner counter clear	<p><b>[Function]</b> When [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key is pressed, the scanner counter value is cleared to 0, and "000,000" is displayed on the LCD/display.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b> <b>AR-M200/M201</b> 1) Initial display</p> <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr><td>24-13 SCAN CLR.</td></tr> <tr><td>CLEARED 000,000</td></tr> </table>	24-13 SCAN CLR.	CLEARED 000,000
24-13 SCAN CLR.					
CLEARED 000,000					
	14	SPF/RSPF JAM total counter clear (Only the AR-203E/M200/M201 with the SPF/RSPF installed)	<p><b>[Function]</b> When [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key is pressed, the SPF/RSPF JAM total counter value is cleared to 0, and "000,000" is displayed on the LCD/display.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b> <b>AR-M200/M201</b> 1) Initial display</p> <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr><td>24-14 S JAM TTL CLR.</td></tr> <tr><td>CLEARED 000,000</td></tr> </table>	24-14 S JAM TTL CLR.	CLEARED 000,000
24-14 S JAM TTL CLR.					
CLEARED 000,000					

Main code	Sub code	Contents	Details of function/operation																		
24	15	Scanner mode counter clear (AR-203E/M200/M201)	<p><b>[Function]</b> When [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key is pressed, the scanner mode counter value is cleared to 0, and "000,000" is displayed on the LCD/display.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b> <b>AR-M200/M201</b></p> <p>1) Initial display</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>24-15 S-MODE CLR.</td></tr> <tr><td>CLEARED</td><td>000,000</td></tr> </table> <p><b>AR-203E</b> The operation is similar to simulation 20-01.</p>	24-15 S-MODE CLR.	CLEARED	000,000															
24-15 S-MODE CLR.																					
CLEARED	000,000																				
25	01	Main motor operation check (Cooling fan motor rotation check)	<p><b>[Function]</b> When [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key is pressed, the main motor (and the duplex motor in the case of a duplex model) is operated for 30sec. To reduce toner consumption, if the developing unit is installed, the developing bias, the main charger, and the grid are also outputted. In this case, laser discharge is required when stopping the motor, the polygon motor is also operated at the same time. Check for installation of the developing unit. If it is not installed, the high voltage above is not outputted and only the motor is rotated. To check the developing bias, install the developing unit. After completion of 30sec operation, the machine goes into the sub code entry standby mode.</p> <p><b>[Operation] (AR-M200/M201)</b></p> <p>1) Initial display</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>25-01 MAIN MOTOR CHK</td></tr> <tr><td>EXECUTING...</td></tr> </table>	25-01 MAIN MOTOR CHK	EXECUTING...																
25-01 MAIN MOTOR CHK																					
EXECUTING...																					
	10	Polygon motor ON	<p><b>[Function]</b> When [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key is pressed, the Bios is called to rotate the polygon motor for 30sec. After completion of 30sec operation, the operation is turned off with the Bios and the machine goes into the sub code entry standby mode.</p> <p><b>[Operation] (AR-M200/M201)</b></p> <p>1) Initial display</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>25-10 LSU CHK</td></tr> <tr><td>EXECUTING...</td></tr> </table>	25-10 LSU CHK	EXECUTING...																
25-10 LSU CHK																					
EXECUTING...																					
26	02	SPF/RSPF setup	<p><b>[Function]</b> When this simulation is executed, the current set SPF/RSPF is displayed. Enter the code number corresponding to the desired SPF/RSPF and press [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key to save the setting.</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>Code number</td><td>SPF/RSPF</td><td>Display item</td></tr> <tr><td>0</td><td>SPF NO</td><td>SPF OFF</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>SPF YES</td><td>SPF ON</td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>RSPF YES</td><td>RSPF ON</td></tr> </table> <p>For the AR-203E/5420, the code number cannot be set to 2. For the AR-M200/M201, the code number cannot be set to 1.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b> <b>AR-M200/M201</b></p> <p>1) The current set value is displayed.</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>26-02 SPF/RSPF</td></tr> <tr><td>1:SPF ON (0 - 2)</td></tr> </table> <p>2) [Numeric] key or [◀] key</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>26-02 SPF/RSPF</td></tr> <tr><td>2 :RSPF ON (0 - 2)</td></tr> </table> <p>3) [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>26-02 SPF/RSPF</td></tr> <tr><td>0 :SPF OFF (0 - 2)</td></tr> </table> <p><b>AR-203E/5420</b></p> <p>1) Press [▲] [▲] key to change the code number. 2) Press [START] key to fix the code number.</p>	Code number	SPF/RSPF	Display item	0	SPF NO	SPF OFF	1	SPF YES	SPF ON	2	RSPF YES	RSPF ON	26-02 SPF/RSPF	1:SPF ON (0 - 2)	26-02 SPF/RSPF	2 :RSPF ON (0 - 2)	26-02 SPF/RSPF	0 :SPF OFF (0 - 2)
Code number	SPF/RSPF	Display item																			
0	SPF NO	SPF OFF																			
1	SPF YES	SPF ON																			
2	RSPF YES	RSPF ON																			
26-02 SPF/RSPF																					
1:SPF ON (0 - 2)																					
26-02 SPF/RSPF																					
2 :RSPF ON (0 - 2)																					
26-02 SPF/RSPF																					
0 :SPF OFF (0 - 2)																					
	03	Second cassette setup	<p><b>[Function]</b> When this simulation is executed, the current set second cassette is displayed. Enter the code number corresponding to the desired second cassette and press [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key to save the setting.</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>Code number</td><td>Second cassette</td><td>Display item</td></tr> <tr><td>0</td><td>Second cassette NO</td><td>OFF</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Second cassette YES</td><td>ON</td></tr> </table> <p>For the AR-203E/5420/M200/M201, the code number cannot be set to 1.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b> The operation is similar to simulation 26-02.</p>	Code number	Second cassette	Display item	0	Second cassette NO	OFF	1	Second cassette YES	ON									
Code number	Second cassette	Display item																			
0	Second cassette NO	OFF																			
1	Second cassette YES	ON																			

Main code	Sub code	Contents	Details of function/operation												
26	04	Machine duplex setup	<p><b>[Function]</b> When this simulation is executed, the current set duplex is displayed. Enter the code number corresponding to the desired duplex and press [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key to save the setting.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Code number</th><th>Duplex</th><th>Display item</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Duplex NO</td><td>OFF</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Duplex YES*</td><td>ON</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>* AR-203E/5420/M200: cannot be executed.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b> The operation is similar to simulation 26-02.</p>	Code number	Duplex	Display item	0	Duplex NO	OFF	1	Duplex YES*	ON			
Code number	Duplex	Display item													
0	Duplex NO	OFF													
1	Duplex YES*	ON													
	06	Destination setup	<p><b>[Function]</b> When this simulation is executed, the current set destination is displayed. Enter the code number corresponding to the desired destination and press [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key to save the setting.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Code number</th><th>Destination</th><th>Display item</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Inch series</td><td>INCH</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>EX Japan AB series</td><td>AB</td></tr> <tr> <td>2</td><td>Japan AB series</td><td>-</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>* Code number 2 cannot be selected.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b> The operation is similar to simulation 26-02.</p>	Code number	Destination	Display item	0	Inch series	INCH	1	EX Japan AB series	AB	2	Japan AB series	-
Code number	Destination	Display item													
0	Inch series	INCH													
1	EX Japan AB series	AB													
2	Japan AB series	-													
	07	Machine conditions check	<p><b>[Function]</b> When this simulation is executed, the current machine setting is displayed.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>CPM</th><th>Copy quantity</th><th>Remark</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>20 CPM</td><td>20</td><td></td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>[Operation] (AR-M200/M201)</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The machine setting is displayed.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>26-07 CPM</td></tr> <tr> <td>20 CPM</td></tr> </table>	CPM	Copy quantity	Remark	20 CPM	20		26-07 CPM	20 CPM				
CPM	Copy quantity	Remark													
20 CPM	20														
26-07 CPM															
20 CPM															
	20	Rear edge void setup	<p><b>[Function]</b> When this simulation is executed, the current set rear edge void is displayed. Enter the code number corresponding to the desired rear edge void and press [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key to save the setting.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Code number</th><th>Setting</th><th>Display item</th><th>Remark</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Rear edge void NO</td><td>OFF</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Rear edge void YES</td><td>ON</td><td>Default</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>[Operation]</b> The operation is similar to simulation 26-02.</p>	Code number	Setting	Display item	Remark	0	Rear edge void NO	OFF		1	Rear edge void YES	ON	Default
Code number	Setting	Display item	Remark												
0	Rear edge void NO	OFF													
1	Rear edge void YES	ON	Default												
	30	CE mark support control ON/OFF	<p><b>[Function]</b> When this simulation is executed, the current set CE mark support control is displayed. Enter the code number corresponding to the desired CE mark support control and press [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key to save the setting.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Code number</th><th>Setting</th><th>Display item</th><th>Remark</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td><td>CE mark support control OFF</td><td>OFF</td><td>Default (100V series)</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>CE mark support control ON</td><td>ON</td><td></td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>[Operation]</b> The operation is similar to simulation 26-02.</p>	Code number	Setting	Display item	Remark	0	CE mark support control OFF	OFF	Default (100V series)	1	CE mark support control ON	ON	
Code number	Setting	Display item	Remark												
0	CE mark support control OFF	OFF	Default (100V series)												
1	CE mark support control ON	ON													
	37	Cancel of stop at developer life over	<p><b>[Function]</b> When this simulation is executed, the current setting is displayed. Enter the code number and press [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key to change the setting.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b> The operation is similar to simulation 21-01.</p>												
	39	Memory capacity check	<p><b>[Function]</b> When the simulation is executed, the currently installed SDRAM of the main unit is displayed.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Code number</th><th>Setting</th><th>Remark</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>8</td><td>8 MBYTE</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>16</td><td>16 MBYTE</td><td></td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>[Operation] (AR-M200/M201)</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Memory capacity display</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>26-39 MEM. CHK</td></tr> <tr> <td>8 MBYTE</td></tr> </table>	Code number	Setting	Remark	8	8 MBYTE		16	16 MBYTE		26-39 MEM. CHK	8 MBYTE	
Code number	Setting	Remark													
8	8 MBYTE														
16	16 MBYTE														
26-39 MEM. CHK															
8 MBYTE															

Main code	Sub code	Contents	Details of function/operation																																																			
26	40	Polygon motor OFF time setup (Time required for turning OFF after completion of printing)	<p><b>[Function]</b> When this simulation is executed, the current setting is displayed. Enter the code number corresponding to the desired setting and press [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key to save the setting.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th rowspan="2">Code number</th> <th rowspan="2">Setting</th> <th colspan="2">Display item</th> <th rowspan="2">Remark</th> </tr> <tr> <th>AR-M200/M201</th> <th>AR-203E/5420</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0sec</td> <td>0 SEC.</td> <td>0</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>30sec</td> <td>30 SEC.</td> <td>30</td> <td>Default</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>60sec</td> <td>60 SEC.</td> <td>60</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>90sec</td> <td>90 SEC.</td> <td>90</td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>				Code number	Setting	Display item		Remark	AR-M200/M201	AR-203E/5420	0	0sec	0 SEC.	0		1	30sec	30 SEC.	30	Default	2	60sec	60 SEC.	60		3	90sec	90 SEC.	90																						
Code number	Setting	Display item		Remark																																																		
		AR-M200/M201	AR-203E/5420																																																			
0	0sec	0 SEC.	0																																																			
1	30sec	30 SEC.	30	Default																																																		
2	60sec	60 SEC.	60																																																			
3	90sec	90 SEC.	90																																																			
			<p><b>[Operation]</b> The operation is similar to simulation 26-02.</p>																																																			
	42	Transfer ON timing control setup	<p><b>[Function]</b> <b>AR-203E/5420</b> When this simulation is executed, the currently set code number is displayed. Enter the code number and press the [START] key, and the setting will be changed. (For any number different from the following ones, the default time is automatically set.) &lt;Paper lead edge adjustment table&gt;</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Code number</th> <th>Setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>0</td><td>Default (236 msec)</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>-20 msec</td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>-18 msec</td></tr> <tr><td>3</td><td>-16 msec</td></tr> <tr><td>4</td><td>-14 msec</td></tr> <tr><td>5</td><td>-12 msec</td></tr> <tr><td>6</td><td>-10 msec</td></tr> <tr><td>7</td><td>-8 msec</td></tr> <tr><td>8</td><td>-6 msec</td></tr> <tr><td>9</td><td>-4 msec</td></tr> <tr><td>10</td><td>-2 msec</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Code number</th> <th>Setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>11</td><td>Default (236 msec)</td></tr> <tr><td>12</td><td>+2 msec</td></tr> <tr><td>13</td><td>+4 msec</td></tr> <tr><td>14</td><td>+6 msec</td></tr> <tr><td>15</td><td>+8 msec</td></tr> <tr><td>16</td><td>+10 msec</td></tr> <tr><td>17</td><td>+12 msec</td></tr> <tr><td>18</td><td>+14 msec</td></tr> <tr><td>19</td><td>+16 msec</td></tr> <tr><td>20</td><td>+18 msec</td></tr> <tr><td>21</td><td>+20 msec</td></tr> </tbody> </table>				Code number	Setting	0	Default (236 msec)	1	-20 msec	2	-18 msec	3	-16 msec	4	-14 msec	5	-12 msec	6	-10 msec	7	-8 msec	8	-6 msec	9	-4 msec	10	-2 msec	Code number	Setting	11	Default (236 msec)	12	+2 msec	13	+4 msec	14	+6 msec	15	+8 msec	16	+10 msec	17	+12 msec	18	+14 msec	19	+16 msec	20	+18 msec	21	+20 msec
Code number	Setting																																																					
0	Default (236 msec)																																																					
1	-20 msec																																																					
2	-18 msec																																																					
3	-16 msec																																																					
4	-14 msec																																																					
5	-12 msec																																																					
6	-10 msec																																																					
7	-8 msec																																																					
8	-6 msec																																																					
9	-4 msec																																																					
10	-2 msec																																																					
Code number	Setting																																																					
11	Default (236 msec)																																																					
12	+2 msec																																																					
13	+4 msec																																																					
14	+6 msec																																																					
15	+8 msec																																																					
16	+10 msec																																																					
17	+12 msec																																																					
18	+14 msec																																																					
19	+16 msec																																																					
20	+18 msec																																																					
21	+20 msec																																																					
			<p>* The default value, "11," of the transfer ON timing indicates "236msec passed from PS release."</p> <p>* When set to "0," it is same as setting to the default, "11."</p> <p>* The transfer ON timing can be adjusted to 236msec ± 2ms.</p>																																																			
			<p><b>AR-M200/M201</b> For the AR-M200/M201, the adjustment can be made individually for each of the following modes.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Mode</th> <th>Display item</th> <th>Default</th> <th>Setting range</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>Front surface paper lead edge</td><td>F-REAR</td><td>11</td><td>0 - 21</td></tr> <tr><td>Front surface paper rear edge</td><td>F-END</td><td>50</td><td>1 - 99</td></tr> <tr><td>Back surface paper lead edge</td><td>B-REAR</td><td>11</td><td>0 - 21</td></tr> <tr><td>Back surface paper rear edge</td><td>B-END</td><td>50</td><td>1 - 99</td></tr> </tbody> </table>				Mode	Display item	Default	Setting range	Front surface paper lead edge	F-REAR	11	0 - 21	Front surface paper rear edge	F-END	50	1 - 99	Back surface paper lead edge	B-REAR	11	0 - 21	Back surface paper rear edge	B-END	50	1 - 99																												
Mode	Display item	Default	Setting range																																																			
Front surface paper lead edge	F-REAR	11	0 - 21																																																			
Front surface paper rear edge	F-END	50	1 - 99																																																			
Back surface paper lead edge	B-REAR	11	0 - 21																																																			
Back surface paper rear edge	B-END	50	1 - 99																																																			
			<p>&lt;Paper lead edge adjustment table&gt; is the same as that of the AR-203E/5420 above.</p>																																																			
			<p>&lt;Front/back surface of paper rear edge adjustment table&gt;</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Code</th> <th>Setting</th> <th>Remark</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>1</td><td>-98 msec</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>...</td><td>...</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>49</td><td>-2 msec</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>50</td><td>0 msec</td><td>Default</td></tr> <tr><td>51</td><td>+2 msec</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>...</td><td>...</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>99</td><td>+98 msec</td><td></td></tr> </tbody> </table>				Code	Setting	Remark	1	-98 msec		...	...		49	-2 msec		50	0 msec	Default	51	+2 msec		...	...		99	+98 msec																									
Code	Setting	Remark																																																				
1	-98 msec																																																					
...	...																																																					
49	-2 msec																																																					
50	0 msec	Default																																																				
51	+2 msec																																																					
...	...																																																					
99	+98 msec																																																					
			<p>* The default "50" of the transfer OFF timing indicates "210msec passed from PPD1OFF."</p> <p>* The transfer OFF timing can be adjusted to 210msec ± 2ms.</p>																																																			
			<p><b>[Operation] (AR-M200/M201)</b></p>																																																			
			<p>1) Initial display &lt;Front surface lead edge setting&gt;</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>26-42 TC ON TIMING</td></tr> <tr><td>F-REAR 11 ( 0-21 )</td></tr> </table>				26-42 TC ON TIMING	F-REAR 11 ( 0-21 )																																														
26-42 TC ON TIMING																																																						
F-REAR 11 ( 0-21 )																																																						
			<p>3) [Numeric] key: Value entry</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>26-42 TC ON TIMING</td></tr> <tr><td>F-END 51 ( 1-99 )</td></tr> </table>				26-42 TC ON TIMING	F-END 51 ( 1-99 )																																														
26-42 TC ON TIMING																																																						
F-END 51 ( 1-99 )																																																						
			<p>2) [◀][▶] key: Mode selection</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>26-42 TC ON TIMING</td></tr> <tr><td>F-END 50 ( 1-99 )</td></tr> </table>				26-42 TC ON TIMING	F-END 50 ( 1-99 )																																														
26-42 TC ON TIMING																																																						
F-END 50 ( 1-99 )																																																						
			<p>4) [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key: Settles the entered value. The display is shifted to the sub code input standby menu.</p>																																																			

Main code	Sub code	Contents	Details of function/operation																																																	
26	43	Side void setup	<p><b>[Function]</b> When this simulation is executed, the currently set code of the side void quantity is displayed (initial display), and the set data are saved. (Setting range: 0 – 10, Default: 4 (= One side 2.0mm))</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Code</th><th>Setting</th><th>Remark</th><th></th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>0</td><td>0 mm</td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>0.5 mm</td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>1.0 mm</td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>3</td><td>1.5 mm</td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>4</td><td>2.0 mm</td><td>Default</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>5</td><td>2.5 mm</td><td></td><td></td></tr> </tbody> </table> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Code</th><th>Setting</th><th>Remark</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>6</td><td>3.0 mm</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>7</td><td>3.5 mm</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>8</td><td>4.0 mm</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>9</td><td>4.5 mm</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>10</td><td>5.5 mm</td><td></td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>* When the adjustment value is increased by 1, the side void is changed as follows: Side void adjustment: The side void is increased by 0.5mm. (The side void of "Set value x 0.5mm" is made.)</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b> <b>AR-M200/M201</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Initial display 26-43 SIDE VOID 4 ( 0-10)</li> <li>[Numeric] key 26-43 SIDE VOID 5 ( 0-10)</li> <li>[OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key 26-43 SIDE VOID 5 ( 0-10)</li> </ol>				Code	Setting	Remark		0	0 mm			1	0.5 mm			2	1.0 mm			3	1.5 mm			4	2.0 mm	Default		5	2.5 mm			Code	Setting	Remark	6	3.0 mm		7	3.5 mm		8	4.0 mm		9	4.5 mm		10	5.5 mm	
Code	Setting	Remark																																																		
0	0 mm																																																			
1	0.5 mm																																																			
2	1.0 mm																																																			
3	1.5 mm																																																			
4	2.0 mm	Default																																																		
5	2.5 mm																																																			
Code	Setting	Remark																																																		
6	3.0 mm																																																			
7	3.5 mm																																																			
8	4.0 mm																																																			
9	4.5 mm																																																			
10	5.5 mm																																																			
	54	$\gamma$ life correction setting	<p><b>[Function]</b> Used to set the <math>\gamma</math> life correction. When this simulation is executed, the current set code number is displayed. Enter the desired code number and press [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key to save the setting. (Setting range: 0 – 1, default: 1)</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Code number</th><th>Setting</th><th>Display item</th><th>Remark</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>0</td><td>OFF</td><td>OFF</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>ON</td><td>ON</td><td>Default</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>[Operation]</b> The operation is similar to simulation 26-02.</p>				Code number	Setting	Display item	Remark	0	OFF	OFF		1	ON	ON	Default																																		
Code number	Setting	Display item	Remark																																																	
0	OFF	OFF																																																		
1	ON	ON	Default																																																	
	62	Energy-save mode copy lamp setup	<p><b>[Function]</b> Used to set half-ON /OFF of the copy lamp in the pre-heat mode. When this simulation is executed, the current set code number is displayed. Enter the desired code number and press [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key to save the setting.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Code number</th><th>Setting</th><th>Display item</th><th>Remark</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>0</td><td>Copy lamp OFF</td><td>OFF</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Copy lamp half-ON</td><td>ON</td><td>Default</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>[Operation]</b> The operation is similar to simulation 26-02.</p>				Code number	Setting	Display item	Remark	0	Copy lamp OFF	OFF		1	Copy lamp half-ON	ON	Default																																		
Code number	Setting	Display item	Remark																																																	
0	Copy lamp OFF	OFF																																																		
1	Copy lamp half-ON	ON	Default																																																	
30	01	Paper sensor status display	<p><b>[Function]</b> The paper sensor status is displayed on the LCD/LED.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Sensor</th><th>Display item (AR-M200/M201)</th><th>Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>Paper exit sensor</td><td>POD</td><td>Photoconductor cartridge replacement lamp</td></tr> <tr><td>No. 1 tray paper width sensor (AR-M200/M201 only)</td><td>PD1</td><td>—</td></tr> <tr><td>No. 2 tray paper width sensor (AR-M200/ M201 only)</td><td>PD2</td><td>—</td></tr> <tr><td>Paper entry sensor</td><td>PPD1</td><td>Developer cartridge replacement lamp</td></tr> <tr><td>Duplex sensor (AR-M201 only)</td><td>PPD2</td><td>JAM lamp</td></tr> <tr><td>No. 2 tray paper feed sensor</td><td>PPD3</td><td>2nd cassette lamp</td></tr> <tr><td>New drum cartridge sensor</td><td>DRST</td><td>Zoom lamp</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>* Since the manual paper feed sensor is a single bypass sensor, its status is not displayed. * The width sensor is available only in the FAX models.</p> <p><b>[Operation] (AR-M200/M201)</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Initial display 30-01 P-SENSOR</li> <li>When sensor ON 30-01 POD PD1 PD2 PPD1 PPD2 PPD3 DRST</li> </ol>				Sensor	Display item (AR-M200/M201)	Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)	Paper exit sensor	POD	Photoconductor cartridge replacement lamp	No. 1 tray paper width sensor (AR-M200/M201 only)	PD1	—	No. 2 tray paper width sensor (AR-M200/ M201 only)	PD2	—	Paper entry sensor	PPD1	Developer cartridge replacement lamp	Duplex sensor (AR-M201 only)	PPD2	JAM lamp	No. 2 tray paper feed sensor	PPD3	2nd cassette lamp	New drum cartridge sensor	DRST	Zoom lamp																						
Sensor	Display item (AR-M200/M201)	Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)																																																		
Paper exit sensor	POD	Photoconductor cartridge replacement lamp																																																		
No. 1 tray paper width sensor (AR-M200/M201 only)	PD1	—																																																		
No. 2 tray paper width sensor (AR-M200/ M201 only)	PD2	—																																																		
Paper entry sensor	PPD1	Developer cartridge replacement lamp																																																		
Duplex sensor (AR-M201 only)	PPD2	JAM lamp																																																		
No. 2 tray paper feed sensor	PPD3	2nd cassette lamp																																																		
New drum cartridge sensor	DRST	Zoom lamp																																																		

Main code	Sub code	Contents	Details of function/operation																																										
41	06	OC cover float detection level adjustment (Only the AR-203E/M200/M201 with the SPF/RSPF installed)	<p><b>[Function]</b> When this simulation is executed, the current set value is displayed. When [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key is pressed, the mirror base unit moves to the SPF/RSPF scan position to acquire the OC cover float detection level. When the mirror base unit returns to the home position, the acquired value is displayed. If the adjustment is NG, the following message is displayed. AR-203E/5420: Misfeed lamp lights up, and the 7seg display remains unchanged. AR-M200/M201: The LCD indicates "ERR." Note that, this simulation must be executed with the OC cover closed. * If the value is 0, float detection is not performed in normal jobs.</p> <p><b>[Operation] (AR-M200/M201)</b></p> <p>1) Initial display 41-06 OC FLOAT LEVEL 0</p> <p>2) [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key 41-06 OC FLOAT LEVEL EXECUTING...</p> <p>3) When the level is acquired: 41-06 OC FLOAT LEVEL **** OK</p> <p>3) When the level is not acquired: 41-06 OC FLOAT LEVEL **** ERR</p> <p>&lt;Canceling - when [Clear]/[Clear All] key is pressed-&gt; After canceling, the machine goes into the sub code entry standby mode.</p> <p>THE JOB IS BEING CANCELED.</p>																																										
	07	OC cover float detection margin setting (Only the AR-203E/M200/M201 with the SPF/RSPF installed)	<p><b>[Function]</b> For the number of pixels between black markers on the SPF/RSPF scanning position saved in "41-06: (OC cover float detection level adjustment)", if the number of pixels between the markers when processing float detection is less than the number of pixels set with this simulation, it is judged as the float error. When the set value of this simulation is "0," no float error occurs. When this simulation is executed, the current set value is displayed. Enter the adjustment value with [▲][▼] key (or [Numeric] key for the AR-M200/M201), and press [START] key. The setting is saved and the display is shifted to the sub code input standby menu. Setting range: 0 – 99 (Copies with margin 0 – 99 pixels.) Default: 30 (30 pixels)</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b> The operation is similar to simulation 09-04.</p>																																										
43	01	Fusing temperature setting (Normal copy)	<p><b>[Function]</b> Used to set the fusing temperature of 3rd or later sheet. (For 1st and 2nd sheets, simulation 43-14 is used.) When this simulation is executed, the current set code number is displayed. Press [▲][▼] key (or [Numeric] key for the AR-M200/M201) to change the setting and press [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key to save the setting into the EEPROM. The machine goes into the sub code entry standby mode. The [Exposure mode selector] key (or [◀][▶] key for the AR-M200/M201) is used to select the mode.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Code</th> <th>Set temperature (°C)</th> <th>Remark</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>170</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>175</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>180</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>185</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td>190</td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Code</th> <th>Set temperature (°C)</th> <th>Remark</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>5</td> <td>195</td> <td>Default</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6</td> <td>200</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>7</td> <td>205</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>8</td> <td>210</td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Mode</th> <th>Display item (AR-M200/M201)</th> <th>Display item (AR-203E/5420)</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Main cassette paper feed &amp; 2nd cassette paper feed</td> <td>TRAY1</td> <td>AE mode lamp</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Manual paper feed</td> <td>MFT</td> <td>TEXT mode lamp</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>* The cassette feed and the manual feed are controlled similarly.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b></p> <p><b>AR-M200/M201</b></p> <p>1) Initial display &lt;Main cassette paper feed &amp; 2nd cassette paper feed setting&gt; 43-01 FU TEMP TRAY1 6 ( 0-8 )</p> <p>2) [◀][▶] key: Mode selection 43-01 FU TEMP MFT 6 ( 0-8 )</p> <p>3) [Numeric] key: Value entry 43-01 FU TEMP MFT 6 ( 0-8 )</p> <p><b>AR-203E/5420</b></p> <p>4) [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key Settles the entered value. The display is shifted to the sub code input standby menu.</p> <p>1) Press [Exposure mode selector] key to change the mode. 2) Press [▲][▼] key to set the value. 3) Press [START] key to fix the code number.</p>	Code	Set temperature (°C)	Remark	0	170		1	175		2	180		3	185		4	190		Code	Set temperature (°C)	Remark	5	195	Default	6	200		7	205		8	210		Mode	Display item (AR-M200/M201)	Display item (AR-203E/5420)	Main cassette paper feed & 2nd cassette paper feed	TRAY1	AE mode lamp	Manual paper feed	MFT	TEXT mode lamp
Code	Set temperature (°C)	Remark																																											
0	170																																												
1	175																																												
2	180																																												
3	185																																												
4	190																																												
Code	Set temperature (°C)	Remark																																											
5	195	Default																																											
6	200																																												
7	205																																												
8	210																																												
Mode	Display item (AR-M200/M201)	Display item (AR-203E/5420)																																											
Main cassette paper feed & 2nd cassette paper feed	TRAY1	AE mode lamp																																											
Manual paper feed	MFT	TEXT mode lamp																																											

Main code	Sub code	Contents	Details of function/operation																																															
43	04	Fusing temperature setting in multi copy	<p><b>[Function]</b> For 20th sheet or later in multi copy, the fusing temperature is automatically changed from the temperature set with simulation 43-01 to the temperature set with this simulation. When this simulation is executed, the current set code number is displayed. Enter the code number and press [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key to change the setting.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Code</th><th>Set temperature (°C)</th><th>Remark</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>0</td><td>165</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>170</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>175</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>3</td><td>180</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>4</td><td>185</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>5</td><td>190</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>6</td><td>195</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>7</td><td>200</td><td></td></tr> </tbody> </table> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Mode</th><th>Display item (AR-M200/M201)</th><th>Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)</th><th>Default</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>Main cassette paper feed &amp; 2nd cassette paper feed</td><td>TRAY1</td><td>AE mode lamp</td><td>3</td></tr> <tr><td>Manual paper feed</td><td>MFT</td><td>TEXT mode lamp</td><td>3</td></tr> <tr><td>Main cassette paper feed &amp; 2nd cassette paper feed (small-size)</td><td>TRAY1 SH</td><td>PHOTO mode lamp</td><td>1</td></tr> <tr><td>Manual paper feed (small-size)</td><td>MFT SH</td><td>AE mode lamp TEXT mode lamp</td><td>1</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>* The cassette feed and the manual feed are controlled similarly.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b> The operation is similar to simulation 43-01.</p>	Code	Set temperature (°C)	Remark	0	165		1	170		2	175		3	180		4	185		5	190		6	195		7	200		Mode	Display item (AR-M200/M201)	Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)	Default	Main cassette paper feed & 2nd cassette paper feed	TRAY1	AE mode lamp	3	Manual paper feed	MFT	TEXT mode lamp	3	Main cassette paper feed & 2nd cassette paper feed (small-size)	TRAY1 SH	PHOTO mode lamp	1	Manual paper feed (small-size)	MFT SH	AE mode lamp TEXT mode lamp	1
Code	Set temperature (°C)	Remark																																																
0	165																																																	
1	170																																																	
2	175																																																	
3	180																																																	
4	185																																																	
5	190																																																	
6	195																																																	
7	200																																																	
Mode	Display item (AR-M200/M201)	Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)	Default																																															
Main cassette paper feed & 2nd cassette paper feed	TRAY1	AE mode lamp	3																																															
Manual paper feed	MFT	TEXT mode lamp	3																																															
Main cassette paper feed & 2nd cassette paper feed (small-size)	TRAY1 SH	PHOTO mode lamp	1																																															
Manual paper feed (small-size)	MFT SH	AE mode lamp TEXT mode lamp	1																																															
	05	Fusing temperature setup in duplex copy (AR-M201 only)	<p><b>[Function]</b> In the case of duplex copy, the shift temperature set with this simulation is applied to the fusing temperature. When this simulation is executed, the current set code number is displayed. Enter the desired code number and press [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key to save the setting.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Code</th><th>Shift temperature (°C)</th><th>Remark</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>0</td><td>±0</td><td>Default</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>-8</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>-6</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>3</td><td>-4</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>4</td><td>-2</td><td></td></tr> </tbody> </table> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Code</th><th>Shift temperature (°C)</th><th>Remark</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>5</td><td>±0</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>6</td><td>+2</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>7</td><td>+4</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>8</td><td>+6</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>9</td><td>+8</td><td></td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>[Operation]</b> The operation is similar to simulation 26-02.</p>	Code	Shift temperature (°C)	Remark	0	±0	Default	1	-8		2	-6		3	-4		4	-2		Code	Shift temperature (°C)	Remark	5	±0		6	+2		7	+4		8	+6		9	+8												
Code	Shift temperature (°C)	Remark																																																
0	±0	Default																																																
1	-8																																																	
2	-6																																																	
3	-4																																																	
4	-2																																																	
Code	Shift temperature (°C)	Remark																																																
5	±0																																																	
6	+2																																																	
7	+4																																																	
8	+6																																																	
9	+8																																																	
14		Fusing start temperature setting	<p><b>[Function]</b> When this simulation is started, the currently set code number is displayed. Press [▲] [▼] key (or [Numeric] key or [◀] [▶] key for the AR-M200/M201) to switch the setting, and press [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key to save it to the EEPROM. The machine goes to the sub code entry standby mode.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Code</th><th>Set temperature (°C)</th><th>Remark</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>0</td><td>160</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>165</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>170</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>3</td><td>175</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>4</td><td>180</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>5</td><td>185</td><td></td></tr> </tbody> </table> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Code</th><th>Set temperature (°C)</th><th>Remark</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>6</td><td>190</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>7</td><td>195</td><td>Default</td></tr> <tr><td>8</td><td>200</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>9</td><td>205</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>10</td><td>210</td><td></td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>[Operation]</b> The operation is similar to simulation 43-01.</p>	Code	Set temperature (°C)	Remark	0	160		1	165		2	170		3	175		4	180		5	185		Code	Set temperature (°C)	Remark	6	190		7	195	Default	8	200		9	205		10	210									
Code	Set temperature (°C)	Remark																																																
0	160																																																	
1	165																																																	
2	170																																																	
3	175																																																	
4	180																																																	
5	185																																																	
Code	Set temperature (°C)	Remark																																																
6	190																																																	
7	195	Default																																																
8	200																																																	
9	205																																																	
10	210																																																	

Main code	Sub code	Contents	Details of function/operation																																																															
46	01	Copy density adjustment (300dpi)	<p><b>[Function]</b>            Copy density is set for each mode.            When this simulation is executed, the current se value is displayed in 2 digits (Default: 50).            Change the set value and press [START] key to make a copy under the set value.            When the set value is increased, the copy becomes darker. When the set value is decreased, the copy becomes lighter.            In this case, only Exp.3 copy is made. When, however, the setting is made to make darker copy, Exp.1 and Exp.5 copies also become darker. When made to lighter copy, Exp.1 and Exp.5 copies become lighter, too.            Press [Exposure mode selector] key (or [<math>\blacktriangleleft</math>] [<math>\triangleright</math>] key for the AR-M200/M201) to switch the mode.            The set value of the selected mode is displayed on the LCD/display. (Adjustment value: 1 – 99)            The setting procedure of the magnification ratio is the same as that to copy operation.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Mode</th><th>Display item (AR-M200/M201)</th><th>LED (AR-M200/M201)</th><th>Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)</th><th>Default</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>AE mode (300dpi)</td><td>AE</td><td>COPY mode lamp</td><td>AE mode lamp</td><td>50</td></tr> <tr> <td>TEXT mode (300dpi)</td><td>TEXT</td><td>PRINT mode lamp</td><td>TEXT mode lamp</td><td>50</td></tr> <tr> <td>PHOTO mode</td><td>PHOTO</td><td>SCAN mode lamp</td><td>PHOTO mode lamp</td><td>50</td></tr> <tr> <td>TS mode (TEXT) (300dpi)</td><td>TSTXT</td><td>PRINT mode lamp SCAN mode lamp</td><td>TEXT mode lamp PHOTO mode lamp</td><td>50</td></tr> <tr> <td>TS mode (AE) (300dpi)</td><td>TSAE</td><td>COPY mode lamp SCAN mode lamp</td><td>AE mode lamp PHOTO mode lamp</td><td>50</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>[Operation]</b>  <b>AR-M200/M201</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Initial display</li> </ol> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">         46-01 EXP.LEVEL 300          AE 100% 50( 1-99)       </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[<math>\blacktriangleleft</math>] key: Mode selection</li> </ol> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">         46-01 EXP.LEVEL 300          TSAE 100% 50( 1-99)       </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[<math>\triangleright</math>] key: Mode selection</li> </ol> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">         46-01 EXP.LEVEL 300          TEXT 100% 50( 1-99)       </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[Numeric] key: Value entry</li> </ol> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">         46-01 EXP.LEVEL 300          AE 100% 62( 1-99)       </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[START] key: Fixing and printing value (No change on the LCD)</li> </ol> <p>* Print is started in the set mode.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">         46-01 EXP.LEVEL 300          AE 100% 62( 1-99)       </div> <p>4) To fix the set value without printing, press [OK]/[ENTER] key.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">         46-01 EXP.LEVEL 300          AE 100% 62( 1-99)       </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* To cancel manual feed paper empty MSG, press any key.</li> <li>* When performing the AE mode exposure adjustment, place the test chart on the document table so that the center area of 10cm is not covered.</li> </ul> <p><b>AR-203E/5420</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press [Exposure mode selector] key to change the mode.</li> <li>Press [<math>\blacktriangleleft</math>] [<math>\triangleright</math>] key to set the value.</li> <li>[START] Fixing and printing value</li> </ol> <p>* Print is started in the set mode.</p>	Mode	Display item (AR-M200/M201)	LED (AR-M200/M201)	Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)	Default	AE mode (300dpi)	AE	COPY mode lamp	AE mode lamp	50	TEXT mode (300dpi)	TEXT	PRINT mode lamp	TEXT mode lamp	50	PHOTO mode	PHOTO	SCAN mode lamp	PHOTO mode lamp	50	TS mode (TEXT) (300dpi)	TSTXT	PRINT mode lamp SCAN mode lamp	TEXT mode lamp PHOTO mode lamp	50	TS mode (AE) (300dpi)	TSAE	COPY mode lamp SCAN mode lamp	AE mode lamp PHOTO mode lamp	50	02	Copy density adjustment (600dpi)	<p><b>[Function]</b>            Copy density is set for each mode.            When this simulation is executed, the current se value is displayed in 2 digits (Default: 50).            Change the set value and press [START] key to make a copy under the set value.            When the set value is increased, the copy becomes darker. When the set value is decreased, the copy becomes lighter.            In this case, only Exp.3 copy is made. When, however, the setting is made to make darker copy, Exp.1 and Exp.5 copies also become darker. When made to lighter copy, Exp.1 and Exp.5 copies become lighter, too.            Press [Exposure mode selector] key (or [<math>\blacktriangleleft</math>] [<math>\triangleright</math>] key for the AR-M200/M201) to switch the mode.            The set value of the selected mode is displayed on the LCD/display. (Adjustment value: 1 – 99)</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Mode</th><th>Display item (AR-M200/M201)</th><th>LED (AR-M200/M201)</th><th>Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)</th><th>Default</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>AE mode (600dpi)</td><td>AE</td><td>COPY mode lamp</td><td>AE mode lamp</td><td>50</td></tr> <tr> <td>TEXT mode (600dpi)</td><td>TEXT</td><td>PRINT mode lamp</td><td>TEXT mode lamp</td><td>50</td></tr> <tr> <td>PHOTO mode</td><td>PHOTO</td><td>SCAN mode lamp</td><td>PHOTO mode lamp</td><td>50</td></tr> <tr> <td>TS mode (TEXT) (600dpi)</td><td>TSTXT</td><td>PRINT mode lamp SCAN mode lamp</td><td>TEXT mode lamp PHOTO mode lamp</td><td>50</td></tr> <tr> <td>TS mode (AE) (600dpi)</td><td>TSAE</td><td>COPY mode lamp SCAN mode lamp</td><td>AE mode lamp PHOTO mode lamp</td><td>50</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>[Operation]</b>            The operation is similar to simulation 46-01.</p>	Mode	Display item (AR-M200/M201)	LED (AR-M200/M201)	Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)	Default	AE mode (600dpi)	AE	COPY mode lamp	AE mode lamp	50	TEXT mode (600dpi)	TEXT	PRINT mode lamp	TEXT mode lamp	50	PHOTO mode	PHOTO	SCAN mode lamp	PHOTO mode lamp	50	TS mode (TEXT) (600dpi)	TSTXT	PRINT mode lamp SCAN mode lamp	TEXT mode lamp PHOTO mode lamp	50	TS mode (AE) (600dpi)	TSAE	COPY mode lamp SCAN mode lamp	AE mode lamp PHOTO mode lamp	50
Mode	Display item (AR-M200/M201)	LED (AR-M200/M201)	Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)	Default																																																														
AE mode (300dpi)	AE	COPY mode lamp	AE mode lamp	50																																																														
TEXT mode (300dpi)	TEXT	PRINT mode lamp	TEXT mode lamp	50																																																														
PHOTO mode	PHOTO	SCAN mode lamp	PHOTO mode lamp	50																																																														
TS mode (TEXT) (300dpi)	TSTXT	PRINT mode lamp SCAN mode lamp	TEXT mode lamp PHOTO mode lamp	50																																																														
TS mode (AE) (300dpi)	TSAE	COPY mode lamp SCAN mode lamp	AE mode lamp PHOTO mode lamp	50																																																														
Mode	Display item (AR-M200/M201)	LED (AR-M200/M201)	Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)	Default																																																														
AE mode (600dpi)	AE	COPY mode lamp	AE mode lamp	50																																																														
TEXT mode (600dpi)	TEXT	PRINT mode lamp	TEXT mode lamp	50																																																														
PHOTO mode	PHOTO	SCAN mode lamp	PHOTO mode lamp	50																																																														
TS mode (TEXT) (600dpi)	TSTXT	PRINT mode lamp SCAN mode lamp	TEXT mode lamp PHOTO mode lamp	50																																																														
TS mode (AE) (600dpi)	TSAE	COPY mode lamp SCAN mode lamp	AE mode lamp PHOTO mode lamp	50																																																														

Main code	Sub code	Contents	Details of function/operation																																		
46	12	Density adjustment in the FAX mode (Collective adjustment) (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)	<p><b>[Function]</b> When [START] key is pressed, scan is executed with the entered exposure adjustment value and the data stored on the FAX side is rewritten into the entered value. All data of the exposure adjustment values are rewritten into the same value. For the density adjustment table data, refer to simulation 46-13 (density adjustment (Normal text) in the FAX mode).</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b></p> <p>1) Initial display</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>ADJUST EXP.</td><td>AUTO</td></tr> <tr><td>XX</td><td></td></tr> </table> <p>("XX" is the exposure adjustment value of normal text stored on the FAX side.)</p> <p>2) Enter a 2-digit value as the exposure adjustment value.</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>ADJUST EXP.</td><td>AUTO</td></tr> <tr><td>YY</td><td></td></tr> </table> <p>("YY" is the entered exposure adjustment value.)</p> <p>3) Scan is started (self print), and the LED of [START] key is turned off.</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>ADJUST EXP.</td><td>AUTO</td></tr> <tr><td>SCAN</td><td>YY</td></tr> </table> <p>4) Print is started (self print).</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>ADJUST EXP.</td><td>AUTO</td></tr> <tr><td>PRINT</td><td>YY</td></tr> </table> <p>After completion of printing, returns to "2" display.</p>	ADJUST EXP.	AUTO	XX		ADJUST EXP.	AUTO	YY		ADJUST EXP.	AUTO	SCAN	YY	ADJUST EXP.	AUTO	PRINT	YY																		
ADJUST EXP.	AUTO																																				
XX																																					
ADJUST EXP.	AUTO																																				
YY																																					
ADJUST EXP.	AUTO																																				
SCAN	YY																																				
ADJUST EXP.	AUTO																																				
PRINT	YY																																				
	13	FAX mode density adjustment (Normal text) (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)	<p><b>[Function]</b> Scan is started with the exposure adjustment value entered with [START] key, and the stored data of the selected mode on the FAX side is rewritten into the input value.</p> <p>Density adjustment value data table</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Mode</th><th>Photo</th><th>Exposure adjustment value</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>STD (Normal text)</td><td>off</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Fine (Fine text)</td><td>on</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td></td><td>off</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Sfine (Super fine)</td><td>on</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td></td><td>off</td><td></td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>When initializing each data: 50</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b></p> <p>1) Initial display</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>ADJUST EXP.</td><td>STD</td></tr> <tr><td>XX</td><td></td></tr> </table> <p>("XX" is the corresponding exposure adjustment value of normal text mode stored on the FAX side.)</p> <p>2) Enter a 2-digit value as the exposure adjustment value with [Numeric] key.</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>ADJUST EXP.</td><td>STD</td></tr> <tr><td>YY</td><td></td></tr> </table> <p>("YY" is the entered exposure adjustment value.)</p> <p>3) Scan is started (self print), and the LED of [START] key is turned off.</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>ADJUST EXP.</td><td>STD</td></tr> <tr><td>SCAN</td><td>YY</td></tr> </table> <p>4) Print is started (self print).</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>ADJUST EXP.</td><td>STD</td></tr> <tr><td>PRINT</td><td>YY</td></tr> </table> <p>After completion of printing, returns to "2" display.</p>	Mode	Photo	Exposure adjustment value	STD (Normal text)	off		Fine (Fine text)	on			off		Sfine (Super fine)	on			off		ADJUST EXP.	STD	XX		ADJUST EXP.	STD	YY		ADJUST EXP.	STD	SCAN	YY	ADJUST EXP.	STD	PRINT	YY
Mode	Photo	Exposure adjustment value																																			
STD (Normal text)	off																																				
Fine (Fine text)	on																																				
	off																																				
Sfine (Super fine)	on																																				
	off																																				
ADJUST EXP.	STD																																				
XX																																					
ADJUST EXP.	STD																																				
YY																																					
ADJUST EXP.	STD																																				
SCAN	YY																																				
ADJUST EXP.	STD																																				
PRINT	YY																																				
	14	FAX mode density adjustment (Fine text) (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)	<p><b>[Function]</b> When [START] key is pressed, scan is started with the entered exposure adjustment value and the data of the selected mode on the FAX side is changed to the entered value. For the density adjustment value table data, refer to simulation 46-13 (FAX mode density adjustment (Normal text).)</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b></p> <p>1) Initial display</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>ADJUST EXP.</td><td>FINE</td></tr> <tr><td>XX</td><td></td></tr> </table> <p>("XX" is the corresponding exposure adjustment value of the fine text mode stored on the FAX side.)</p> <p>2) Enter a 2-digit value as the exposure adjustment value with [Numeric] key.</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>ADJUST EXP.</td><td>FINE</td></tr> <tr><td>YY</td><td></td></tr> </table> <p>("YY" is the entered exposure adjustment value.)</p> <p>3) Scan start (self print)</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>ADJUST EXP.</td><td>FINE</td></tr> <tr><td>SCAN</td><td>YY</td></tr> </table> <p>4) Print start (self print)</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>ADJUST EXP.</td><td>AUTO</td></tr> <tr><td>PRINT</td><td>YY</td></tr> </table> <p>After completion of printing, returns to "2" display.</p>	ADJUST EXP.	FINE	XX		ADJUST EXP.	FINE	YY		ADJUST EXP.	FINE	SCAN	YY	ADJUST EXP.	AUTO	PRINT	YY																		
ADJUST EXP.	FINE																																				
XX																																					
ADJUST EXP.	FINE																																				
YY																																					
ADJUST EXP.	FINE																																				
SCAN	YY																																				
ADJUST EXP.	AUTO																																				
PRINT	YY																																				

Main code	Sub code	Contents	Details of function/operation																														
46	15	FAX mode density adjustment (Super fine) (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)	<p><b>[Function]</b> When [START] key is pressed, scan is started with the entered exposure adjustment value and the data of the selected mode on the FAX side is changed to the entered value. For the density adjustment value table data, refer to simulation 46-13 (FAX mode density adjustment (Normal text).)</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b></p> <p>1) Initial display</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>ADJUST EXP.</td><td>S-FINE</td></tr> <tr><td colspan="2">XX</td></tr> </table> <p>("XX" is the corresponding exposure adjustment value of the super fine mode stored on the FAX side.)</p> <p>2) Enter a 2-digit value as the exposure adjustment value with [Numeric] key.</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>ADJUST EXP.</td><td>S-FINE</td></tr> <tr><td colspan="2">YY</td></tr> </table> <p>("YY" is the entered exposure adjustment value.)</p> <p>3) Scan start (self print)</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>ADJUST EXP.</td><td>S-FINE</td></tr> <tr><td>SCAN</td><td>YY</td></tr> </table> <p>4) Print start (self print)</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>ADJUST EXP.</td><td>S-FINE</td></tr> <tr><td>PRINT</td><td>YY</td></tr> </table> <p>After completion of printing, returns to "2" display.</p>	ADJUST EXP.	S-FINE	XX		ADJUST EXP.	S-FINE	YY		ADJUST EXP.	S-FINE	SCAN	YY	ADJUST EXP.	S-FINE	PRINT	YY														
ADJUST EXP.	S-FINE																																
XX																																	
ADJUST EXP.	S-FINE																																
YY																																	
ADJUST EXP.	S-FINE																																
SCAN	YY																																
ADJUST EXP.	S-FINE																																
PRINT	YY																																
	18	Image contrast adjustment (300dpi)	<p><b>[Function]</b> Contrast is set for each mode. When this simulation is executed, the current se value is displayed in 2 digits (Default: 50). Change the set value and press [START] key to make a copy under the set value. When the set value is increased, the contrast becomes higher. When the set value is decreased, the contrast becomes lower. In this case, only Exp.3 copy is made. When, however, the setting is made to make higher contrast, Exp.1 and Exp.5 copies also become in higher contrast. When made to a lower contrast, Exp.1. and Exp.5 copies become lower contrast, too. Press [Exposure mode selector] key (or [<math>\leftarrow</math>] [<math>\rightarrow</math>] key for the AR-M200/M201) to switch the mode. The set value of the selected mode is displayed on the LCD/display. (Adjustment value: 1 – 99)</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Mode</th> <th>Display item (AR-M200/M201)</th> <th>LED (AR-M200/M201)</th> <th>Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)</th> <th>Default</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>AE mode (300dpi)</td> <td>AE</td> <td>COPY mode lamp</td> <td>AE mode lamp</td> <td>50</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TEXT mode (300dpi)</td> <td>TEXT</td> <td>PRINT mode lamp</td> <td>TEXT mode lamp</td> <td>50</td> </tr> <tr> <td>PHOTO mode</td> <td>PHOTO</td> <td>SCAN mode lamp</td> <td>PHOTO mode lamp</td> <td>50</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TS mode (TEXT) (300dpi)</td> <td>TSTXT</td> <td>PRINT mode lamp SCAN mode lamp</td> <td>TEXT mode lamp PHOTO mode lamp</td> <td>50</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TS mode (AE) (300dpi)</td> <td>TSAE</td> <td>COPY mode lamp SCAN mode lamp</td> <td>AE mode lamp PHOTO mode lamp</td> <td>50</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>* No density display on LCD/display.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b> The operation is similar to simulation 46-01.</p>	Mode	Display item (AR-M200/M201)	LED (AR-M200/M201)	Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)	Default	AE mode (300dpi)	AE	COPY mode lamp	AE mode lamp	50	TEXT mode (300dpi)	TEXT	PRINT mode lamp	TEXT mode lamp	50	PHOTO mode	PHOTO	SCAN mode lamp	PHOTO mode lamp	50	TS mode (TEXT) (300dpi)	TSTXT	PRINT mode lamp SCAN mode lamp	TEXT mode lamp PHOTO mode lamp	50	TS mode (AE) (300dpi)	TSAE	COPY mode lamp SCAN mode lamp	AE mode lamp PHOTO mode lamp	50
Mode	Display item (AR-M200/M201)	LED (AR-M200/M201)	Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)	Default																													
AE mode (300dpi)	AE	COPY mode lamp	AE mode lamp	50																													
TEXT mode (300dpi)	TEXT	PRINT mode lamp	TEXT mode lamp	50																													
PHOTO mode	PHOTO	SCAN mode lamp	PHOTO mode lamp	50																													
TS mode (TEXT) (300dpi)	TSTXT	PRINT mode lamp SCAN mode lamp	TEXT mode lamp PHOTO mode lamp	50																													
TS mode (AE) (300dpi)	TSAE	COPY mode lamp SCAN mode lamp	AE mode lamp PHOTO mode lamp	50																													

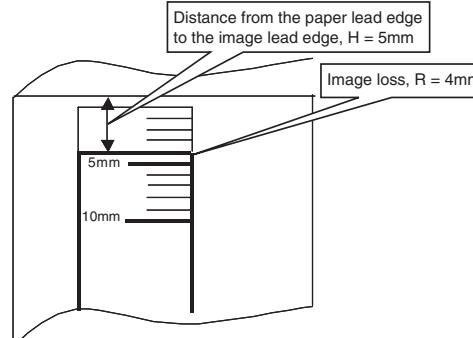
Main code	Sub code	Contents	Details of function/operation																																					
46	19	Exposure mode setup	<p><b>[Function]</b>          &lt;<math>\gamma</math> table setting&gt;</p> <p>When this simulation is executed, the code number of the current set gamma table is displayed. (Default: 2)</p> <p>Enter the code number corresponding to the desired gamma table, and press [Exposure mode selector] key (or [<math>\blacktriangleleft</math>] [<math>\triangleright</math>] key for the AR-M200/M201) to change the mode and write into the EEPROM.</p> <p>&lt;AE operation mode&gt;</p> <p>When setting the <math>\gamma</math> table, press [Exposure mode selector] key (or [<math>\triangleright</math>] key for the AR-M200/M201) to change to the AE operation mode, and the current set code number of the AE operation mode is displayed. (Default: 0)</p> <p>Enter the code number corresponding to the desired AE operation mode and press [Exposure mode selector] key (or [<math>\blacktriangleleft</math>] [<math>\triangleright</math>] key for the AR-M200/M201) to change the mode and write into the EEPROM.</p> <p>&lt;PHOTO image process setting&gt;</p> <p>When [Exposure mode selector] key (or [<math>\triangleright</math>] key for the AR-M200/M201) is pressed in AE operation mode setting, the mode is changed to the PHOTO image process setting and the code number of the current set PHOTO image process setting is displayed. (Default: 1)</p> <p>Enter the code number corresponding to the desired PHOTO image process setting and press [Exposure mode selector] key (or [<math>\blacktriangleleft</math>] [<math>\triangleright</math>] key for the AR-M200/M201) to change the mode and write into the EEPROM.</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Mode</th> <th>Display item (AR-M200/M201)</th> <th>Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)</th> <th>Code number</th> <th>Setting content</th> <th>Remark</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td rowspan="2"><math>\gamma</math></td> <td rowspan="2">GAMMA</td> <td rowspan="2">OFF</td> <td>1</td> <td>Image quality priority mode</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>Toner consumption priority mode</td> <td>Default</td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="2">AE</td> <td rowspan="2">AE</td> <td rowspan="2">AE</td> <td>0</td> <td>Lead edge stop</td> <td>Default</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Real time process</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="2">PHOTO</td> <td rowspan="2">PHOTO</td> <td rowspan="2">PHOTO</td> <td>1</td> <td>Error diffusion process</td> <td>Default</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>Dither process</td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>					Mode	Display item (AR-M200/M201)	Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)	Code number	Setting content	Remark	$\gamma$	GAMMA	OFF	1	Image quality priority mode		2	Toner consumption priority mode	Default	AE	AE	AE	0	Lead edge stop	Default	1	Real time process		PHOTO	PHOTO	PHOTO	1	Error diffusion process	Default	2	Dither process	
Mode	Display item (AR-M200/M201)	Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)	Code number	Setting content	Remark																																			
$\gamma$	GAMMA	OFF	1	Image quality priority mode																																				
			2	Toner consumption priority mode	Default																																			
AE	AE	AE	0	Lead edge stop	Default																																			
			1	Real time process																																				
PHOTO	PHOTO	PHOTO	1	Error diffusion process	Default																																			
			2	Dither process																																				
20		SPF/RSPF exposure correction (Only the AR-203E/M200/M201 with the SPF/RSPF installed)	<p><b>[Function]</b></p> <p>Used to adjust the exposure correction amount in the SPF/RSPF mode. The adjustment is made by adjusting Vref voltage variation for the OC mode.</p> <p>When this simulation is executed, the current set value is displayed in 2 digits (Default: 50). Change the set value and press [START] key to save the setting and make a copy.</p> <p>When the set value is increased, copy becomes darker. When the set value is decreased, copy becomes lighter. (Adjustment range: 1 – 99)</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Mode</th> <th>Display item (AR-M200/M201)</th> <th>Display lamp (AR-203E)</th> <th>Default</th> <th>Remark</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>RSPF/SPF</td> <td>SPF</td> <td>TEXT mode lamp</td> <td>50</td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>[Operation]</b>          The operation is similar to simulation 43-01.</p>					Mode	Display item (AR-M200/M201)	Display lamp (AR-203E)	Default	Remark	RSPF/SPF	SPF	TEXT mode lamp	50																								
Mode	Display item (AR-M200/M201)	Display lamp (AR-203E)	Default	Remark																																				
RSPF/SPF	SPF	TEXT mode lamp	50																																					

Main code	Sub code	Contents	Details of function/operation																																													
46	29	Image contrast adjustment (600dpi)	<p><b>[Function]</b>            Contrast is set for each mode.            When this simulation is executed, the current se value is displayed in 2 digits (Default: 50).            Change the set value and press [START] key to make a copy under the set value.            When the set value is increased, the contrast becomes higher. When the set value is decreased, the contrast becomes lower.            In this case, only Exp.3 copy is made. When, however, the setting is made to make higher contrast, Exp.1 and Exp.5 copies also become in higher contrast. When made to a lower contrast, Exp.1. and Exp.5 copies become lower contrast, too.            Press [Exposure mode selector] key (or [<math>\blacktriangleleft</math>] [<math>\triangleright</math>] key for the AR-M200/M201) to switch the mode.            The set value of the selected mode is displayed on the LCD/display. (Adjustment value: 1 – 99)</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Mode</th><th>Display item (AR-M200/M201)</th><th>LED (AR-M200/M201)</th><th>Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)</th><th>Default</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>AE mode (600dpi)</td><td>AE</td><td>COPY mode lamp</td><td>AE mode lamp</td><td>50</td></tr> <tr> <td>TEXT mode (600dpi)</td><td>TEXT</td><td>PRINT mode lamp</td><td>TEXT mode lamp</td><td>50</td></tr> <tr> <td>PHOTO mode</td><td>PHOTO</td><td>SCAN mode lamp</td><td>PHOTO mode lamp</td><td>50</td></tr> <tr> <td>TS mode (TEXT) (600dpi)</td><td>TSTXT</td><td>PRINT mode lamp SCAN mode lamp</td><td>TEXT mode lamp PHOTO mode lamp</td><td>50</td></tr> <tr> <td>TS mode (AE) (600dpi)</td><td>TSAE</td><td>COPY mode lamp SCAN mode lamp</td><td>AE mode lamp PHOTO mode lamp</td><td>50</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>* No density display on LCD/display.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b>            The operation is similar to simulation 46-01.</p>					Mode	Display item (AR-M200/M201)	LED (AR-M200/M201)	Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)	Default	AE mode (600dpi)	AE	COPY mode lamp	AE mode lamp	50	TEXT mode (600dpi)	TEXT	PRINT mode lamp	TEXT mode lamp	50	PHOTO mode	PHOTO	SCAN mode lamp	PHOTO mode lamp	50	TS mode (TEXT) (600dpi)	TSTXT	PRINT mode lamp SCAN mode lamp	TEXT mode lamp PHOTO mode lamp	50	TS mode (AE) (600dpi)	TSAE	COPY mode lamp SCAN mode lamp	AE mode lamp PHOTO mode lamp	50											
Mode	Display item (AR-M200/M201)	LED (AR-M200/M201)	Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)	Default																																												
AE mode (600dpi)	AE	COPY mode lamp	AE mode lamp	50																																												
TEXT mode (600dpi)	TEXT	PRINT mode lamp	TEXT mode lamp	50																																												
PHOTO mode	PHOTO	SCAN mode lamp	PHOTO mode lamp	50																																												
TS mode (TEXT) (600dpi)	TSTXT	PRINT mode lamp SCAN mode lamp	TEXT mode lamp PHOTO mode lamp	50																																												
TS mode (AE) (600dpi)	TSAE	COPY mode lamp SCAN mode lamp	AE mode lamp PHOTO mode lamp	50																																												
30	AE limit adjustment	<p><b>[Function]</b>            Used to set the limit value in AE and AE (toner save).            Change the setting and press [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key to write the setting into the EEPROM. The machine goes into the sub code entry standby mode.            By pressing [Exposure mode selector] key (or [<math>\blacktriangleleft</math>] [<math>\triangleright</math>] key for the AR-M200/M201), setting is changed. (Setting range: 0 – 31, Default: 0)</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Mode</th><th>Display item (AR-M200/M201)</th><th>Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)</th><th>Remark</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Limit value for AE</td><td>AE</td><td>AE mode lamp</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Limit value for AE (toner save)</td><td>TEXT</td><td>TEXT mode lamp</td><td></td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>&lt;Remark&gt;            When simulation 26-06 (Destination setting) or simulation 46-19 Auto Exposure mode is changed, the setting of this simulation is also changed to the default in connection.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b>            The operation is similar to simulation 46-19.</p>					Mode	Display item (AR-M200/M201)	Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)	Remark	Limit value for AE	AE	AE mode lamp		Limit value for AE (toner save)	TEXT	TEXT mode lamp																															
Mode	Display item (AR-M200/M201)	Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)	Remark																																													
Limit value for AE	AE	AE mode lamp																																														
Limit value for AE (toner save)	TEXT	TEXT mode lamp																																														
31	Image sharpness adjustment	<p><b>[Function]</b>            Used to adjust sharpening/blurring of image in each mode.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Image quality</th><th>Setting No</th><th>Remark</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Blurring</td><td>0</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Standard</td><td>1</td><td>Default</td></tr> <tr> <td>Sharpening</td><td>2</td><td></td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>When this simulation is executed, warm-up and shading are performed and the current set value is displayed. (Default: 1)            Change the set value and press [START] key to make a copy under the set conditions.            To change the mode, press [Exposure mode selector] key (or [<math>\blacktriangleleft</math>] [<math>\triangleright</math>] key for the AR-M200/M201). The code number of the selected mode is displayed on the LCD/display.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Mode</th><th>Display item (AR-M200/M201)</th><th>LED (AR-M200/M201)</th><th>Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)</th><th>Default</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>AE mode</td><td>AE</td><td>COPY mode lamp</td><td>AE mode lamp</td><td>1</td></tr> <tr> <td>TEXT mode</td><td>TEXT</td><td>PRINT mode lamp</td><td>TEXT mode lamp</td><td>1</td></tr> <tr> <td>PHOTO mode</td><td>PHOTO</td><td>SCAN mode lamp</td><td>PHOTO mode lamp</td><td>1</td></tr> <tr> <td>TS mode (TEXT)</td><td>TSTXT</td><td>PRINT mode lamp SCAN mode lamp</td><td>TEXT mode lamp PHOTO mode lamp</td><td>1</td></tr> <tr> <td>TS mode (AE)</td><td>TSAE</td><td>COPY mode lamp SCAN mode lamp</td><td>AE mode lamp PHOTO mode lamp</td><td>1</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>[Operation]</b>            The operation is similar to simulation 46-01.</p>					Image quality	Setting No	Remark	Blurring	0		Standard	1	Default	Sharpening	2		Mode	Display item (AR-M200/M201)	LED (AR-M200/M201)	Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)	Default	AE mode	AE	COPY mode lamp	AE mode lamp	1	TEXT mode	TEXT	PRINT mode lamp	TEXT mode lamp	1	PHOTO mode	PHOTO	SCAN mode lamp	PHOTO mode lamp	1	TS mode (TEXT)	TSTXT	PRINT mode lamp SCAN mode lamp	TEXT mode lamp PHOTO mode lamp	1	TS mode (AE)	TSAE	COPY mode lamp SCAN mode lamp	AE mode lamp PHOTO mode lamp	1
Image quality	Setting No	Remark																																														
Blurring	0																																															
Standard	1	Default																																														
Sharpening	2																																															
Mode	Display item (AR-M200/M201)	LED (AR-M200/M201)	Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)	Default																																												
AE mode	AE	COPY mode lamp	AE mode lamp	1																																												
TEXT mode	TEXT	PRINT mode lamp	TEXT mode lamp	1																																												
PHOTO mode	PHOTO	SCAN mode lamp	PHOTO mode lamp	1																																												
TS mode (TEXT)	TSTXT	PRINT mode lamp SCAN mode lamp	TEXT mode lamp PHOTO mode lamp	1																																												
TS mode (AE)	TSAE	COPY mode lamp SCAN mode lamp	AE mode lamp PHOTO mode lamp	1																																												

Main code	Sub code	Contents	Details of function/operation																																												
46	32	Copier color reproduction setup	<p><b>[Function]</b> Used to set color reproduction in each mode. Colors easy to be copied and colors difficult to be copied can be switched.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <th>Set value</th> <th>Colors easy to be copied</th> <th>Colors difficult to be copied</th> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>Purple, Blue, Red</td> <td>Yellow, Green, Water blue</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Water blue, Green, Blue</td> <td>Purple, Red, Yellow</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>Yellow, Red, Green</td> <td>Blue, Water blue, Purple</td> </tr> </table> <p>* This setting has virtually no effect on black-and-white documents. When this simulation is executed, warm-up and shading are performed and the current set value is displayed. (Default: 0) Press [START] key to make a copy under the set conditions . At that time, color components are changed for used in copying. To change the mode, press [Exposure mode selector] key (or [◀][▶] key for the AR-M200/M201). The code number of the selected mode is displayed on the LCD/display.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <th>Specification component</th> <th>Setting No</th> <th>Remark</th> </tr> <tr> <td>Green</td> <td>0</td> <td>Default</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Red</td> <td>1</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Blue</td> <td>2</td> <td></td> </tr> </table> <table border="1"> <tr> <th>Mode</th> <th>Display item (AR-M200/M201)</th> <th>LED (AR-M200/M201)</th> <th>Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)</th> <th>Default</th> </tr> <tr> <td>AE mode (including TS)</td> <td>AE</td> <td>COPY mode lamp</td> <td>AE mode lamp</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TEXT mode (including TS)</td> <td>TEXT</td> <td>PRINT mode lamp</td> <td>TEXT mode lamp</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>PHOTO mode</td> <td>PHOTO</td> <td>SCAN mode lamp</td> <td>PHOTO mode lamp</td> <td>0</td> </tr> </table> <p><b>[Operation]</b> The operation is similar to simulation 46-01.</p>	Set value	Colors easy to be copied	Colors difficult to be copied	0	Purple, Blue, Red	Yellow, Green, Water blue	1	Water blue, Green, Blue	Purple, Red, Yellow	2	Yellow, Red, Green	Blue, Water blue, Purple	Specification component	Setting No	Remark	Green	0	Default	Red	1		Blue	2		Mode	Display item (AR-M200/M201)	LED (AR-M200/M201)	Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)	Default	AE mode (including TS)	AE	COPY mode lamp	AE mode lamp	0	TEXT mode (including TS)	TEXT	PRINT mode lamp	TEXT mode lamp	0	PHOTO mode	PHOTO	SCAN mode lamp	PHOTO mode lamp	0
Set value	Colors easy to be copied	Colors difficult to be copied																																													
0	Purple, Blue, Red	Yellow, Green, Water blue																																													
1	Water blue, Green, Blue	Purple, Red, Yellow																																													
2	Yellow, Red, Green	Blue, Water blue, Purple																																													
Specification component	Setting No	Remark																																													
Green	0	Default																																													
Red	1																																														
Blue	2																																														
Mode	Display item (AR-M200/M201)	LED (AR-M200/M201)	Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)	Default																																											
AE mode (including TS)	AE	COPY mode lamp	AE mode lamp	0																																											
TEXT mode (including TS)	TEXT	PRINT mode lamp	TEXT mode lamp	0																																											
PHOTO mode	PHOTO	SCAN mode lamp	PHOTO mode lamp	0																																											
39		FAX mode sharpness adjustment (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)	<p><b>[Function]</b> When [START] key is pressed, scan is started with the entered sharpness adjustment value, and the data of the selected mode stored on the FAX side is changed to the entered value.</p> <p>Sharpness adjustment value data table</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <th>Mode</th> <th>Sharpness adjustment value</th> </tr> <tr> <td>1: STD</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>2: FINE</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>3: S-FINE</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>4: FINE/PHOTO</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>5: S-FINE/PHOTO</td> <td></td> </tr> </table> <p>When initializing each data: 1</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Initial display </li> <li>[◀][▶] key or after 2sec Every time when [▶] key is pressed, the second line is changed in the sequence of No. 1 → 2 → 3 → 4 → 5 → 1. When [◀] key is pressed, the sequence is reversed. </li> <li>Select the arrow key 1-5, and the LED of [START] key is lighted.  ("ZZZZ" is the mode selected among STD, FINE, S-FINE, FINE/PHOTO, and S-FINE/PHOTO.) ("X" is the corresponding sharpness adjustment value of the selected mode stored on the FAX side.) * [Clear] key: Returns to "2" display.</li> <li>Enter a one-digit value (0-2) as the sharpness adjustment value with [Numeric] key.  ("Y" is the entered sharpness adjustment value.) * [Clear] key: Returns to "2" display.</li> <li>Scan start (self print) </li> <li>Print start (self print) </li> </ol> <p>After completion of printing, returns to "4" display.</p>	Mode	Sharpness adjustment value	1: STD		2: FINE		3: S-FINE		4: FINE/PHOTO		5: S-FINE/PHOTO																																	
Mode	Sharpness adjustment value																																														
1: STD																																															
2: FINE																																															
3: S-FINE																																															
4: FINE/PHOTO																																															
5: S-FINE/PHOTO																																															

Main code	Sub code	Contents	Details of function/operation																						
48	01	Front/rear (main scanning) direction and scan (sub scanning) direction magnification ratio adjustment	<p><b>[Function]</b> Used to adjust the magnification ratio in the main scan (front/rear) direction and sub scan direction.</p> <p>Enter the adjustment value with [▲] [▼] key (or [Numeric] key for the AR-M200/M201). Press [START] key to save the set value and make a copy. (When the adjustment value is increased by 1, the magnification ratio is increased by 0.1%).</p> <p>The adjustment mode can be changed by pressing [Exposure mode selector] key (or [◀] [▶] key for the AR-M200/M201). (Adjustment range: 1 – 99, Default: 50)</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Mode</th><th>Display item (AR-M200/M201)</th><th>LED (AR-M200/M201)</th><th>Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)</th><th>Default</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Main scan direction magnification ratio</td><td>F-R</td><td>PRINT mode lamp</td><td>TEXT mode lamp</td><td>50</td></tr> <tr> <td>OC mode sub scan direction magnification ratio</td><td>SCAN</td><td>SCAN mode lamp</td><td>PHOTO mode lamp</td><td>50</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>[Operation]</b> The operation is similar to simulation 46-01.</p>					Mode	Display item (AR-M200/M201)	LED (AR-M200/M201)	Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)	Default	Main scan direction magnification ratio	F-R	PRINT mode lamp	TEXT mode lamp	50	OC mode sub scan direction magnification ratio	SCAN	SCAN mode lamp	PHOTO mode lamp	50			
Mode	Display item (AR-M200/M201)	LED (AR-M200/M201)	Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)	Default																					
Main scan direction magnification ratio	F-R	PRINT mode lamp	TEXT mode lamp	50																					
OC mode sub scan direction magnification ratio	SCAN	SCAN mode lamp	PHOTO mode lamp	50																					
	05	SPF/RSPF mode sub scan direction magnification ratio in copying (Only the AR-203E/M200/M201 with the SPF/RSPF installed)	<p><b>[Function]</b> Used to display the current SPF/RSPF mode sub scan direction magnification ratio on the LCD/ display.</p> <p>When [START] key is pressed, the entered data is acquired and saved into the EEPROM, and a copy is made. (When the set value is increased by 1, the magnification ratio is increased by 0.1%.)</p> <p>The adjustment mode can be changed by pressing [Exposure mode selector] key (or [◀] [▶] key for the AR-M200/M201). (Adjustment range: 1 – 99, Default: 50)</p> <p>When adjusting the RSPF, the mode is set to "Duplex → Single," single copies of two sheets are performed.</p> <p>For printing, regardless of the density mode and the density level,</p> <p style="padding-left: 2em;">Density mode = MANUAL</p> <p style="padding-left: 2em;">Density level = 3</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Mode</th><th>Initial value of duplex setting</th><th>Display item (AR-M200/M201)</th><th>LED (AR-M200/M201)</th><th>Display lamp (AR-203E)</th><th>Default</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Sub scan magnification ratio adjustment on the front surface of SPF/RSPF document</td><td>S-S</td><td>SIDE1</td><td>COPY mode lamp</td><td>AE mode lamp</td><td>50</td></tr> <tr> <td>Sub scan magnification ratio adjustment on the back surface of RSPF document (AR-M200/M201)</td><td>D-S</td><td>SIDE2</td><td>PRINT mode lamp</td><td>—</td><td>50</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>* When there is no document in SPF/RSPF, copy is inhibited.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b> The operation is similar to simulation 46-01.</p>					Mode	Initial value of duplex setting	Display item (AR-M200/M201)	LED (AR-M200/M201)	Display lamp (AR-203E)	Default	Sub scan magnification ratio adjustment on the front surface of SPF/RSPF document	S-S	SIDE1	COPY mode lamp	AE mode lamp	50	Sub scan magnification ratio adjustment on the back surface of RSPF document (AR-M200/M201)	D-S	SIDE2	PRINT mode lamp	—	50
Mode	Initial value of duplex setting	Display item (AR-M200/M201)	LED (AR-M200/M201)	Display lamp (AR-203E)	Default																				
Sub scan magnification ratio adjustment on the front surface of SPF/RSPF document	S-S	SIDE1	COPY mode lamp	AE mode lamp	50																				
Sub scan magnification ratio adjustment on the back surface of RSPF document (AR-M200/M201)	D-S	SIDE2	PRINT mode lamp	—	50																				

Main code	Sub code	Contents	Details of function/operation																																																																																				
49	01	Flash ROM program writing mode	<p><b>[Function]</b>  When this simulation is executed, "d" is displayed on the display (or "DOWNLOAD MODE" is displayed on the LCD for the AR-M200/M201), the machine goes into the program writing mode from PC to Flash ROM.  Use the writing tool on the PC and write the program.  During writing, the display shows as follows:  After completion of download, turn OFF/ON the power to reset.</p>																																																																																				
<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th rowspan="2">Status</th><th>AR-M200/M201</th><th colspan="3">AR-203E/5420</th><th rowspan="2">Remark</th></tr> <tr> <th>Display item</th><th>Display</th><th>Pre-heat lamp</th><th>Ready lamp</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Download data receiving</td><td>RECEIVING</td><td>"d" ON</td><td>ON</td><td>OFF</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Loader function transfer</td><td>LOADER COPYING</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>AR-M200/M201</td></tr> <tr> <td>Date delete start</td><td>FLASH ERASE</td><td>"d" ON</td><td>OFF</td><td>ON</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Data write (Boot section)</td><td>BOOT WRITING</td><td>"d" ON</td><td>Blink</td><td>OFF</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Data write (Program section)</td><td>PROGRAM WRITING</td><td>"d" ON</td><td>Blink</td><td>Blink</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Data write (EEPROM)</td><td>E2PROM WRITING</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>AR-M200/M201</td></tr> <tr> <td>Data write (LCD)</td><td>LCD DATE WRITING</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>AR-M200/M201</td></tr> <tr> <td>During SUM CHECK</td><td>FLASH ROM SUM CHECK</td><td>"d" ON</td><td>ON</td><td>ON</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>During BOOT SUM CHECK</td><td>BOOT SUM CHECK</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>AR-M200/M201</td></tr> <tr> <td>During EEPROM SUM CHECK</td><td>EEPROM SUM CHECK</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>AR-M200/M201</td></tr> <tr> <td>Download complete</td><td>DOWNLOAD COMPLETE!</td><td>"OFF" ON</td><td>OFF</td><td>OFF</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Error state</td><td></td><td>"E *" ON</td><td>OFF</td><td>OFF</td><td>AR-203E/5420</td></tr> </tbody> </table>						Status	AR-M200/M201	AR-203E/5420			Remark	Display item	Display	Pre-heat lamp	Ready lamp	Download data receiving	RECEIVING	"d" ON	ON	OFF		Loader function transfer	LOADER COPYING				AR-M200/M201	Date delete start	FLASH ERASE	"d" ON	OFF	ON		Data write (Boot section)	BOOT WRITING	"d" ON	Blink	OFF		Data write (Program section)	PROGRAM WRITING	"d" ON	Blink	Blink		Data write (EEPROM)	E2PROM WRITING				AR-M200/M201	Data write (LCD)	LCD DATE WRITING				AR-M200/M201	During SUM CHECK	FLASH ROM SUM CHECK	"d" ON	ON	ON		During BOOT SUM CHECK	BOOT SUM CHECK				AR-M200/M201	During EEPROM SUM CHECK	EEPROM SUM CHECK				AR-M200/M201	Download complete	DOWNLOAD COMPLETE!	"OFF" ON	OFF	OFF		Error state		"E *" ON	OFF	OFF	AR-203E/5420
Status	AR-M200/M201	AR-203E/5420			Remark																																																																																		
	Display item	Display	Pre-heat lamp	Ready lamp																																																																																			
Download data receiving	RECEIVING	"d" ON	ON	OFF																																																																																			
Loader function transfer	LOADER COPYING				AR-M200/M201																																																																																		
Date delete start	FLASH ERASE	"d" ON	OFF	ON																																																																																			
Data write (Boot section)	BOOT WRITING	"d" ON	Blink	OFF																																																																																			
Data write (Program section)	PROGRAM WRITING	"d" ON	Blink	Blink																																																																																			
Data write (EEPROM)	E2PROM WRITING				AR-M200/M201																																																																																		
Data write (LCD)	LCD DATE WRITING				AR-M200/M201																																																																																		
During SUM CHECK	FLASH ROM SUM CHECK	"d" ON	ON	ON																																																																																			
During BOOT SUM CHECK	BOOT SUM CHECK				AR-M200/M201																																																																																		
During EEPROM SUM CHECK	EEPROM SUM CHECK				AR-M200/M201																																																																																		
Download complete	DOWNLOAD COMPLETE!	"OFF" ON	OFF	OFF																																																																																			
Error state		"E *" ON	OFF	OFF	AR-203E/5420																																																																																		
<p>* " *" in an error display indicates the error position.</p> <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr><td>1</td><td>Data reception error</td><td>6</td><td>Sum check (Loader section)</td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>Loader function transfer</td><td>7</td><td>Sum check (Boot section)</td></tr> <tr><td>3</td><td>FLASH ROM delete</td><td>8</td><td>Sum check (Program section)</td></tr> <tr><td>4</td><td>FLASH ROM writing (Boot section)</td><td>9</td><td>Sum check (EEPROM section)</td></tr> <tr><td>5</td><td>FLASH ROM writing (Program section)</td><td>10</td><td>Data error</td></tr> </tbody> </table>								1	Data reception error	6	Sum check (Loader section)	2	Loader function transfer	7	Sum check (Boot section)	3	FLASH ROM delete	8	Sum check (Program section)	4	FLASH ROM writing (Boot section)	9	Sum check (EEPROM section)	5	FLASH ROM writing (Program section)	10	Data error																																																												
1	Data reception error	6	Sum check (Loader section)																																																																																				
2	Loader function transfer	7	Sum check (Boot section)																																																																																				
3	FLASH ROM delete	8	Sum check (Program section)																																																																																				
4	FLASH ROM writing (Boot section)	9	Sum check (EEPROM section)																																																																																				
5	FLASH ROM writing (Program section)	10	Data error																																																																																				
<p>In case of an error in download, the following message is displayed on the LCD.  (AR-M200/M201)</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Error status</th><th>Display item</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>PC data receiving</td><td>E-01 PC TRANS</td></tr> <tr><td>Loader function transfer</td><td>E-02 LOADER COPY</td></tr> <tr><td>FLASH ROM delete</td><td>E-03 FLASH ERASE</td></tr> <tr><td>Boot section FLASH ROM write</td><td>E-04 BOOT WRITE</td></tr> <tr><td>Program section FLASH ROM write</td><td>E-05 PROGRAM WRITE</td></tr> <tr><td>Loader section SUM CHECK</td><td>E-06 LOADER SUM</td></tr> <tr><td>Boot section SUM CHECK</td><td>E-07 BOOT SUM</td></tr> <tr><td>Program section SUM CHECK</td><td>E-08 PROGRAM SUM</td></tr> <tr><td>E2PROM SUM CHECK</td><td>E-09 E2PROM SUM</td></tr> <tr><td>E2PROM write</td><td>E-10 E2PROM WRITE</td></tr> <tr><td>E2PROM read Verify</td><td>E-11 E2PROM READ</td></tr> <tr><td>E2PROM collating Verify</td><td>E-12 E2PROM COLLATE</td></tr> <tr><td>Boot section lens check</td><td>E-13 BOOT LENGTH</td></tr> <tr><td>Program section lens check</td><td>E-14 PROGRAM LENGTH</td></tr> <tr><td>E2PROM lens check</td><td>E-15 E2PROM LENGTH</td></tr> <tr><td>Total data size check</td><td>E-16 DATE SIZE</td></tr> <tr><td>IMC communication error</td><td>E-17 IMC TRANS</td></tr> <tr><td>IMC FRASH ROM write</td><td>E-18 IMC FLASH WRITE</td></tr> <tr><td>LCD section lens check</td><td>E-19 LCD DATE LENGTH</td></tr> <tr><td>LCD section FLASH ROM write</td><td>E-20 LCD DATE WRITE</td></tr> <tr><td>LCD section SUM CHECK</td><td>E-21 LCD DATE SUM</td></tr> </tbody> </table>								Error status	Display item	PC data receiving	E-01 PC TRANS	Loader function transfer	E-02 LOADER COPY	FLASH ROM delete	E-03 FLASH ERASE	Boot section FLASH ROM write	E-04 BOOT WRITE	Program section FLASH ROM write	E-05 PROGRAM WRITE	Loader section SUM CHECK	E-06 LOADER SUM	Boot section SUM CHECK	E-07 BOOT SUM	Program section SUM CHECK	E-08 PROGRAM SUM	E2PROM SUM CHECK	E-09 E2PROM SUM	E2PROM write	E-10 E2PROM WRITE	E2PROM read Verify	E-11 E2PROM READ	E2PROM collating Verify	E-12 E2PROM COLLATE	Boot section lens check	E-13 BOOT LENGTH	Program section lens check	E-14 PROGRAM LENGTH	E2PROM lens check	E-15 E2PROM LENGTH	Total data size check	E-16 DATE SIZE	IMC communication error	E-17 IMC TRANS	IMC FRASH ROM write	E-18 IMC FLASH WRITE	LCD section lens check	E-19 LCD DATE LENGTH	LCD section FLASH ROM write	E-20 LCD DATE WRITE	LCD section SUM CHECK	E-21 LCD DATE SUM																																				
Error status	Display item																																																																																						
PC data receiving	E-01 PC TRANS																																																																																						
Loader function transfer	E-02 LOADER COPY																																																																																						
FLASH ROM delete	E-03 FLASH ERASE																																																																																						
Boot section FLASH ROM write	E-04 BOOT WRITE																																																																																						
Program section FLASH ROM write	E-05 PROGRAM WRITE																																																																																						
Loader section SUM CHECK	E-06 LOADER SUM																																																																																						
Boot section SUM CHECK	E-07 BOOT SUM																																																																																						
Program section SUM CHECK	E-08 PROGRAM SUM																																																																																						
E2PROM SUM CHECK	E-09 E2PROM SUM																																																																																						
E2PROM write	E-10 E2PROM WRITE																																																																																						
E2PROM read Verify	E-11 E2PROM READ																																																																																						
E2PROM collating Verify	E-12 E2PROM COLLATE																																																																																						
Boot section lens check	E-13 BOOT LENGTH																																																																																						
Program section lens check	E-14 PROGRAM LENGTH																																																																																						
E2PROM lens check	E-15 E2PROM LENGTH																																																																																						
Total data size check	E-16 DATE SIZE																																																																																						
IMC communication error	E-17 IMC TRANS																																																																																						
IMC FRASH ROM write	E-18 IMC FLASH WRITE																																																																																						
LCD section lens check	E-19 LCD DATE LENGTH																																																																																						
LCD section FLASH ROM write	E-20 LCD DATE WRITE																																																																																						
LCD section SUM CHECK	E-21 LCD DATE SUM																																																																																						
<p>To enter the download mode, there is a method to use key operations as well as to use a simulation. With the power OFF, press and hold [Clear All] key + [<math>\blacktriangleleft</math>] key, turn on the power.</p> <p><b>[Operation] (AR-M200/M201)</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Initial display</li> </ol> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">DOWNLOAD MODE</div>																																																																																							

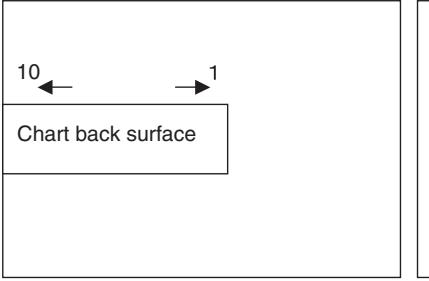
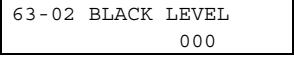
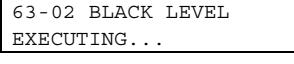
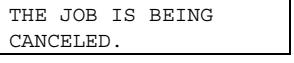
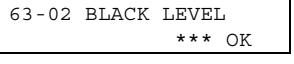
Main code	Sub code	Contents	Details of function/operation																																												
50	01	Lead edge image position	<p><b>[Function]</b>            Used to adjust the copy image position and the lead edge void amount on copy paper. The adjustment is made by adjusting the image scan start position at 100% and the print start position (resist roller ON timing). When this simulation is executed, the current set value is displayed in 2 digits. (Center value: 50)            When [Exposure mode selector] key (or [<math>\blacktriangleleft</math>] [<math>\triangleright</math>] key for the AR-M200/M201) is pressed, the setting mode and the display are changed.            Enter the adjustment value and press [START] key to save the set value and make a copy.            When the adjustment is made by the main cassette paper feed, the adjustment values of all the paper feed ports become the same. (When the set value is increased by 1, shift is made by 0.1mm.)</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Mode</th> <th>Display item (AR-M200/M201)</th> <th>LED (AR-M200/M201)</th> <th>Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)</th> <th>Default</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Print start position (Main cassette paper feed)</td> <td>TRAY1</td> <td>COPY mode lamp Main cassette lamp</td> <td>AE mode lamp Main cassette lamp</td> <td>50</td> </tr> <tr> <td>(*) Print start position (2nd cassette paper feed)</td> <td>TRAY2</td> <td>COPY mode lamp 2nd cassette lamp</td> <td>AE mode lamp 2nd cassette lamp</td> <td>50</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Print start position (Manual paper feed)</td> <td>MFT</td> <td>COPY mode lamp Manual paper feed lamp</td> <td>AE mode lamp Manual feed lamp</td> <td>50</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Image lead edge void amount</td> <td>DEN-A</td> <td>PRINT mode lamp Main cassette lamp</td> <td>TEXT mode lamp Main cassette lamp</td> <td>50</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Image scan start position</td> <td>RRC-A</td> <td>SCAN mode lamp Main cassette lamp</td> <td>PHOTO mode lamp Main cassette lamp</td> <td>50</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Image rear edge void amount (Cassette paper feed)</td> <td>DEN-B</td> <td>COPY mode lamp PRINT mode lamp SCAN mode lamp Main cassette lamp</td> <td>AE mode lamp TEXT mode lamp PHOTO mode lamp Main cassette lamp</td> <td>50</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Image rear edge void amount (Manual paper feed)</td> <td>RRC-B</td> <td>COPY mode lamp PRINT mode lamp Manual paper feed lamp</td> <td>COPY mode lamp TEXT mode lamp Manual feed lamp</td> <td>50</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>(*): Support for the installation models. For non-installation models, skip.            * When printing with the manual paper feed tray, use paper of the letter size.            * When paper is discharged, the shifter is operated.</p> <p><b>[Adjustment procedure]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Set the print start position (AE lamp ON) (A), the lead edge void amount (TEXT lamp ON) (B), and the scan start position (PHOTO lamp ON) (C) to 0, and make a copy of a scale at 100%. (AR-203E/5420)            For the AR-M200/M201, the following LED's are lighted:<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>AE lamp/COPY mode lamp: (A)</li> <li>TEXT lamp/PRINT mode lamp: (B)</li> <li>PHOTO lamp/SCAN mode lamp: (C)</li> </ul> </li> <li>Measure the image loss (Rmm) of the scale.            Set C = 10 x R (mm). (Example: Set to 40.)            When the value of C is increased by 10, the image loss is decreased by 1mm. (Default: 50)</li> <li>Measure the distance (Hmm) from the paper lead edge to the image print start position.            Set A = 10 x H (mm). (Example: Set to 50.)            When the value of A is increased by 10, the image lead edge is moved to the paper lead edge by 1mm. (Default: 50).</li> <li>Set the lead edge void amount to B = 50 (2.5mm). (Default: 50)            When the value of B is increased by 10, the void is extended by about 0.1mm. (For 25 or less, however, the void amount is regarded as 0.)            * The SPF/RSPF adjustment is made by adjusting the SPF/RSPF image scan start position after OC adjustment.</li> </ol> <p><b>[Operation]</b>            The operation is similar to simulation 46-01.</p>	Mode	Display item (AR-M200/M201)	LED (AR-M200/M201)	Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)	Default	Print start position (Main cassette paper feed)	TRAY1	COPY mode lamp Main cassette lamp	AE mode lamp Main cassette lamp	50	(*) Print start position (2nd cassette paper feed)	TRAY2	COPY mode lamp 2nd cassette lamp	AE mode lamp 2nd cassette lamp	50	Print start position (Manual paper feed)	MFT	COPY mode lamp Manual paper feed lamp	AE mode lamp Manual feed lamp	50	Image lead edge void amount	DEN-A	PRINT mode lamp Main cassette lamp	TEXT mode lamp Main cassette lamp	50	Image scan start position	RRC-A	SCAN mode lamp Main cassette lamp	PHOTO mode lamp Main cassette lamp	50	Image rear edge void amount (Cassette paper feed)	DEN-B	COPY mode lamp PRINT mode lamp SCAN mode lamp Main cassette lamp	AE mode lamp TEXT mode lamp PHOTO mode lamp Main cassette lamp	50	Image rear edge void amount (Manual paper feed)	RRC-B	COPY mode lamp PRINT mode lamp Manual paper feed lamp	COPY mode lamp TEXT mode lamp Manual feed lamp	50	<p>(Example)</p>  <p>Distance from the paper lead edge to the image lead edge, H = 5mm</p> <p>Image loss, R = 4mm</p>			
Mode	Display item (AR-M200/M201)	LED (AR-M200/M201)	Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)	Default																																											
Print start position (Main cassette paper feed)	TRAY1	COPY mode lamp Main cassette lamp	AE mode lamp Main cassette lamp	50																																											
(*) Print start position (2nd cassette paper feed)	TRAY2	COPY mode lamp 2nd cassette lamp	AE mode lamp 2nd cassette lamp	50																																											
Print start position (Manual paper feed)	MFT	COPY mode lamp Manual paper feed lamp	AE mode lamp Manual feed lamp	50																																											
Image lead edge void amount	DEN-A	PRINT mode lamp Main cassette lamp	TEXT mode lamp Main cassette lamp	50																																											
Image scan start position	RRC-A	SCAN mode lamp Main cassette lamp	PHOTO mode lamp Main cassette lamp	50																																											
Image rear edge void amount (Cassette paper feed)	DEN-B	COPY mode lamp PRINT mode lamp SCAN mode lamp Main cassette lamp	AE mode lamp TEXT mode lamp PHOTO mode lamp Main cassette lamp	50																																											
Image rear edge void amount (Manual paper feed)	RRC-B	COPY mode lamp PRINT mode lamp Manual paper feed lamp	COPY mode lamp TEXT mode lamp Manual feed lamp	50																																											

Main code	Sub code	Contents	Details of function/operation																														
50	06	Copy lead edge position adjustment (SPF/RSPF) (Only the AR-203E/M200/M201 with the SPF/RSPF installed)	<p><b>[Function]</b> Used to adjust the SPF/RSPF copy lead edge. When the adjustment value of the document scan position adjustment is increased by 1, the scan start timing is advanced by 0.1mm. The print result is shifted to the opposite direction of the scan start position. The adjustment mode can be changed by pressing [Exposure mode selector] key (or [<math>\leftarrow</math>] [<math>\rightarrow</math>] key for the AR-M200/M201). (Adjustment range: 1 – 99, Default: 50) When scanning a back surface of document, the mode must be changed to operate the SPF/RSPF by pressing [2-SIDED SCAN]/[2-SIDED COPY] key.</p>																														
			<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Mode</th><th>Initial value of duplex setting</th><th>Display item (AR-M200/M201)</th><th>LED (AR-M200/M201)</th><th>Display lamp (AR-203E)</th><th>Default</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Front surface document scan position adjustment</td><td>S-S</td><td>SIDE1</td><td>COPY mode lamp</td><td>AE mode lamp</td><td>50</td></tr> <tr> <td>Back surface document scan position adjustment (AR-M200/M201)</td><td>D-S</td><td>SIDE2</td><td>PRINT mode lamp</td><td>—</td><td>50</td></tr> <tr> <td>Rear edge void adjustment (RSPF)</td><td>S-S</td><td>END</td><td>SCAN mode lamp</td><td>PHOTO mode lamp</td><td>50</td></tr> </tbody> </table>						Mode	Initial value of duplex setting	Display item (AR-M200/M201)	LED (AR-M200/M201)	Display lamp (AR-203E)	Default	Front surface document scan position adjustment	S-S	SIDE1	COPY mode lamp	AE mode lamp	50	Back surface document scan position adjustment (AR-M200/M201)	D-S	SIDE2	PRINT mode lamp	—	50	Rear edge void adjustment (RSPF)	S-S	END	SCAN mode lamp	PHOTO mode lamp	50	
Mode	Initial value of duplex setting	Display item (AR-M200/M201)	LED (AR-M200/M201)	Display lamp (AR-203E)	Default																												
Front surface document scan position adjustment	S-S	SIDE1	COPY mode lamp	AE mode lamp	50																												
Back surface document scan position adjustment (AR-M200/M201)	D-S	SIDE2	PRINT mode lamp	—	50																												
Rear edge void adjustment (RSPF)	S-S	END	SCAN mode lamp	PHOTO mode lamp	50																												
			<p>* When there is no document in the SPF/RSPF, copy is inhibited. * When paper is discharged, the shifter is operated.</p>																														
			<p><b>[Operation]</b> The operation is similar to simulation 46-01.</p>																														
10	Center offset adjustment		<p><b>[Function]</b> Used to adjust the center offset position of copy images on copy paper and that in scanning document. When this simulation is executed, the current set value is displayed. Enter the adjustment value and press [START] key to save the setting and make a copy. (When the set value is changed by 1, the center is shifted by 0.1mm.) When the adjustment value is increased, the center is shifted to right. When decreased, the center is shifted to left. The modes can be selected by pressing [Exposure mode selector] key (or [<math>\leftarrow</math>] [<math>\rightarrow</math>] key for the AR-M200/M201). When the set value is changed largely, the area outside the shading area may be scanned to cause black streaks on the edges. When the SPF/RSPF is used, select the mode for use of the SPF/RSPF by [2-SIDED SCAN]/[2-SIDED COPY] key.</p>																														
			<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Mode</th><th>Display item (AR-M200/M201)</th><th>LED (AR-M200/M201)</th><th>Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)</th><th>Default</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Print center offset (Main cassette paper feed)</td><td>TRAY1</td><td>COPY mode lamp Main cassette lamp</td><td>AE mode lamp Main cassette lamp</td><td>50</td></tr> <tr> <td>(*) Print center offset (2nd cassette paper feed)</td><td>TRAY2</td><td>COPY mode lamp 2nd cassette lamp</td><td>AE mode lamp 2nd cassette lamp</td><td>50</td></tr> <tr> <td>Print center offset (Manual paper feed)</td><td>MFT</td><td>COPY mode lamp Manual paper feed lamp</td><td>AE mode lamp Manual paper feed lamp</td><td>50</td></tr> <tr> <td>(**) 2nd print center offset (Main cassette paper feed)</td><td>SIDE2</td><td>PRINT mode lamp Main cassette lamp</td><td>TEXT mode lamp Main cassette lamp</td><td>50</td></tr> </tbody> </table>						Mode	Display item (AR-M200/M201)	LED (AR-M200/M201)	Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)	Default	Print center offset (Main cassette paper feed)	TRAY1	COPY mode lamp Main cassette lamp	AE mode lamp Main cassette lamp	50	(*) Print center offset (2nd cassette paper feed)	TRAY2	COPY mode lamp 2nd cassette lamp	AE mode lamp 2nd cassette lamp	50	Print center offset (Manual paper feed)	MFT	COPY mode lamp Manual paper feed lamp	AE mode lamp Manual paper feed lamp	50	(**) 2nd print center offset (Main cassette paper feed)	SIDE2	PRINT mode lamp Main cassette lamp	TEXT mode lamp Main cassette lamp	50
Mode	Display item (AR-M200/M201)	LED (AR-M200/M201)	Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)	Default																													
Print center offset (Main cassette paper feed)	TRAY1	COPY mode lamp Main cassette lamp	AE mode lamp Main cassette lamp	50																													
(*) Print center offset (2nd cassette paper feed)	TRAY2	COPY mode lamp 2nd cassette lamp	AE mode lamp 2nd cassette lamp	50																													
Print center offset (Manual paper feed)	MFT	COPY mode lamp Manual paper feed lamp	AE mode lamp Manual paper feed lamp	50																													
(**) 2nd print center offset (Main cassette paper feed)	SIDE2	PRINT mode lamp Main cassette lamp	TEXT mode lamp Main cassette lamp	50																													
			<p>(*): Support for the installation models. For non-installation models, skip. (**): For Simplex models, skip. * When printing with the manual paper feed tray, use paper of the letter size. * In the 2nd print center offset adjustment, print is made forcibly as 1to2/Short Edge from OC regardless of duplex setting. * When paper is discharged, the shifter is operated.</p>																														
			<p><b>[Operation]</b> The operation is similar to simulation 46-01.</p>																														

Main code	Sub code	Contents	Details of function/operation																													
50	12	Document off-center adjustment	<p><b>[Function]</b> Used to adjust document scan off-center adjustment. The adjustment modes can be selected by pressing [Exposure mode selector] key (or [<math>\blacktriangleleft</math>] [<math>\triangleright</math>] key for the AR-M200/M201). (Adjustment range: 1 – 99, Default: 50) When the adjustment value is increased, the print result is shifted to left.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Mode</th><th>Initial value of duplex setting</th><th>Display item (AR-M200/M201)</th><th>LED (AR-M200/M201)</th><th>Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)</th><th>Default</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Platen document scan</td><td>S-S</td><td>OC</td><td>COPY mode lamp</td><td>AE mode lamp</td><td>50</td></tr> <tr> <td>SPF document front scan</td><td>S-S</td><td>SPF</td><td>PRINT mode lamp</td><td>TEXT mode lamp</td><td>50</td></tr> <tr> <td>RSPF document back scan (AR-M200/M201)</td><td>D-S</td><td>RSPF</td><td>SCAN mode lamp</td><td>—</td><td>50</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>* When paper is discharged, the shifter is operated.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b> The operation is similar to simulation 46-01.</p>						Mode	Initial value of duplex setting	Display item (AR-M200/M201)	LED (AR-M200/M201)	Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)	Default	Platen document scan	S-S	OC	COPY mode lamp	AE mode lamp	50	SPF document front scan	S-S	SPF	PRINT mode lamp	TEXT mode lamp	50	RSPF document back scan (AR-M200/M201)	D-S	RSPF	SCAN mode lamp	—	50
Mode	Initial value of duplex setting	Display item (AR-M200/M201)	LED (AR-M200/M201)	Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)	Default																											
Platen document scan	S-S	OC	COPY mode lamp	AE mode lamp	50																											
SPF document front scan	S-S	SPF	PRINT mode lamp	TEXT mode lamp	50																											
RSPF document back scan (AR-M200/M201)	D-S	RSPF	SCAN mode lamp	—	50																											
18	Memory reverse position adjustment in duplex copy (Only the AR-M201, or the AR-M200 with the RSPF installed)	<p><b>[Function]</b> When this simulation is executed, the current set correction value is displayed. Enter the correction value and press [START] key to save the entered correction value. (Correction value range; 1 – 99, Default: 50)</p> <p>For S-D mode front surface print and print of even paged in D-S mode, reverse memory copy operation is performed from the rear edge of documents.</p> <p>When, therefore, the print position adjustment of output images is required, adjust as follows: In the reverse memory coping, when the document scan is made in the arrow direction, the output image is printed from the rear edge of scan image.</p> <p>When, therefore, the print lead edge is shifted, set the reference chart so that the reference position is on the rear edge, and use this simulation to adjust the set value so that the print lead edge is matched.</p> <p>Since printing is made from the image data most lately stored in memory to the lead edge data from the print start position, the image lead edge adjustment is made by changing the end data position stored in memory by the set value of this simulation.</p> <p>Since it is performed by changing the scan end position, the image position adjustment is made by changing the scan end position and the end data stored in memory.</p> <p>The adjustment modes can be selected by pressing [<math>\blacktriangleleft</math>] [<math>\triangleright</math>] key.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Mode</th><th>Initial value of duplex setting</th><th>Display item</th><th>LED</th><th>Default</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>OC memory reverse output position (AR-M201 only)</td><td>S-D</td><td>OC</td><td>COPY mode lamp</td><td>50</td></tr> <tr> <td>SPF/RSPF memory reverse output position</td><td>D-S</td><td>SPF</td><td>PRINT mode lamp</td><td>50</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Document transport direction</p> <p>Scan lead edge</p> <p>Scan end position (Default: Scan cut by void (1))</p> <p>Scan direction Scan rear edge</p> <p>Print lead edge</p> <p>Lead edge void (1) Print start position</p> <p>Rear edge void Print rear edge</p>						Mode	Initial value of duplex setting	Display item	LED	Default	OC memory reverse output position (AR-M201 only)	S-D	OC	COPY mode lamp	50	SPF/RSPF memory reverse output position	D-S	SPF	PRINT mode lamp	50										
Mode	Initial value of duplex setting	Display item	LED	Default																												
OC memory reverse output position (AR-M201 only)	S-D	OC	COPY mode lamp	50																												
SPF/RSPF memory reverse output position	D-S	SPF	PRINT mode lamp	50																												
		<p>* The initial value of duplex setting is "1to2/Long Edge" for the duplex model, or "2to1" for the simplex model.</p> <p>* When paper is discharged, the shifter is operated.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b> The operation is similar to simulation 46-01.</p>																														

Main code	Sub code	Contents	Details of function/operation																																						
50	19	Duplex copy rear edge void adjustment (AR-M201 only)	<p><b>[Function]</b> Used to adjust the rear edge void amount in duplex copy. When this simulation is executed, the current set value is displayed in 2 digits. (Center value: 50.) The adjustment modes can be selected by pressing [◀] [▶] key. (Adjustment range; 1 – 99) Enter the adjustment value and press [START] key to save the set value and make a copy. (The paper information is cleared for every copy.) When the set value is increased by 1, the void amount is increased by about 0.1mm.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Mode</th><th>Display item</th><th>LED</th><th>Default</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Paper rear edge void amount</td><td>DEN-B</td><td>PRINT mode lamp</td><td>50</td></tr> <tr> <td>Print start position (Duplex back surface)</td><td>RRC-D</td><td>SCAN mode lamp</td><td>50</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>* The initial value for duplex setting is "1to2/Short Edge" for the OC setting, or "2to2" for the RSPF setting. * When paper is discharged, the shifter is operated.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b> The operation is similar to simulation 46-01.</p>				Mode	Display item	LED	Default	Paper rear edge void amount	DEN-B	PRINT mode lamp	50	Print start position (Duplex back surface)	RRC-D	SCAN mode lamp	50																							
Mode	Display item	LED	Default																																						
Paper rear edge void amount	DEN-B	PRINT mode lamp	50																																						
Print start position (Duplex back surface)	RRC-D	SCAN mode lamp	50																																						
51	02	Resist quantity adjustment	<p><b>[Function]</b> Used to adjust the contact pressure of the main unit resist roller and the SPF/RSPF resist roller onto paper. When this simulation is executed, the current set value is displayed. The adjustment modes can be selected by pressing [Exposure mode selector] key (or [◀] [▶] key for the AR-M200/M201). Enter the adjustment value with [▲] [▼] key (or [Numeric] key for the AR-M200/M201) and press [START] key to save the set value and make a copy.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Mode</th><th>Display item (AR-M200/M201)</th><th>LED (AR-M200/M201)</th><th>Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)</th><th>Default</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Main cassette paper feed</td><td>TRAY1</td><td>COPY mode lamp Main cassette lamp</td><td>AE mode lamp Main cassette lamp</td><td>50</td></tr> <tr> <td>(*) 2nd cassette paper feed</td><td>TRAY2</td><td>COPY mode lamp 2nd cassette lamp</td><td>AE mode lamp 2nd cassette lamp</td><td>50</td></tr> <tr> <td>Manual paper feed</td><td>MFT</td><td>COPY mode lamp Manual paper feed lamp</td><td>AE mode lamp Manual paper feed lamp</td><td>50</td></tr> <tr> <td>RSPF document paper feed (Front surface) (AR-M200/M201)</td><td>SIDE1</td><td>COPY mode lamp PRINT mode lamp SCAN mode lamp Main cassette lamp</td><td>—</td><td>50</td></tr> <tr> <td>RSPF document paper feed (Back surface) (AR-M200/M201)</td><td>SIDE2</td><td>COPY mode lamp PRINT mode lamp Main cassette lamp</td><td>—</td><td>50</td></tr> <tr> <td>(*) Duplex back surface (AR-M201 only)</td><td>DUP-2</td><td>PRINT mode lamp SCAN mode lamp Main cassette lamp</td><td>TEXT mode lamp PHOTO mode lamp Main cassette lamp</td><td>50</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>(*): Support for the installation models. For non-installation models, skip.</p> <p><b>[Operation] (AR-M200/M201)</b> The operation is similar to simulation 46-01.</p>				Mode	Display item (AR-M200/M201)	LED (AR-M200/M201)	Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)	Default	Main cassette paper feed	TRAY1	COPY mode lamp Main cassette lamp	AE mode lamp Main cassette lamp	50	(*) 2nd cassette paper feed	TRAY2	COPY mode lamp 2nd cassette lamp	AE mode lamp 2nd cassette lamp	50	Manual paper feed	MFT	COPY mode lamp Manual paper feed lamp	AE mode lamp Manual paper feed lamp	50	RSPF document paper feed (Front surface) (AR-M200/M201)	SIDE1	COPY mode lamp PRINT mode lamp SCAN mode lamp Main cassette lamp	—	50	RSPF document paper feed (Back surface) (AR-M200/M201)	SIDE2	COPY mode lamp PRINT mode lamp Main cassette lamp	—	50	(*) Duplex back surface (AR-M201 only)	DUP-2	PRINT mode lamp SCAN mode lamp Main cassette lamp	TEXT mode lamp PHOTO mode lamp Main cassette lamp	50
Mode	Display item (AR-M200/M201)	LED (AR-M200/M201)	Display lamp (AR-203E/5420)	Default																																					
Main cassette paper feed	TRAY1	COPY mode lamp Main cassette lamp	AE mode lamp Main cassette lamp	50																																					
(*) 2nd cassette paper feed	TRAY2	COPY mode lamp 2nd cassette lamp	AE mode lamp 2nd cassette lamp	50																																					
Manual paper feed	MFT	COPY mode lamp Manual paper feed lamp	AE mode lamp Manual paper feed lamp	50																																					
RSPF document paper feed (Front surface) (AR-M200/M201)	SIDE1	COPY mode lamp PRINT mode lamp SCAN mode lamp Main cassette lamp	—	50																																					
RSPF document paper feed (Back surface) (AR-M200/M201)	SIDE2	COPY mode lamp PRINT mode lamp Main cassette lamp	—	50																																					
(*) Duplex back surface (AR-M201 only)	DUP-2	PRINT mode lamp SCAN mode lamp Main cassette lamp	TEXT mode lamp PHOTO mode lamp Main cassette lamp	50																																					

Main code	Sub code	Contents	Details of function/operation																			
53	08	SPF/RSPF scan position automatic adjustment (Only the AR-203E/M200/M201 with the SPF/RSPF installed)	<p><b>[Function]</b> Place a A4 paper (white chart) so that it covers the SPF/RSPF scan glass and the OC glass together, and close the SPF/RSPF.</p> <p>When this simulation is executed, the current adjustment value is displayed as the initial display.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* Default is 1. Adjustment range is 1 – 99. Adjustment unit 1 = about 0.127mm</li> <li>* If the values are kept as the default values, SPF/RSPF scan is not performed properly. The front area of the proper scan position may be scanned.</li> </ul> <p>In case of AUTO, press [START] key, and the mirror unit scans from the home position to the SPF/RSPF scan position with the adjustment value displayed. The SPF/RSPF glass cover edge position is calculated from the difference between the SPF/RSPF glass cover edge and the OC side document glass CCD output level. If the adjustment is normal, the adjusted value is displayed. If abnormal, the error LED lights up with the current set value displayed.</p> <p>During the error LED is lighted, when [START] key is pressed again, execution is performed again.</p>																			
			<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Mode</th> <th>Display item (AR-M200/M201)</th> <th>LED (AR-M200/M201)</th> <th>Display lamp (AR-203E)</th> <th>Default</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>SPF/RSPF scan position auto adjustment</td> <td>AUTO</td> <td>COPY mode lamp</td> <td>AE mode lamp</td> <td>1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SPF/RSPF scan position manual adjustment</td> <td>MANU</td> <td>PRINT mode lamp</td> <td>TEXT mode lamp</td> <td>1</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>					Mode	Display item (AR-M200/M201)	LED (AR-M200/M201)	Display lamp (AR-203E)	Default	SPF/RSPF scan position auto adjustment	AUTO	COPY mode lamp	AE mode lamp	1	SPF/RSPF scan position manual adjustment	MANU	PRINT mode lamp	TEXT mode lamp	1
Mode	Display item (AR-M200/M201)	LED (AR-M200/M201)	Display lamp (AR-203E)	Default																		
SPF/RSPF scan position auto adjustment	AUTO	COPY mode lamp	AE mode lamp	1																		
SPF/RSPF scan position manual adjustment	MANU	PRINT mode lamp	TEXT mode lamp	1																		
			<p><b>[Operation]</b> The operation is similar to simulation 46-01. (In MANUAL)</p> <p>OK/ERR display in AUTO</p> <p>&lt;When OK&gt;    &lt;When ERR&gt;</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>53-08 SPF AUTO AUTO 100% ** OK</td> <td>53-08 SPF AUTO AUTO 100% ** ERR</td> </tr> </table>					53-08 SPF AUTO AUTO 100% ** OK	53-08 SPF AUTO AUTO 100% ** ERR													
53-08 SPF AUTO AUTO 100% ** OK	53-08 SPF AUTO AUTO 100% ** ERR																					
61	03	Polygon motor check (HSYNC output check)	<p><b>[Function]</b> When [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key is pressed, HSYNC is performed and the polygon motor is rotated for 30sec.</p> <p>At that time, the ZOOM lamp (or the COPY mode lamp for the AR-M200/M201) is lighted for 100msec every time when HSYNC is detected.</p> <p><b>[Operation] (AR-M200/M201)</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Initial display</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>61-03 LSU CHK EXECUTING...</td> </tr> </table>					61-03 LSU CHK EXECUTING...														
61-03 LSU CHK EXECUTING...																						
63	01	Shading check	<p><b>[Function]</b> Used to display the detection level of white plate for shading.</p> <p>When [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key is pressed, the mirror base unit moves to the white plate for shading and the copy lamp is lighted.</p> <p>When the light quantity is stabilized, revision is made for every second, and the level of one pixel at the center of CCD which is not corrected is detected and the value is displayed in decimal values on the LCD/display. (3 digits)</p> <p><b>[Operation] (AR-M200/M201)</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Initial display</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>63-01 SHADING CHK EXECUTING... 000</td> </tr> </table>					63-01 SHADING CHK EXECUTING... 000														
63-01 SHADING CHK EXECUTING... 000																						

Main code	Sub code	Contents	Details of function/operation
63	02	Black level automatic correction	<p><b>[Function]</b> Used to acquire the black level target value used for the black level adjustment of white balance. When this simulation is executed, the current correction value is displayed in 3 digits of 12bit hexadecimal number. Place the gray gradation chart (UKOG-0162FCZZ) used as the correction document so that the density 10 (black side) comes on the left side and that the chart is upside down at the center of the plate left center.</p>  <p>When [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key is pressed, the mirror base unit scans the chart and calculates the correction value. After completion of correction, the corrected value is displayed on the LCD/display.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* Default: 0</li> <li>* If the value is set to the default, operation is made with 0x60.</li> </ul> <p><b>[Operation] (AR-M200/M201)</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Initial display </li> <li>2) [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key: Correction start </li> <li>3) After execution </li> <li>3) In case of an error </li> </ol>
12		Light quantity stabilization wait time setting	<p><b>[Function]</b> Used to set the wait time before entering the light quantity level stable evaluation process in the light quantity stable process of white balance. (Note: The light quantity stable level in the previous light quantity stable state is used as the target. When the light quantity level reaches the target during the wait time, the set time of this simulation is ignored and the operation enters the stable evaluation process.) When this simulation is executed, the currently set value is displayed. Enter the adjustment value with [▲] [▼] key (or [Numeric] key for the AR-M200/M201) and press [START] key. The entered value is stored and the machine goes into the sub code entry standby mode. Setting range: 0 – 99 (Complying with the light quantity stable wait time of 0 – 99sec.) Default: 15 (15sec)</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b> The operation is similar to simulation 09-04.</p>
13		Light quantity stabilization band setting	<p><b>[Function]</b> When the difference between the maximum and the minimum values of the light quantity level sampled for 3.2sec in the cycle of 100msec in the white balance light quantity stable process is within the range set with this simulation, it is judged as the light quantity is stable. (Note: The magnification ratio of the AFE gain setting is automatically reflected on the stable width.) When this simulation is executed, the currently set value is displayed. Enter the adjustment value with [▲] [▼] key (or [Numeric] key for the AR-M200/M201) and press [START] key. The entered value is stored and the machine goes into the sub code entry standby mode. Setting range: 1 – 99 (Light quantity stable width: Complying with 1 – 99 in 4095 gradations.) Default: 16</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b> The operation is similar to simulation 09-04.</p>

Main code	Sub code	Contents	Details of function/operation															
64	01	Self print (1by2 mode)	<p><b>[Function]</b>  The status of the optical section is ignored and printing of one page is made. Also when the print command is received from the host, printing is made.  When this simulation is executed, warm-up is performed and the ready lamp is lighted. (Since, however, the scanner is disabled, initializing is not made.)  Enter the code number and press [OK]/[ENTER]/[START] key to start paper feed from the selected cassette and print in the selected pattern.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Code number</th> <th>Pattern</th> <th>Display item</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1by2</td> <td>1 BY 2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Grid pattern</td> <td>CHECK</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>White paper</td> <td>WHITE</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>Black background</td> <td>BLACK</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>* For 4 – 99, flip.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b>  The operation is similar to simulation 26-02.</p>	Code number	Pattern	Display item	0	1by2	1 BY 2	1	Grid pattern	CHECK	2	White paper	WHITE	3	Black background	BLACK
Code number	Pattern	Display item																
0	1by2	1 BY 2																
1	Grid pattern	CHECK																
2	White paper	WHITE																
3	Black background	BLACK																
66	01	FAX soft SW setting (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)	<p><b>[Function]</b>  Use to check the FAX soft SW setting.  Every time when the key is pressed, the bit on the first line is switched 0 and 1.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Initial display  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">ENTER FAX SOFT SW. # (3 DIGITS) SW.</div> <p>* [Clear] key: FAX control is terminated.</p> </li> <li>Enter a 3-digit value of soft SW No. (To enter the fourth digit, shift to the left.), and the press [OK]/[ENTER] key.  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">No. ### xxxxxxxx CHANGE? 1: YES 2: NO</div> <p>"xxxxxxxx" is the set content.</p> <p>* Select 2: Returns to the soft SW No. entry display.</p> </li> <li>Select 1  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">No. ### xxxxxxxx USE # KEY 12345678</div> <p>"xxxxxxxx" is the set content.</p> <p>* Select 2: Returns to the soft SW No. entry display.</p> </li> </ol> <p>5) Select 1  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">STORED</div> <p>After 2sec, returns to "1) Initial display".</p> </p>															
	02	FAX soft SW initializing (excluding the adjustment values) (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)	<p><b>[Function]</b>  Use to initializing FAX soft SW.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Initial display  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">INITIALIZED</div> <p>After 2sec, FAX control is terminated.</p> </li> </ol>															

Main code	Sub code	Contents	Details of function/operation																																																							
66	03	FAX PWB memory check (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)	<p><b>[Function]</b> Use to check the FAX PWB memory.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Initial display  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content;">SELECT CHECK MEMORY PRESS ←, →</div> </li> <li>[◀][▶] key or after 2sec            Every time when [▶] key is pressed, the second line is changed in the sequence of No. 1  <math>\rightarrow 2 \rightarrow 3 \rightarrow 1</math>.            When [◀] key is pressed, the sequence is reversed.  <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: 15%;">SELECT MEMORY (1-3) 1 : DRAM</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: 15%;">SELECT MEMORY (1-3) 2 : SRAM</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: 15%;">SELECT MEMORY (1-3) 3 : FLASH</div> </div> </li> <li>[OK]/[ENTER] key  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content;">CHECKING MEMORY</div> </li> <li>After completion of check           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the result is OK               <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: 15%;">MEMORY CHECK RESULT OK</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: 15%;">MEMORY CHECK RESULT XXXXXXX A-BUS NG</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: 15%;">MEMORY CHECK RESULT XXXXXXX D-BUS NG</div> </div></li></ul> </li> <li>In case of address bus check error</li> <li>In case of data bus check error</li> <li>In case of sum check error               <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: 15%;">MEMORY CHECK RESULT XXXXXXX SUM NG</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: 15%;">MEMORY CHECK RESULT XXXXXXX DATA NG</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: 15%;">MEMORY CHECK RESULT XXXXXXX ERASE NG</div> </div> </li> <li>In case of data check error</li> <li>In case of erase check error</li> </ol> <p>* [Clear] key: FAX control is terminated.</p>																																																							
04		Signal send mode (Max. value) (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)	<p><b>[Function]</b> Use to set the signal send mode (Max. value). Facsimile simulation design specifications.</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr><td style="width: 25%;">1</td><td style="width: 25%;">NO SIGNAL</td><td style="width: 25%;">13</td><td style="width: 25%;">7200bps(V34)</td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>33600bps(V34)</td><td>14</td><td>4800bps(V34)</td></tr> <tr><td>3</td><td>31200bps(V34)</td><td>15</td><td>2400bps(V34)</td></tr> <tr><td>4</td><td>28800bps(V34)</td><td>16</td><td>14400bps(V33)</td></tr> <tr><td>5</td><td>26400bps(V34)</td><td>17</td><td>12000bps(V33)</td></tr> <tr><td>6</td><td>24000bps(V34)</td><td>18</td><td>14400bps(V17)</td></tr> <tr><td>7</td><td>21600bps(V34)</td><td>19</td><td>12000bps(V17)</td></tr> <tr><td>8</td><td>19200bps(V34)</td><td>20</td><td>9600bps(V17)</td></tr> <tr><td>9</td><td>16800bps(V34)</td><td>21</td><td>7200bps(V17)</td></tr> <tr><td>10</td><td>14400bps(V34)</td><td>22</td><td>9600bps(V29)</td></tr> <tr><td>11</td><td>12000bps(V34)</td><td>23</td><td>7200bps(V29)</td></tr> <tr><td>12</td><td>9600bps(V34)</td><td>24</td><td>4800bps(V27ter)</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> </table> <p><b>[Operation]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Initial display  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content;">SELECT OUTPUT SIGNAL (2 DIGITS) NO.</div> </li> <li>2-digit (1-35) with [Numeric] key / [◀][▶] key / 2sec after            Pressing [▶] key or [◀] key reverses the sequence.  <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: 15%;">No. (1-35) 1 : NO SIGNAL</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: 15%;">.....</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: 15%;">No. (1-35) 35 : LINE ON HOOK</div> </div> </li> <li>[OK]/[ENTER] key: Send after setting  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content;">OUTPUTTING SIGNAL MAX PRESS CLEAR TO STOP</div> </li> </ol> <p>* [Clear] key: Returns to "1) Initial display".</p>				1	NO SIGNAL	13	7200bps(V34)	2	33600bps(V34)	14	4800bps(V34)	3	31200bps(V34)	15	2400bps(V34)	4	28800bps(V34)	16	14400bps(V33)	5	26400bps(V34)	17	12000bps(V33)	6	24000bps(V34)	18	14400bps(V17)	7	21600bps(V34)	19	12000bps(V17)	8	19200bps(V34)	20	9600bps(V17)	9	16800bps(V34)	21	7200bps(V17)	10	14400bps(V34)	22	9600bps(V29)	11	12000bps(V34)	23	7200bps(V29)	12	9600bps(V34)	24	4800bps(V27ter)				
1	NO SIGNAL	13	7200bps(V34)																																																							
2	33600bps(V34)	14	4800bps(V34)																																																							
3	31200bps(V34)	15	2400bps(V34)																																																							
4	28800bps(V34)	16	14400bps(V33)																																																							
5	26400bps(V34)	17	12000bps(V33)																																																							
6	24000bps(V34)	18	14400bps(V17)																																																							
7	21600bps(V34)	19	12000bps(V17)																																																							
8	19200bps(V34)	20	9600bps(V17)																																																							
9	16800bps(V34)	21	7200bps(V17)																																																							
10	14400bps(V34)	22	9600bps(V29)																																																							
11	12000bps(V34)	23	7200bps(V29)																																																							
12	9600bps(V34)	24	4800bps(V27ter)																																																							

Main code	Sub code	Contents	Details of function/operation																																																																												
66	05	Signal send mode (Soft SW set value) (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)	<p><b>[Function]</b> Use to set the signal send mode (Soft SW set value). Facsimile simulation design specifications.</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>1</td><td>NO SIGNAL</td><td>13</td><td>7200bps(V34)</td><td>25</td><td>2400bps(V27ter)</td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>33600bps(V34)</td><td>14</td><td>4800bps(V34)</td><td>26</td><td>300bps(FLAG)</td></tr> <tr><td>3</td><td>31200bps(V34)</td><td>15</td><td>2400bps(V34)</td><td>27</td><td>2100Hz(CED)</td></tr> <tr><td>4</td><td>28800bps(V34)</td><td>16</td><td>14400bps(V33)</td><td>28</td><td>1100Hz(CNG)</td></tr> <tr><td>5</td><td>26400bps(V34)</td><td>17</td><td>12000bps(V33)</td><td>29</td><td>300bps(V21)</td></tr> <tr><td>6</td><td>24000bps(V34)</td><td>18</td><td>14400bps(V17)</td><td>30</td><td>2100Hz(ANSam)</td></tr> <tr><td>7</td><td>21600bps(V34)</td><td>19</td><td>12000bps(V17)</td><td>31</td><td>DUMMY RING</td></tr> <tr><td>8</td><td>19200bps(V34)</td><td>20</td><td>9600bps(V17)</td><td>32</td><td>NO VOICE ANSWER</td></tr> <tr><td>9</td><td>16800bps(V34)</td><td>21</td><td>7200bps(V17)</td><td>33</td><td>NO RING BACK TONE</td></tr> <tr><td>10</td><td>14400bps(V34)</td><td>22</td><td>9600bps(V29)</td><td>34</td><td>LINE OFF HOOK</td></tr> <tr><td>11</td><td>12000bps(V34)</td><td>23</td><td>7200bps(V29)</td><td>35</td><td>LINE ON HOOK</td></tr> <tr><td>12</td><td>9600bps(V34)</td><td>24</td><td>4800bps(V27ter)</td><td></td><td></td></tr> </table>					1	NO SIGNAL	13	7200bps(V34)	25	2400bps(V27ter)	2	33600bps(V34)	14	4800bps(V34)	26	300bps(FLAG)	3	31200bps(V34)	15	2400bps(V34)	27	2100Hz(CED)	4	28800bps(V34)	16	14400bps(V33)	28	1100Hz(CNG)	5	26400bps(V34)	17	12000bps(V33)	29	300bps(V21)	6	24000bps(V34)	18	14400bps(V17)	30	2100Hz(ANSam)	7	21600bps(V34)	19	12000bps(V17)	31	DUMMY RING	8	19200bps(V34)	20	9600bps(V17)	32	NO VOICE ANSWER	9	16800bps(V34)	21	7200bps(V17)	33	NO RING BACK TONE	10	14400bps(V34)	22	9600bps(V29)	34	LINE OFF HOOK	11	12000bps(V34)	23	7200bps(V29)	35	LINE ON HOOK	12	9600bps(V34)	24	4800bps(V27ter)		
1	NO SIGNAL	13	7200bps(V34)	25	2400bps(V27ter)																																																																										
2	33600bps(V34)	14	4800bps(V34)	26	300bps(FLAG)																																																																										
3	31200bps(V34)	15	2400bps(V34)	27	2100Hz(CED)																																																																										
4	28800bps(V34)	16	14400bps(V33)	28	1100Hz(CNG)																																																																										
5	26400bps(V34)	17	12000bps(V33)	29	300bps(V21)																																																																										
6	24000bps(V34)	18	14400bps(V17)	30	2100Hz(ANSam)																																																																										
7	21600bps(V34)	19	12000bps(V17)	31	DUMMY RING																																																																										
8	19200bps(V34)	20	9600bps(V17)	32	NO VOICE ANSWER																																																																										
9	16800bps(V34)	21	7200bps(V17)	33	NO RING BACK TONE																																																																										
10	14400bps(V34)	22	9600bps(V29)	34	LINE OFF HOOK																																																																										
11	12000bps(V34)	23	7200bps(V29)	35	LINE ON HOOK																																																																										
12	9600bps(V34)	24	4800bps(V27ter)																																																																												
			<p><b>[Operation]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Initial display SELECT OUTPUT SIGNAL (2 DIGITS) No. _____</li> <li>2-digit (1-35) with [Numeric] key / [◀] [▶] key / 2sec after Pressing [▶] key or [◀] key reverses the sequence. No. (1-35) ..... No. (1-35) 1 : NO SIGNAL ..... 35 : LINE ON HOOK</li> <li>* [Clear] key: FAX control is terminated.</li> <li>[OK]/[ENTER] key: Send after setting OUTPUTTING SIGNAL SSW PRESS CLEAR TO STOP</li> <li>* [Clear] key: Returns to "1) Initial display".</li> </ol>																																																																												
07		Image memory content print (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)	<p><b>[Function]</b> Use to print the image memory content.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When print is allowed</li> <li>When there is no print data</li> <li>When print is inhibited</li> </ul> <table border="1"> <tr><td>PRINT STORED</td><td>NO DATA</td><td>CAN NOT PRINT</td></tr> </table> <p>After completion of printing, FAX control is terminated.</p> <p>After 2 sec, FAX control is terminated.</p> <p>After 2 sec, FAX control is terminated.</p>						PRINT STORED	NO DATA	CAN NOT PRINT																																																																				
PRINT STORED	NO DATA	CAN NOT PRINT																																																																													
10		Image memory content clear (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)	<p><b>[Function]</b> Use to clear the image memory content.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When there are some print data</li> <li>When there are no print data</li> </ul> <table border="1"> <tr><td>CLEAR IMAGE MEMORY</td><td>CLEAR IMAGE MEMORY</td></tr> </table> <p>After completion of memory clear, the buzzer sounds.</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>CLEARED PLEASE POWER OFF</td></tr> </table> <p>Remains unchanged until the power is turned off.</p> <p>After completion of memory clear</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>CLEARED</td></tr> </table> <p>After 2sec, FAX control is terminated.</p>						CLEAR IMAGE MEMORY	CLEAR IMAGE MEMORY	CLEARED PLEASE POWER OFF	CLEARED																																																																			
CLEAR IMAGE MEMORY	CLEAR IMAGE MEMORY																																																																														
CLEARED PLEASE POWER OFF																																																																															
CLEARED																																																																															

Main code	Sub code	Contents	Details of function/operation
66	11	300bps signal send (Max. value) (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)	<p><b>[Function]</b> Use to set the 300bps signal send (Max. value). 1: NO SIGNAL 2: 11111 3: 11110 4: 00000 5: 010101 6: 00001</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Initial display  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;">           SELECT SIGNAL            PRESS ←, →         </div> </li> <li>[◀][▶] key or after 2sec            Every time when [▶] key is pressed, the second line is changed in the sequence of No. 1 → 2 → 3 → 4 → 5 → 6 → 1.            When [◀] key is pressed, the sequence is reversed.  <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; align-items: center;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">SELECT SIGNAL (1-6)</div> <span style="margin: 0 10px;">.....</span> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">SELECT SIGNAL (1-6)</div> </div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; align-items: center;"> <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">1: NO SIGNAL</span> <span style="margin: 0 10px;">.....</span> <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">6: 00001</span> </div> <p>* [Clear] key: FAX control is terminated.</p> </li> <li>[OK]/[ENTER] key  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;">           OUTPUTTING SIGNAL MAX            PRESS CLEAR TO STOP         </div> <p>* [Clear] key: Returns to "1) Initial display".</p> </li> </ol>
	12	300bps signal send (Soft SW set value) (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)	<p><b>[Function]</b> Use to set the 300bps signal send (Soft SW set value). 1: NO SIGNAL 2: 11111 3: 11110 4: 00000 5: 010101 6: 00001</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Initial display  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;">           SELECT SIGNAL            PRESS ←, →         </div> </li> <li>[◀][▶] key or after 2sec            Every time when [▶] key is pressed, the second line is changed in the sequence of No. 1 → 2 → 3 → 4 → 5 → 6 → 1.            When [◀] key is pressed, the sequence is reversed.  <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; align-items: center;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">SELECT SIGNAL (1-6)</div> <span style="margin: 0 10px;">.....</span> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">SELECT SIGNAL (1-6)</div> </div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; align-items: center;"> <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">1: NO SIGNAL</span> <span style="margin: 0 10px;">.....</span> <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">6: 00001</span> </div> <p>* [Clear] key: FAX control is terminated.</p> </li> <li>[OK]/[ENTER] key  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;">           OUTPUTTING SIGNAL SSW            PRESS CLEAR TO STOP         </div> <p>* [Clear] key: Returns to "1) Initial display".</p> </li> </ol>

Main code	Sub code	Contents	Details of function/operation
66	13	Dial test (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)	<p><b>[Function]</b> Use to the dial test.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b></p> <p>■ Dial test (PULSE)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Initial display  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">SELECT SIGNAL 1 : PULSE      2 : DTMF</div> <p>* [Clear] key: FAX control is terminated.</p> </li> <li>Select 1  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">INPUT MAKE TIME (0-15)</div> </li> <li>Enter the make time in 2 digits.  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">INPUT DIAL # XXXX</div> <p>XXXX: Default * After deleting with [Clear] key, input can be made.</p> </li> <li>[OK]/[ENTER] key  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">SEND yyPPS xxms 1 : YES 2 : NO</div> <p>"yy" is the selected pulse 10 or 20. "xx" is the input value. * Select 2: Returns to "2)" display.</p> </li> <li>Select 1  <p>Switched to 10/20PPS set with pulse selection inside.</p> </li> <li>After setting  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">SENDING yyPPS xxms</div> </li> <li>After completion of sending  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">TERMINATE ? 1 : YES 2 : NO</div> <p>* Select 2: Returns to "4)" display.</p> </li> <li>Select 1  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">TERMINATED</div> <p>After 2sec, returns to "1) Initial display".</p> </li> </ol>
	17	DTMF signal send (Max. value) (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)	<p><b>[Function]</b> Use to set the DTMF signal send (Max. value).</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Initial display  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">INPUT DIAL #</div> <p>* [Clear] key: FAX control is terminated.</p> </li> <li>[Numeric] key input  <p>The content selected with signal send level selection is set inside.</p> </li> <li>Communication is started after setting the signal send level.  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">SENDING SIGNAL MAX PRESS CLEAR TO STOP</div> <p>* [Clear] key: Returns to "1) Initial display".</p> </li> </ol>

Main code	Sub code	Contents	Details of function/operation		
66	18	DTMF signal send (Soft SW set value) (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)	<p><b>[Function]</b> Use to set the DTMF signal send (Soft SW set value).</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b></p> <p>1) Initial display  <input type="text" value="INPUT DIAL #"/></p> <p>* [Clear] key: FAX control is terminated.</p> <p>2) [Numeric] key input  The content selected with signal send level selection is set inside.</p> <p>3) Communication is started after setting the signal send level.  <input type="text" value="SENDING SIGNAL SSW PRESS CLEAR TO STOP"/></p> <p>* [Clear] key: Returns to "1) Initial display".</p>		
	21	FAX information print (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)	<p><b>[Function]</b> Use to print the FAX information.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b></p> <p>1) Initial display  <input type="text" value="SELECT REPORT (1-3) PRESS ←, →"/></p> <p>2) [◀] [▶] key or after 2sec  Every time when [▶] key is pressed, the second line is changed in the sequence of 1 → 2 → 3 → 1.  When [◀] key is pressed, the sequence is reversed.</p> <p><input type="text" value="SELECT REPORT (1-3) 1:USER SW. LIST"/> <input type="text" value="SELECT REPORT (1-3) 2:SOFT SW. LIST"/> <input type="text" value="SELECT REPORT (1-3) 3:PROTOCOL"/></p> <p>* [Clear] key: FAX control is terminated.</p> <p>3) [OK]/[ENTER] key  • When print is allowed  <input type="text" value="PRINT STORED"/> After completion of printing, FAX control is terminated.</p> <p>• When print is inhibited  <input type="text" value="CAN NOT PRINT"/> After 2sec, FAX control is terminated.</p>		
	24	FAST SRAM clear (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)	<p><b>[Function]</b> Use to clear the FAST SRAM.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b></p> <p>1) Initial display  <input type="text" value="CLEAR FAST SRAM"/></p> <p>2) After completion of clearing  <input type="text" value="CLEARED"/></p> <p>After 2sec, FAX control is terminated.</p>		
	30	TEL/LIU status change check (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)	<p><b>[Function]</b> Use to check the TEL/LIU status change.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b></p> <p>1) Initial display  <input type="text" value="HS2 :xxx HS1 :xxx"/>  <input type="text" value="RHS :xxx EXHS:xxx"/>  ↑  The display is switched every 2sec.  ↓  <input type="text" value="CHECKING PRESS CLEAR TO STOP"/></p> <p>* [Clear] key: FAX control is terminated.</p>		

Main code	Sub code	Contents	Details of function/operation								
66	33	Signal detection check (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)	<p><b>[Function]</b> Use to check the signal detection.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b></p> <p>1) Initial display</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>CHECKING</td><td>NONE</td></tr> <tr><td>PRESS CLEAR TO STOP</td><td></td></tr> </table> <p>When a signal is detected, the display is changed from NONE to the following. CI/CNG/CED/BT/DT/Flag/SDT/DTMF * [Clear] key: FAX control is terminated.</p>	CHECKING	NONE	PRESS CLEAR TO STOP					
CHECKING	NONE										
PRESS CLEAR TO STOP											
	34	Communication time measurement (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)	<p><b>[Function]</b> Use to measurement the communication time.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b></p> <p>1) Initial display</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>COMM. TIME</td></tr> <tr><td>xx:xx:xx:xxx msec</td></tr> </table> <p>"xx:xx:xx:xxx" indicates o'clock, minute, second, millisecond. * [Clear] key: FAX control is terminated.</p>	COMM. TIME	xx:xx:xx:xxx msec						
COMM. TIME											
xx:xx:xx:xxx msec											
	37	Speaker sound volume setting (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)	<p><b>[Function]</b> Use to set the speaker sound volume.</p> <p>1: NO SOUND 2: LOW 3: MID 4: HIGH</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b></p> <p>1) Initial display</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>SELECT SPEAKER VOL.</td></tr> <tr><td>PRESS ←, →</td></tr> </table> <p>2) [◀] [▶] key or after 2sec Every time when [▶] key is pressed, the second line is changed in the sequence of 1 → 2 → 3 → 4 → 1. When [◀] key is pressed, the sequence is reversed.</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>SELECT (1-4)</td><td>SELECT (1-4)</td></tr> <tr><td>1 : NO SOUND</td><td>2 : LOW</td></tr> </table> <p>....</p> <p>* [Clear] key: FAX control is terminated.</p> <p>3) [OK]/[ENTER] key</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>STORED</td></tr> <tr><td>xxx</td></tr> </table> <p>xxx: Set content After 2sec, FAX control is terminated.</p>	SELECT SPEAKER VOL.	PRESS ←, →	SELECT (1-4)	SELECT (1-4)	1 : NO SOUND	2 : LOW	STORED	xxx
SELECT SPEAKER VOL.											
PRESS ←, →											
SELECT (1-4)	SELECT (1-4)										
1 : NO SOUND	2 : LOW										
STORED											
xxx											

Main code	Sub code	Contents	Details of function/operation																	
66	38	Time setting/check (Executable only when the FAX is installed.)	<p><b>[Function]</b> Use to check the time setting.</p> <p><b>[Operation]</b></p> <p>1) Initial display</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>SELECT TO SET</td></tr> <tr><td>1 : DATE      2 : TIME</td></tr> </table> <p>* [Clear] key: FAX control is terminated.</p> <p>2) Select 1</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>xxxx.xx.xx (xxx)</td></tr> <tr><td>CHANGE?    1 : YES 2 : NO</td></tr> </table> <p>"xxxx.xx.xx(xxx)" is the current value. (No revision of display)</p> <p>3) Select 1</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>INPUT YEAR (4 DIGITS) . . .</td></tr> </table> <p>* Select 2: Returns to "1) Initial display".</p> <p>4) Enter the year in 4 digits.</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>INPUT MONTH (1-12) 1998 . . .</td></tr> </table> <p>5) Enter the month in 2 digits.</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>INPUT DAY (1-31) 1998.01 .</td></tr> </table> <p>6) Enter the day in 2 digits.</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>xxxx.xx.xx (xxx)</td></tr> <tr><td>STORED? 1 : YES 2 : NO</td></tr> </table> <p>"xxxx.xx.xx(xxx) is the entered value. * Select 2: Returns to "1) Initial display".</p> <p>7) Select 1</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>STORED</td></tr> </table> <p>After 2sec, returns to "1) Initial display".</p> <p>2) Select 2</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>xx:xx</td></tr> <tr><td>CHANGE? 1 : YES 2 : NO</td></tr> </table> <p>"xx:xx" is the current value.</p> <p>3) Select 1</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>INPUT HOUR (0-24) :</td></tr> </table> <p>* Select 2: Returns to "1) Initial display".</p> <p>4) Enter o'clock in 2 digits.</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>INPUT MINUTE (00-59) 01:</td></tr> </table> <p>5) Enter minute in 2 digits.</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>xx:xx</td></tr> <tr><td>STORED? 1 : YES 2 : NO</td></tr> </table> <p>"xx:xx" is the current value. * Select 2: Returns to "1) Initial display".</p> <p>6) Select 1</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>STORED</td></tr> </table> <p>After 2sec, returns to "1) Initial display".</p>	SELECT TO SET	1 : DATE      2 : TIME	xxxx.xx.xx (xxx)	CHANGE?    1 : YES 2 : NO	INPUT YEAR (4 DIGITS) . . .	INPUT MONTH (1-12) 1998 . . .	INPUT DAY (1-31) 1998.01 .	xxxx.xx.xx (xxx)	STORED? 1 : YES 2 : NO	STORED	xx:xx	CHANGE? 1 : YES 2 : NO	INPUT HOUR (0-24) :	INPUT MINUTE (00-59) 01:	xx:xx	STORED? 1 : YES 2 : NO	STORED
SELECT TO SET																				
1 : DATE      2 : TIME																				
xxxx.xx.xx (xxx)																				
CHANGE?    1 : YES 2 : NO																				
INPUT YEAR (4 DIGITS) . . .																				
INPUT MONTH (1-12) 1998 . . .																				
INPUT DAY (1-31) 1998.01 .																				
xxxx.xx.xx (xxx)																				
STORED? 1 : YES 2 : NO																				
STORED																				
xx:xx																				
CHANGE? 1 : YES 2 : NO																				
INPUT HOUR (0-24) :																				
INPUT MINUTE (00-59) 01:																				
xx:xx																				
STORED? 1 : YES 2 : NO																				
STORED																				
67	50	USB receive speed adjustment (USB1.1) (AR-203E only)	<p>Used to set the limitation on the print data receive speed of USB2.0 (Full speed) port (USB port on the machine).</p> <p>→ When print images from USB2.0 (Full speed) port are disturbed, change the setting and try again.</p> <p>When this simulation is executed, the currently set code number is displayed.</p> <p>Enter the code number corresponding to the adjustment value, and press [START] key to change the setting.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Code number</th> <th>Setting</th> <th>Speed</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>1</td><td>FAST</td><td>↑ Fast</td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>NORMAL1</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>3</td><td>NORMAL2</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>4</td><td>SLOW</td><td>↓ Slow</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Code number	Setting	Speed	1	FAST	↑ Fast	2	NORMAL1		3	NORMAL2		4	SLOW	↓ Slow		
Code number	Setting	Speed																		
1	FAST	↑ Fast																		
2	NORMAL1																			
3	NORMAL2																			
4	SLOW	↓ Slow																		

## 5. Trouble codes

### A. Trouble codes list

Main code	Sub code	Details of trouble
E1	00	IMC communication trouble
	10	IMC trouble
	13	IMC flash ROM error
	81	IMC communication interface error (Parity)
	82	IMC communication interface error (Overrun)
	84	IMC communication interface error (Framing)
E7	01	Duplex model memory setup error, memory not-detected error
	02	LSU trouble
	10	Shading trouble (Black correction)
	11	Shading trouble (White correction)

Main code	Sub code	Details of trouble
E7	16	Abnormal laser output
F2	02	Toner supply abnormality
	04	Improper cartridge (Destination error, life cycle error)
F5	02	Copy lamp lighting abnormality
F6	10	FAX board trouble
H2	00	Thermistor open
H3	00	Heat roller high temperature detection
H4	00	Heat roller low temperature detection
L1	00	Feeding is not completed within the specified time after starting feeding. (The scan head locking switch is locked)

Main code	Sub code	Details of trouble	
L3	00	Scanner return trouble	
L4	01	Main motor lock detection	
	32	Exhaust fan motor lock detection trouble	
L6	10	Polygon motor lock detection	
U1	03	FAX board battery error	
U2	04	EEPROM read/write error (Serial communication error)	
	11	Counter check sum error (EEPROM)	
	40	CRUM chip communication error	

## B. Details of trouble codes

Main code	Sub code	Details of trouble	
E1	00	Content	IMC communication trouble
		Detail	An abnormality occurs in communication between the CPU and the IMC.
		Cause	IMC abnormality IMC memory defect/data abnormality
		Check and remedy	Replace the MCU PWB with new one.
	10	Content	IMC trouble
		Detail	An abnormality occurs in the IMC.
		Cause	USB chip error/CODEC error on the IMC.
		Check and remedy	Replace the MCU PWB with a new one.
	13	Content	IMC flash ROM error
		Detail	An abnormality occurs in the IMC flash ROM.
		Cause	IMC abnormality
		Check and remedy	Replace the MCU PWB with a new one. If downloading of the program is abnormally terminated, it may cause an error. Download the program again to avoid this.
	81	Content	IMC communication interface error (Parity)
		Detail	A parity error occurs in communication between the CPU and the IMC.
		Cause	IMC abnormality IMC memory defect/data abnormality
		Check and remedy	Replace the MCU PWB with new one.
E1	82	Content	IMC communication interface error (Overrun)
		Detail	An overrun error occurs in communication between the CPU and the IMC.
		Cause	IMC abnormality IMC memory defect/data abnormality.
		Check and remedy	Replace the MCU PWB with new one.
	84	Content	IMC communication interface error (Framing)
		Detail	A framing error occurs in communication between the CPU and the IMC.
		Cause	IMC abnormality IMC memory defect/data abnormality.
		Check and remedy	Replace the MCU PWB with new one.

Main code	Sub code	Details of trouble	
E7	01	Content	Duplex model memory setup error, memory not-detected error
		Detail	The memory is not set properly or the memory capacity is not set to the duplex setup (6M).
		Check and remedy	Set SIM 26-39 code number to 2.
	02	Content	LSU trouble
		Detail	The BD signal from the LSU cannot be detected in a certain cycle. (Always OFF or always ON)
		Cause	LSU connector or LSU harness defect or disconnection Polygon motor rotation abnormality Laser beams are not generated. MCU PWB abnormality.
		Check and remedy	Check connection of the LSU connector. Execute SIM 61-03 to check the LSU operations. Check that the polygon motor rotates normally. Check that the laser emitting diode generates laser beams. Replace the LSU unit. Replace the MCU PWB.
10	10	Content	Shading trouble (Black correction)
		Detail	The CCD black scan level is abnormal when the shading.
		Cause	Improper connection of the CCD unit flat cable CCD unit abnormality MCU PWB abnormality
		Check and remedy	Check connection of the CCD unit flat cable. Check the CCD unit.
11	11	Content	Shading trouble (White correction)
		Detail	The CCD white scan level is abnormal when the shading.
		Cause	Improper connection of the CCD unit flat cable Dirt on the mirror, the lens, and the reference white plate Copy lamp lighting abnormality CCD unit abnormality MCU PWB abnormality (When occurred in the SPF/RSPF scan position.) Improper installation of the mirror unit
		Check and remedy	Clean the mirror, lens, and the reference white plate. Check the light quantity and lighting status of the copy lamp (SIM 05-03). Check the MCU PWB.
16	16	Content	Abnormal laser output
		Detail	When the laser output is stopped, HSYNC is detected.
		Cause	Laser abnormality MCU PWB abnormality.
		Check and remedy	Check the laser emitting diode operation. Replace the MCU PWB.

Main code	Sub code	Details of trouble	
F2	02	Content	Toner supply abnormality
		Detail	The maximum toner supply time is greatly exceeded.
		Cause	CRUM chip trouble Improper developing unit
		Check and remedy	Replace the CRUM chip. Replace the developing unit.
		Content	Improper cartridge (Destination error, life cycle error)
	04	Detail	The destination of the main unit differs from that of the CRUM.  When the life cycle information is other than Not Used (FFh).
		Cause	CRUM chip trouble Improper developing unit
		Check and remedy	Replace the CRUM chip. Replace the developing unit.
		Content	Copy lamp lighting abnormality
		Detail	The copy lamp does not turn on.
F5	02	Cause	Copy lamp abnormality Copy lamp harness abnormality CCD PWB harness abnormality
		Check and remedy	Use SIM 5-3 to check the copy lamp operations.  <b>When the copy lamp lights up.</b> Check the harness and the connector between the CCD unit and the MCU PWB. <b>When the copy lamp does not light up.</b> Check the harness and the connector between the copy lamp unit and the MCU PWB. Replace the copy lamp unit. Replace the MCU PWB.
		Content	FAX board trouble
		Detail	Communication trouble between MCU and FAX control PWB
		Cause	FAX control PWB connector disconnection Defective harness between FAX control PWB and MCU PWB Motherboard connector pin breakage FAX control PWB ROM error/Data error IC on FAX PWB causes abnormality
	10	Check and remedy	Check connector/harness of FAX control PWB and MCU PWB. Check the grounding of the copier. Check FAX control PWB ROM. Replace the FAX PWB.
		Content	Thermistor open
		Detail	The thermistor is open. The fusing unit is not installed.
		Cause	Thermistor abnormality Control PWB abnormality Fusing section connector disconnection The fusing unit is not installed.
		Check and remedy	Check the harness and the connector between the thermistor and the PWB. Use SIM 14 to clear the self diagnostic display.
H2	00	Content	Thermistor open
		Detail	The thermistor is open. The fusing unit is not installed.
		Cause	Thermistor abnormality Control PWB abnormality Fusing section connector disconnection The fusing unit is not installed.
		Check and remedy	Check the harness and the connector between the thermistor and the PWB. Use SIM 14 to clear the self diagnostic display.

Main code	Sub code	Details of trouble	
H3	00	Content	Heat roller high temperature detection
		Detail	The fusing temperature exceeds 240°C.
		Cause	Thermistor abnormality Control PWB abnormality Fusing section connector disconnection.
		Check and remedy	Use SIM 5-02 to check the heater lamp blinking operation.  <b>When the lamp blinks normally.</b> Check the thermistor and its harness. Check the thermistor input circuit on the control PWB.  <b>When the lamp keeps ON.</b> Check the power PWB and the lamp control circuit on the MCU PWB. Use SIM 14 to clear the self diagnostic display.
		Content	Heat roller low temperature detection
	00	Detail	1) When the target temperature (165°C) is not reached in 55 sec after starting warming-up. 2) When the temperature below 100°C is detected for 300ms under the ready print state. * "Starting warming-up" means not only that in power supply but also reset that in reset from shut-off and in side door close. (The timing of generating H4 is not limited to that in power supply.)
		Cause	Thermistor abnormality Heater lamp abnormality Thermostat abnormality Control PWB abnormality
		Check and remedy	Use SIM 5-02 to check the heater lamp blinking operation.  <b>When the lamp blinks normally.</b> Check the thermistor and its harness. Check the thermistor input circuit on the control PWB.  <b>When the lamp does not light up.</b> Check for disconnection of the heater lamp and the thermostat. Check the interlock switch. Check the power PWB and the lamp control circuit on the MCU PWB. Use SIM 14 to clear the self diagnostic display.
		Content	Thermistor open
		Detail	The thermistor is open. The fusing unit is not installed.
		Cause	Thermistor abnormality Control PWB abnormality Fusing section connector disconnection The fusing unit is not installed.
		Check and remedy	Check the harness and the connector between the thermistor and the PWB. Use SIM 14 to clear the self diagnostic display.

Main code	Sub code	Details of trouble	
L1	00	Content	Feeding is not completed within the specified time after starting feeding. (The scan head locking switch is locked)
		Detail	The white area and the black marking on the shading plate are used to obtain the difference in the CCD level values for judgment of lock. When the difference in the levels of which and black is small, it is judged that the black mark could not be scanned by lock and the trouble code "L1" is displayed.
		Cause	The scan head is locked by the lock switch. Mirror unit abnormality The scanner wire is disconnected. The origin detection sensor abnormality Mirror motor harness abnormality
		Check and remedy	Check to confirm that the scan head lock switch is released. Use SIM 1-1 to check the mirror reciprocating operations. <b>When the mirror does not feed.</b> Check for disconnection of the scanner wire. Check the harness and the connector between the mirror motor and the MCU PWB. Replace the mirror unit. Replace the MCU PWB. <b>When the mirror does feed.</b> Use SIM 1-2 to check the mirror home position sensor.
		Content	Scanner return trouble
		Detail	When the mirror base is returned for the specified time (6 sec) in mirror initializing after turning on the power, the mirror home position sensor (MHPS) does not turn ON. Or when the mirror base is returned for the specified time (about 6 sec) after start of copy return, the mirror home position sensor (MHPS) does not turn ON.
		Cause	Mirror unit abnormality Scanner wire disconnection Origin detection sensor abnormality Mirror motor harness abnormality
		Check and remedy	Use SIM 1-1 to check the mirror reciprocating operations. <b>When the mirror does not return.</b> Check for disconnection of the scanner wire. Check the harness and the connector between the mirror motor and the MCU PWB. Replace the mirror unit. Replace the MCU PWB. <b>When the mirror does feed.</b> Use SIM 1-2 to check the mirror home position sensor.
		Content	Main motor lock detection
		Detail	When the main motor encoder pulse is not detected for 100 msec.
		Cause	Main motor unit abnormality Improper connection or disconnection the main motor and the harness. MCU PWB abnormality
		Check and remedy	Use SIM 25-01 to check the main motor operations. Check connection of the main motor harness/connector. Replace the main motor. Replace the MCU PWB.

Main code	Sub code	Details of trouble	
L4	32	Content	Exhaust fan motor lock detection trouble
		Detail	The error detection is started after 2 sec from starting rotation of the exhaust fan motor. 1) The continuous rotation state of 250ms is not detected for 1 sec after starting detection. 2) When the lock sensor (in the exhaust fan) detects the HIGH level (unstable) after detection the lock state (stable state).
		Cause	Exhaust fan motor connector connection trouble Exhaust fan motor trouble MCU PWB trouble
		Check and remedy	Exhaust fan motor connector connection check Exhaust fan motor replacement Replace the MCU PWB.
		Content	Polygon motor lock detection
		Detail	The lock signal (specified rpm signal) does not return within a certain time (about 20 sec) from starting the polygon motor rotation.
		Cause	Polygon motor unit abnormality Improper connection or disconnection of the polygon motor and the harness. MCU PWB abnormality
		Check and remedy	Use SIM 61-1 to check the polygon motor operations. Check connection of the polygon motor harness/connector. Replace the polygon motor. Replace the MCU PWB.
		Content	FAX board battery error
		Details	The SRAM backup battery voltage on FAX PWB falls.
U1	03	Cause	The SRAM backup battery voltage on FAX PWB falls.
		Check and remedy	Check voltage of the SRAM back up battery. Replace the battery.
		Content	EEPROM read/write error (Serial communication error)
		Detail	EEPROM access process error
U2	04	Cause	EEPROM abnormality
		Check and remedy	Check that the EEPROM is properly set. Use SIM 16 to cancel the trouble. Replace the MCU PWB.
		Content	Counter check sum error (EEPROM)
		Detail	Check sum error of the counter area in the EEPROM
		Cause	EEPROM abnormality
11	11	Check and remedy	Check that the EEPROM is properly set. Use SIM 16 to cancel the trouble. Replace the MCU PWB.
		Content	CRUM chip communication error
		Detail	An error occurs in MCU-CRUM chip communication.
		Cause	CRUM chip trouble Defective contact of developing unit MCU PWB trouble
		Check and remedy	Replace the CRUM chip. Check installation of the developing unit. Cancel by turning OFF/ON the power. Replace the MCU PWB.
40	40	Content	CRUM chip communication error
		Detail	An error occurs in MCU-CRUM chip communication.
		Cause	CRUM chip trouble Defective contact of developing unit MCU PWB trouble
		Check and remedy	Replace the CRUM chip. Check installation of the developing unit. Cancel by turning OFF/ON the power. Replace the MCU PWB.

## [11] MAINTENANCE

### 1. Maintenance table

× : Check (Clean, adjust, or replace when required.) ○ : Clean ▲ : Replace △ : Adjust ☆: Lubricate

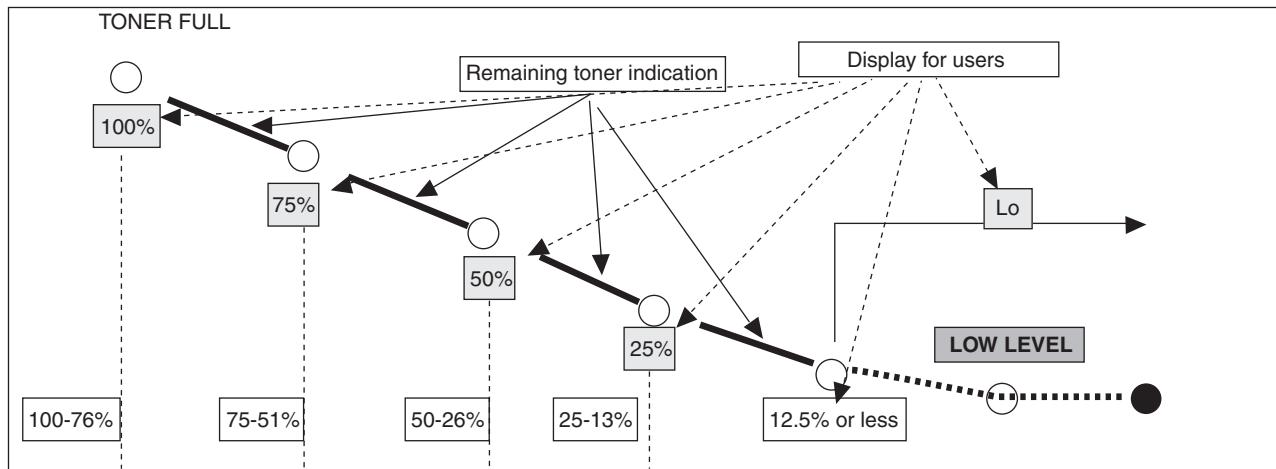
Section	Parts	25K	50K	75K	100K	125K	Remark
Developing	Developer	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	
	DV blade	○	▲	○	▲	○	
	DV side seal (F/R)	○	▲	○	▲	○	
	DV doctor	×	×	×	×	×	White streaks are made on the image.
Process peripheral	Drum	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	

### 2. Maintenance display system

Toner	Life	8K
	Remaining quantity	NEAR EMPTY About 12.5%
	LED	ON
	Machine	Operation allowed
Developer	Life	25K
	LED	ON at 25K of the developer count.
	Machine	Selection is available between Not Stop and Stop by Service Simulation (SIM 26-37) Setup. (If Stop is selected, the LED will flash and stop at 25K.) * Default: Not Stop * Clear: SIM 24-06
Maintenance	LED	Selection is available among 25K, 13K, 9K, 6K, 3K, and free (no lighting) with SIM 21-1. * Default: 25K * Clear: SIM 20-1
	Machine	Not stop.

Note: When developer is replaced, be sure to execute simulation No. 24-06 to reset the counter.

### 3. Remaining toner indication



- The remaining toner indication is based on the number of revolutions of the toner motor.
- The toner END indication appears when the END is detected by the toner sensor.
- The remaining toner indication is a rough indication of the remaining toner quantity.

## [12] USER PROGRAM

The conditions of factory setting can be changed according to the use conditions.

### 1. Functions that can be set with user programs

#### Toner save mode

Reduces toner consumption by approximately 10%.

#### Power save modes

The unit has two power save modes of operation: preheat mode and auto power shut-off mode.

#### Preheat mode

When the unit enters the preheat mode, the power save (⌚) indicator will light up and other indicators will remain on or off as before. In this condition, the fuser in the unit is maintained at a lower heat level, thereby saving power. To copy from the preheat mode, make desired copier selections and press the start (⌚) key using the normal copying procedure.

#### Auto power shut-off mode

When the unit enters the auto power shut-off mode, the power save (⌚) indicator will light up and other indicators except the ONLINE indicator will go out. The auto power shut-off mode saves more power than the preheat mode but requires a longer time before starting copying. To copy from the auto power shut-off mode, press the start (⌚) key. Then make desired copier selections and press the start (⌚) key using the normal copying procedure.

#### Auto clear

The unit returns to the initial settings a preset amount of time after the end of job.

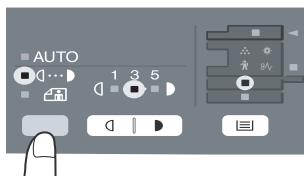
This preset amount of time (auto clear time) can be changed.

#### Resolution of AUTO & MANUAL mode

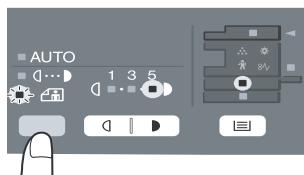
You can set the copy resolution used for AUTO and MANUAL (⌚...⌚) exposure mode.

### 2. Toner save mode (AR-203E/5420)

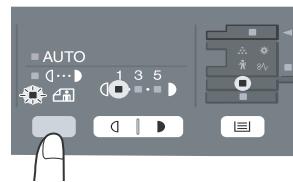
- 1) Press the exposure mode selector key to select the MANUAL (⌚...⌚) mode.



- 2) Press and hold down the exposure mode selector key for approximately 5 seconds. The MANUAL (⌚...⌚) indicator will go out and the PHOTO (⌚) indicator will begin to blink. The light and dark indicator marked "5" will light up, indicating the standard toner mode is active.



- 3) To enter the toner save mode, press the light (⌚) key. The light and dark indicator marked "1" will light up, indicating the toner save mode is selected.



- 4) Press the exposure mode selector key. The PHOTO (⌚) indicator will stop blinking and light up steadily. The light and dark indicator marked "3" will light up. The toner save mode is now active.

Note: To return to the standard mode, repeat the procedure but use the dark (⌚) key to select exposure level "5" in step 3).

### 3. User programs (AR-203E/5420)

The user programs allow the parameters of certain functions to be set, changed, or canceled as desired.

**Set the power save modes, auto clear time, preheat mode, SPF automatic original discharge time, resolution of AUTO & MANUAL mode and reset factory setting.**

- 1) Press and hold down the light (⌚) key simultaneously for more than 5 seconds until all the alarm indicators (:⌚, 8/⌚, ⌚, ⌚) blink and "---" appears in the display.
- 2) Use the left copy quantity (⌚) key to select a user program number (1: Auto clear time, 2: Preheat mode, 3: Auto power shut off mode, 4: Auto power shut off timer, 6: SPF automatic original discharge time, 10: Resolution of AUTO & MANUAL mode, 21: Reset factory, 24: Prevention of OC copies when the SPF is up function, 25: Copy effective paper width setting function (Bypass tray), 26: Copy effective paper width setting function (Tray), 28: Selection of copy start state (Polygon rotation on/off), 29: Fusing temperature setting when the bypass tray is used). The selected number will blink in the left side of the display.
- 3) Press the start (⌚) key. The entered program number will be steadily lit and the currently selected parameter number for the program will blink on the right side of the display.
- 4) Select the desired parameter using the right copy quantity (⌚) key. The entered parameter number will blink on the right of the display.

Program No.	Mode	Parameters
1	Auto clear time	1 → 10 sec., 2 → 30 sec., *3 → 60 sec., 4 → 90 sec., 5 → 120 sec., 6 → OFF
2	Preheat mode	*1 → 30 sec., 2 → 60 sec., 3 → 5 min., 4 → 30 min., 5 → 60 min., 6 → 120 min., 7 → 240 min.
3	Auto power shut off mode	*1 → ON, 2 → OFF
4	Auto power shut off timer	*1 → 5 min., 2 → 30min., 3 → 60 min., 4 → 120 min., 5 → 240 min.
6	SPF automatic original discharge time	1 → 5 min., *2 → 30 min., 3 → 60 min., 4 → 120 min., 5 → 240 min., 6 → OFF
10	Resolution of AUTO & MANUAL mode	*1 → 300dpi, 2 → 600dpi
21	Reset factory	1 → YES, *2 → NO
24	Prevention of OC copies when the SPF is up function	*1 → ON, 2 → OFF

Program No.	Mode	Parameters
25	Copy effective paper width setting function (Bypass tray)	*1 → Large (A4 width/LETTER), 2 → Small (B5R width/INVOICE)
26	Copy effective paper width setting function (Tray)	*1 → Large (A4 width/LETTER), 2 → Small (B5R width/INVOICE)
28	Selection of copy start state (Polygon rotation on/off)	*1 → ON, 2 → OFF
29	Fusing temperature setting when the bypass tray is used	1 → Low, *2 → High

\* Factory default settings are indicated with an asterisk (\*).

- 5) Press the start (⌚) key. The right-hand number in the display will be steadily lit and the entered value will be stored.

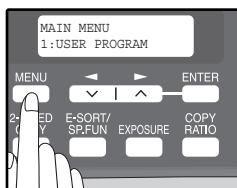
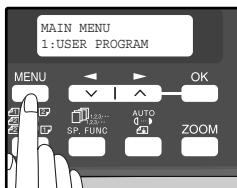
Note: To change the setting or to set another mode, press the clear key. The unit will return to step 2).

- 6) Press the light (💡) key to return to the normal copy mode.

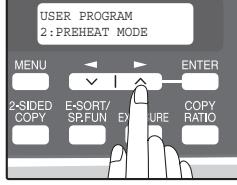
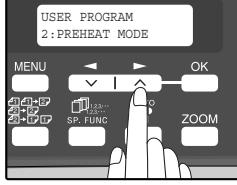
## 4. User programs (AR-M200/M201)

- 1) Press the [MENU] key and then press the [OK]/[ENTER] key.

In printer mode, the user programs are accessed by simply pressing the [MENU] key.

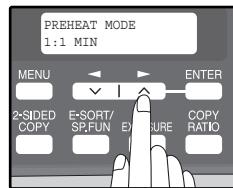
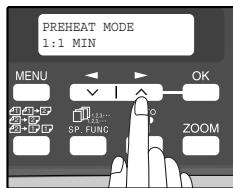


- 2) Press the [◀] key [▼] or [▶] key [▲] to select the item that you wish to configure in the USER PROGRAM items, and then press the [OK]/[ENTER] key.
- See "1. User programs" for the program name and program code.
  - You can also select a program by directly entering the program number with the numeric keys.



- 3) Press the [◀] key [▼] or [▶] key [▲] to change the setting of the selected item.

- See "1. User programs" for the program code.



### NOTE:

If you mistakenly select the wrong item, press the [Clear] key (⬅) and repeat the procedure from step 2).

To cancel a setting for a user program, press the [MENU] key.

- 4) Press the [OK]/[ENTER] key.

Your selection appears briefly and then the previous screen appears.

### NOTE:

When "AE LEVEL ADJUST" is selected in the user programs and the [OK]/[ENTER] key is pressed, the automatic exposure adjustment screen appears. Adjust the exposure and press the [OK]/[ENTER] key.

### Audible signals (key entry beep, invalid key beep, base setting beep)

The machine sounds three different types of beep signals: a key entry beep that sounds when a valid key is pressed, an invalid key beep that sounds when an invalid key is pressed, and a base setting beep that sounds when a setting is the same as the base setting (base settings are explained below). The base setting beep is initially disabled. If you wish to enable the base setting beep, see "SOUND AT DEFAULT". If you wish to change the volume of the beep signals or disable them, see "KEY TOUCH SOUND".

The beep patterns of each type of beep signal are as follows:

**Key entry beep:** One beep      **Invalid key beep:** Two beeps  
**Base setting beep:** Three beeps

### Base settings

The base settings are preset standard selections for each copy setting. The base settings are as follows:

**Copy ratio:** 100%

**Light and Dark level:** Center

**Paper feed location:**

Tray 1 (Upper paper tray)

**AUTO/TEXT/PHOTO:** AUTO

## A. Copy mode

Program number	Program name	Setting codes (factory default setting appears in bold)	Explanation
1	AUTO CLEAR	1: 10 SEC. 2: 30 SEC. <b>3: 60 SEC.</b> 4: 90 SEC. 5: 120 SEC. 6: OFF	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Auto clear time automatically returns the copy settings to the initial settings if no keys are pressed for a preset period of time following the end of a copy job.</li> <li>This program is used to select the period of time. Auto clear time can also be disabled.</li> </ul>
2	PREHEAT MODE	<b>1: 30 SEC.</b> 2: 1 MIN. 3: 5 MIN. 4: 30 MIN. 5: 60 MIN. 6: 120 MIN. 7: 240 MIN.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This function automatically switches the machine to a low power consumption state if the set duration of time elapses without the machine being used when the power is on. The power save indicator lights up, however, the keys on the operation panel can be used. Normal operation automatically resumes when a key on the operation panel is pressed, an original is placed, a print job is received.</li> </ul>
3	AUTO SHUT-OFF	<b>1: ON</b> 2: OFF	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use this setting to enable or disable auto power shut-off mode.</li> </ul>
4	AUTO SHUT-OFF TIME	<b>1: 5 MIN.</b> 2: 30 MIN. 3: 60 MIN. 4: 120 MIN. 5: 240 MIN.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This function automatically switches the machine to a state that consumes even less power than preheat mode if the set duration of time elapses without the machine being used when the power is on. All lights except the power save indicator go off. To resume normal operation, press the [START] key (◎). Normal operation also resumes automatically when a print job is received or scanning is begun from a computer. While in auto power shut-off mode, no keys (except the [START] key (◎)) can be used.</li> </ul>
7	LAYOUT IN 2IN1	<b>1: PATTERN 1</b> 2: PATTERN 2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use this setting to select the layout pattern when two original pages are copied onto a single sheet of paper.</li> </ul>
8	OFFSET FUNCTION	<b>1: ON</b> 2: OFF	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When enabled, this function offsets the position of each set of copies in the output tray in copy mode, and each print job in printer mode.</li> </ul>
9	ROTATE ORIG. IMAGE (AR-208D only)	<b>1: ON</b> <b>2: OFF</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When two-sided copying is performed, this function rotates the image on the back of the original. This is convenient when binding the copies at the top (tablet binding).</li> </ul>
10	AE/TEXT RESOLUTION	<b>1: 300dpi</b> 2: 600dpi	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This setting is used to change the copy resolution in AUTO and TEXT mode from 600 x 300 dpi to 600 x 600 dpi (high-quality mode). Scanning is slower when high-quality mode is used.</li> </ul>
11	2-SIDED COPY MODE (AR-208D only)	<b>1: HI-SPEED</b> 2: NORMAL	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the memory fills up when two-sided copying is performed, "NORMAL" can be selected to make copying possible. However, "NORMAL" results in a slower copying speed. Normally "HI-SPEED" is selected to enable fast two-sided copying.</li> </ul>
12	MARGIN WIDTH	<b>1: 1/4"</b> <b>2: 1/2"</b> 3: 3/4" 4: 1"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use this setting to set the margin width.</li> </ul>
13	MEM. FOR PRINTER	1: 30% 2: 40% <b>3: 50%</b> 4: 60% 5: 70%	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use this to change the proportion of machine memory used for printer mode.</li> </ul>
14	AUTO KEY REPEAT	<b>1: ON</b> 2: OFF	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use this setting to select whether or not holding down a key causes repeated input of the key. For keys that normally cause a set value to decrease or increase when held down (for example, the [◀] key (⊖) or [▶] key (⊕)), this program can be used to have the set value not change when the key is held down.</li> </ul>
15	KEY PRESS TIME	<b>1: NORMAL</b> 2: 0.5 SEC. 3: 1.0 SEC. 4: 1.5 SEC. 5: 2.0 SEC.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use this setting to select how long a key must be pressed for the input to be accepted. By selecting a longer time, you can prevent settings from being changed by the accidental pressing of a key.</li> </ul>
16	KEY TOUCH SOUND	<b>1: LOW</b> 2: HIGH 3: OFF	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This sets the volume of beep signals.</li> </ul>
17	SOUND AT DEFAULT	<b>1: ON</b> <b>2: OFF</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use this to sound a beep when a base setting is selected.</li> </ul>
18	TONER SAVE MODE	<b>1: ON</b> <b>2: OFF</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This mode reduces toner usage by about 10% when copying. Toner save mode is effective when the exposure mode is AUTO or TEXT.</li> </ul>

Program number	Program name	Setting codes (factory default setting appears in bold)	Explanation
19	AE LEVEL ADJUST	1: SPF/RSPF (Adjustment to 5 levels is possible.) 2: DOCUMENT GLASS (Adjustment to 5 levels is possible.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This is used to adjust the exposure level.</li> <li>The automatic exposure level can be adjusted separately for the document glass and the RSPF.</li> <li>For the procedure for adjusting the exposure and guidelines for numeric values. The factory default setting for the exposure level is center.</li> </ul>
20	LANGUAGE	1: AMERICAN ENGLISH 2: ENGLISH 3: FRENCH 4: SPANISH : :	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This is used to set the language used in the display.</li> </ul>
21	RESET FACTORY	1: Yes <b>2: No</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This is used to return all settings to the factory default settings.</li> </ul>
22	SORT AUTO SELECT	1: ON 2: OFF	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use this setting to enable or disable sort auto select mode.</li> </ul>
24	CHECK RSPF OPEN	1: ON 2: OFF	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can set the operation that takes place if the [START] key (◎) is pressed when the RSPF is not completely closed. (Valid only when the multi-bypass paper feed is used.)</li> </ul>
25	VALID COPY WIDTH	1: 8.5x11 2: 5.5x8.5	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Set the allowed paper sizes for copying from the bypass tray. When "5.5x8.5" is selected, a copy of a letter size original will only be printed up to invoice size.</li> </ul>
28	LSU SETTING	1: ON 2: OFF	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select whether copying is only allowed when the polygon motor is rotating, or also when the polygon motor is stopped.</li> </ul>
29	PAPER TYPE	1: PLAIN PAPER <b>2: HEAVY PAPER</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Set the temperature of the fusing unit when the bypass tray is used. Normally "HEAVY PAPER" should be selected.</li> </ul>
30	DISPLAY CONTRAST	1: LIGHTER 2: LIGHT <b>3: NORMAL</b> 4: DARK 5: DARKER	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Set the contrast of the display.</li> </ul>

## B. Print mode

Program number	Program name	Setting codes (factory default setting appears in bold)	Explanation
1	FORCED OUTPUT	1: ON <b>2: OFF</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When this function is enabled, printing in printer mode will automatically continue using a different size of paper if the specified size of paper runs out in all trays. This feature does not function in copy mode.</li> </ul>
2	USB 2.0 MODE SWITCH <sup>*1</sup>	1: FULL-SPEED 2: HI-SPEED	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This sets the USB 2.0 data transfer speed. To obtain the fastest speed when using the USB 2.0 connector, first verify that your computer meets the system requirements (operating system and driver), and then use this program to change the USB 2.0 mode to "Hi-Speed". Note that the setting should not be changed while running a TWAIN driver.</li> </ul>
3	AUTO TRAY SWITCH <sup>*2</sup>	1: ON 2: OFF	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the paper runs out during printing and there is paper of the same size in another tray, this function automatically switches to that tray (excluding the bypass tray). The function can be disabled.</li> </ul>

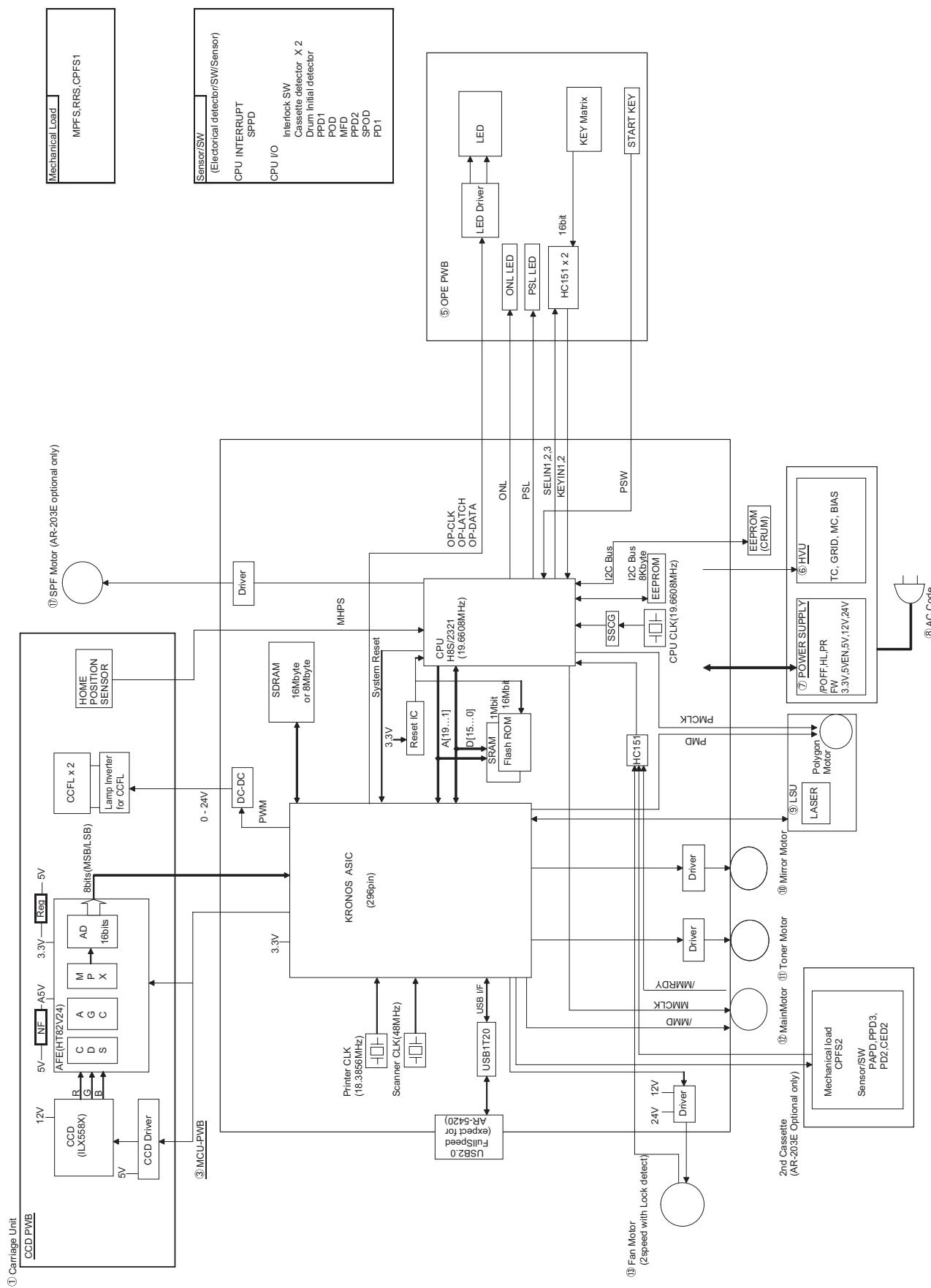
\*<sup>1</sup>: The scanning speed increases when the USB 2.0 mode is set to "HI-SPEED", however, the printing speed does not increase considerably.

\*<sup>2</sup>: When the 250-sheet paper feed unit is installed.

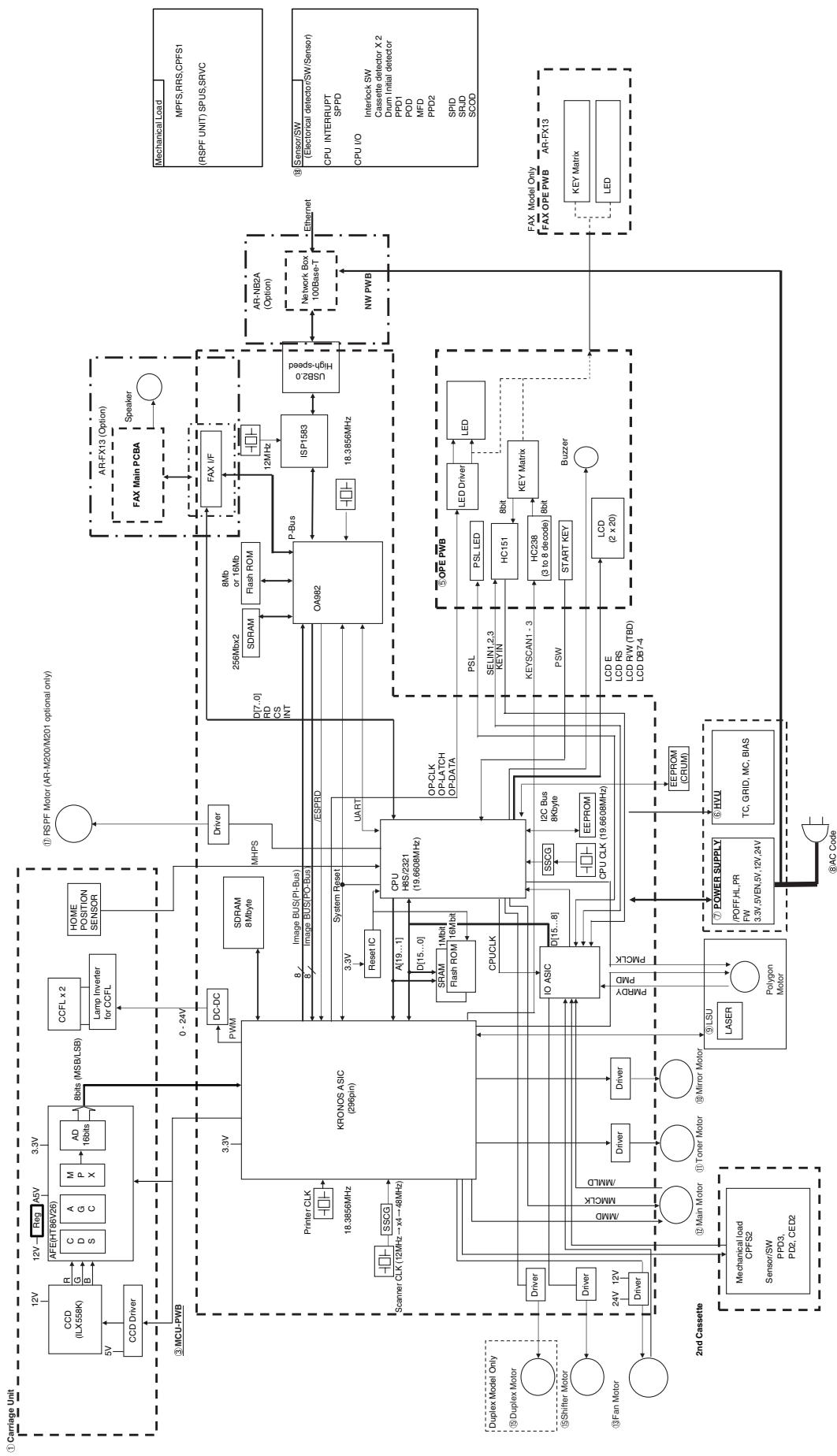
# [13] ELECTRICAL SECTION

## 1. Block diagram

### A. Overall block diagram (AR-203E/5420)

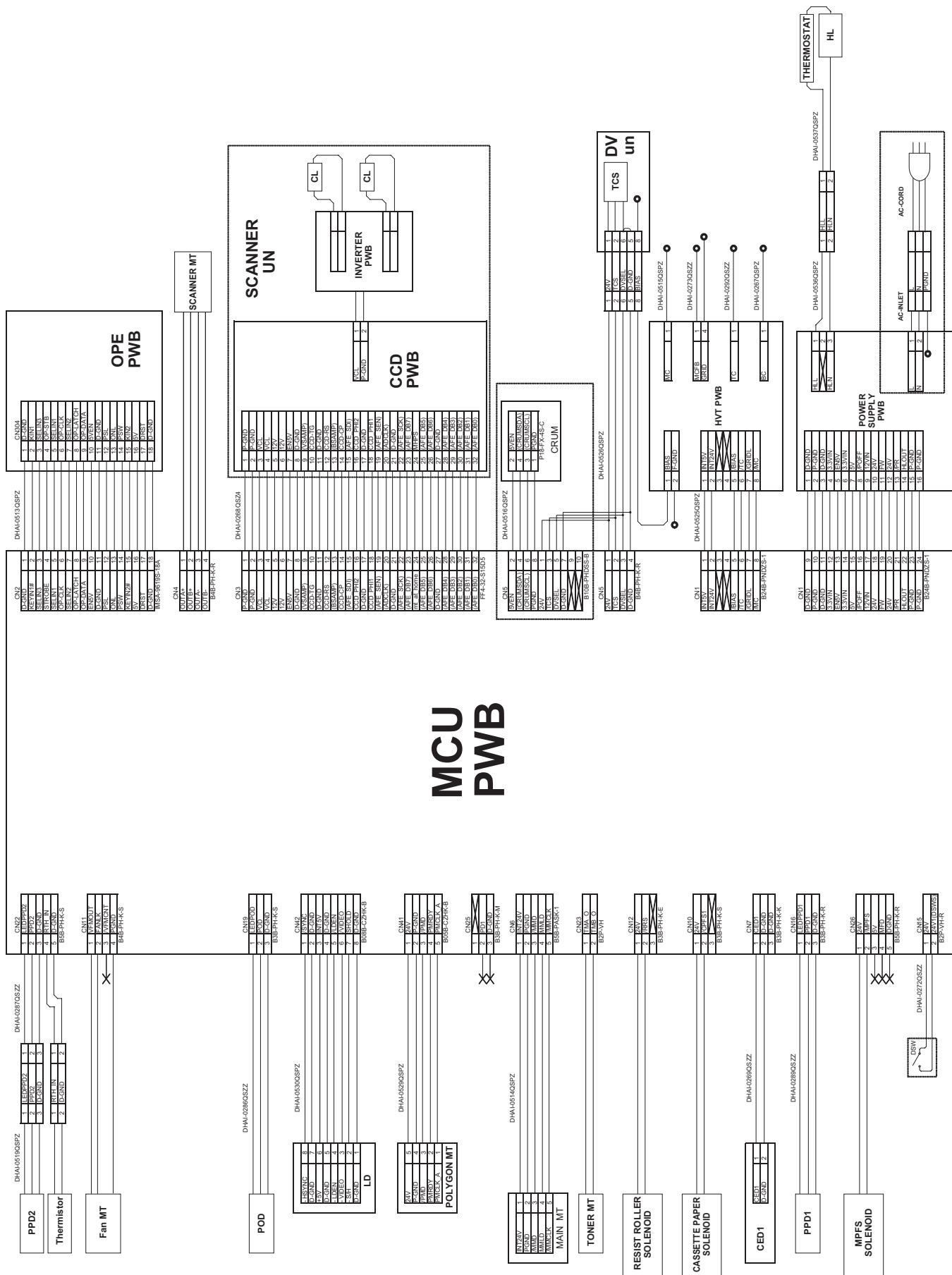


## B. Overall block diagram (AR-M200/M201)

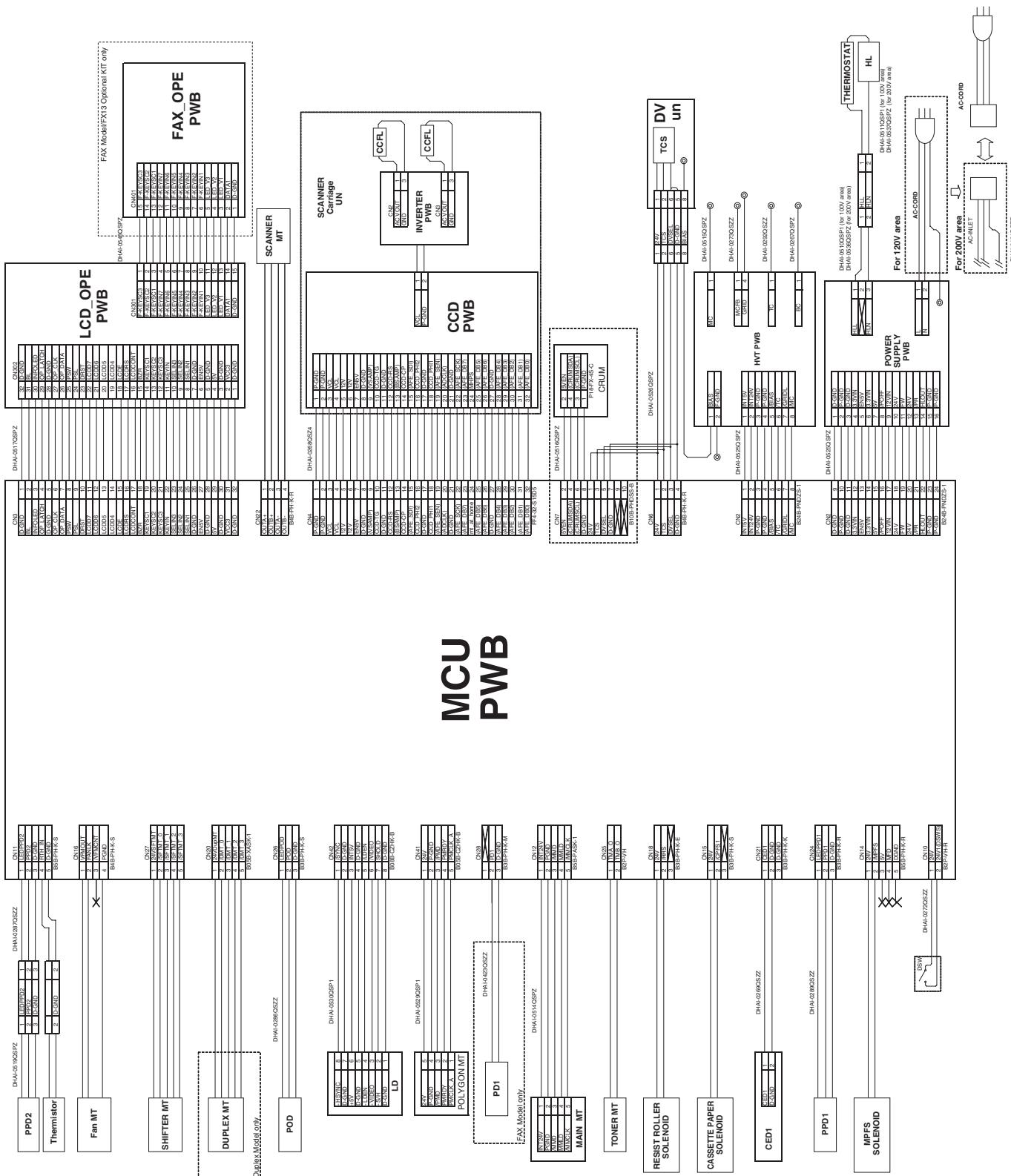


## 2. Actual wiring diagram

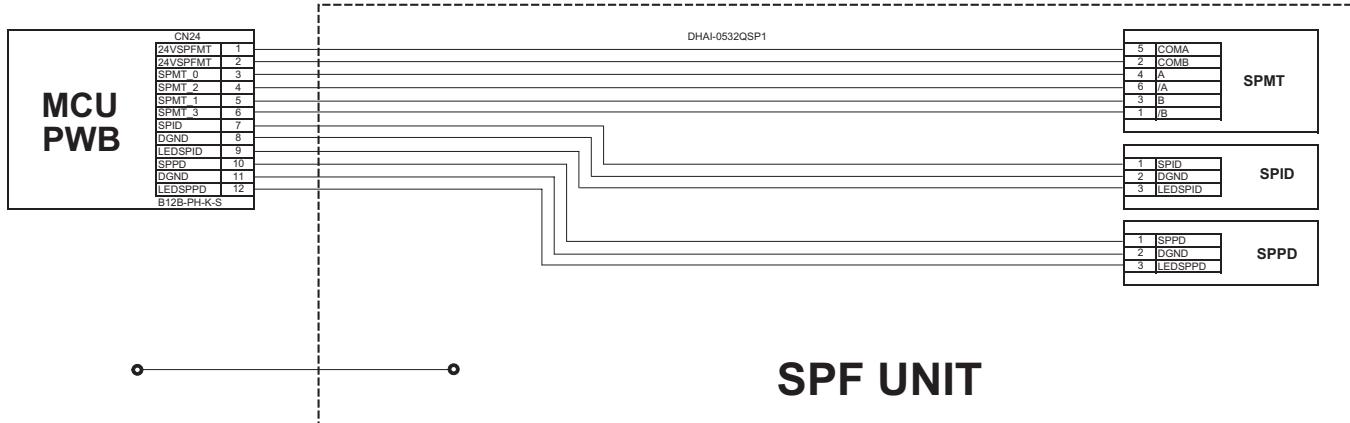
### A. MCU PWB (AR-203E/5420)



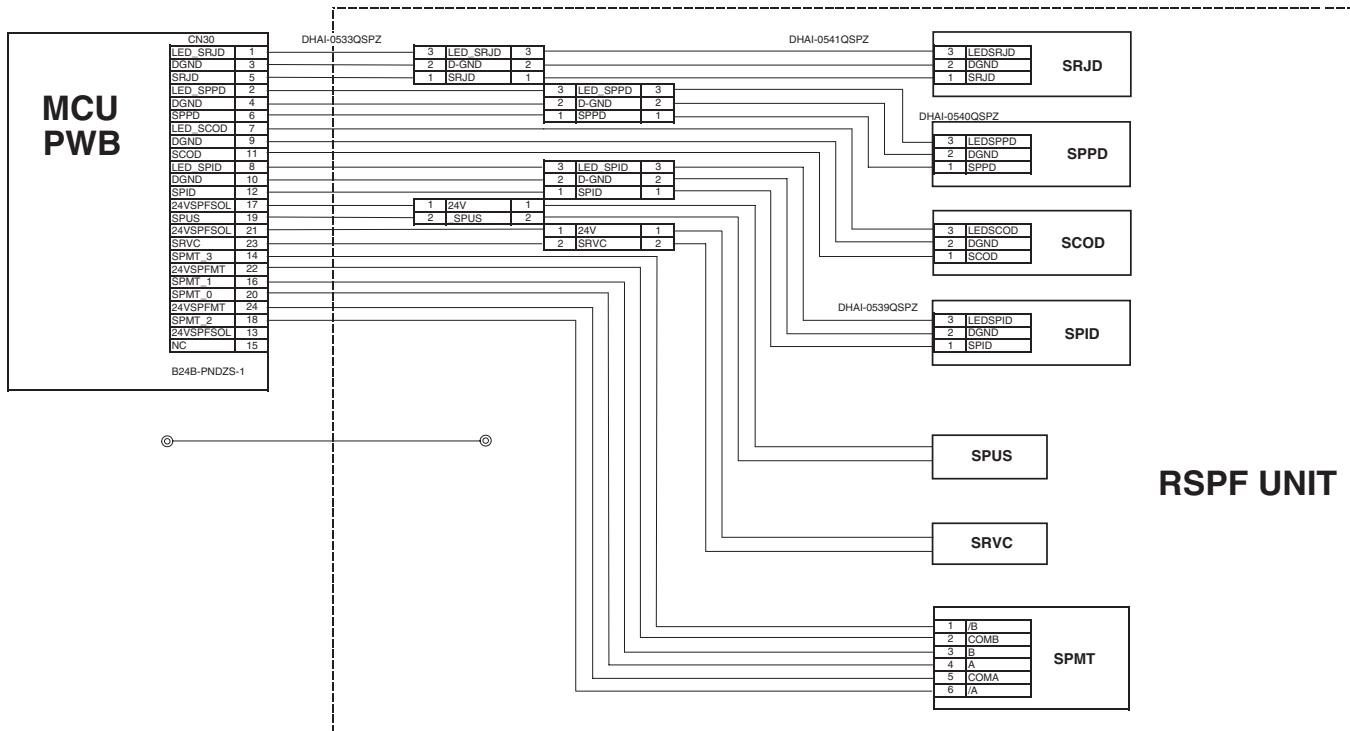
## B. MCU PWB (AR-M200/M201)



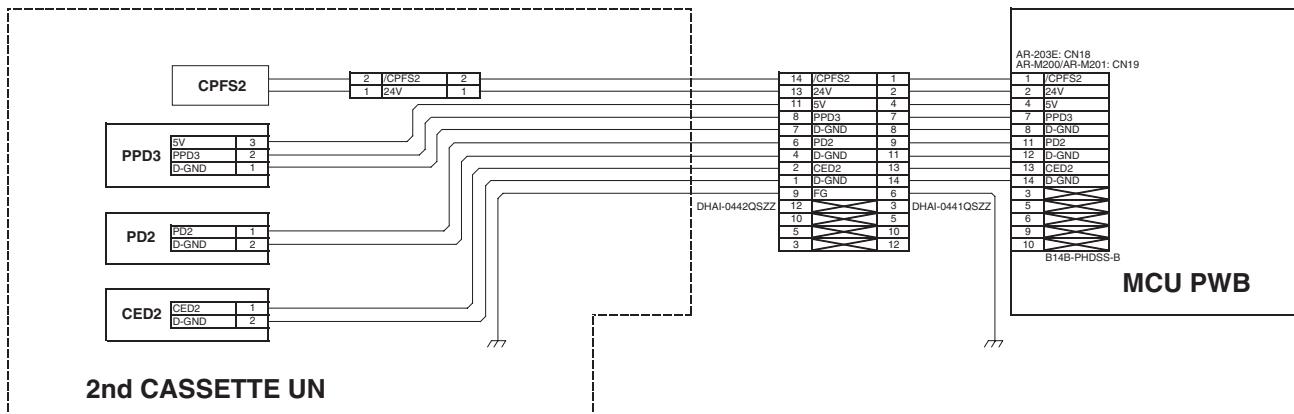
### **C. SPF unit (AR-203E optional only)**



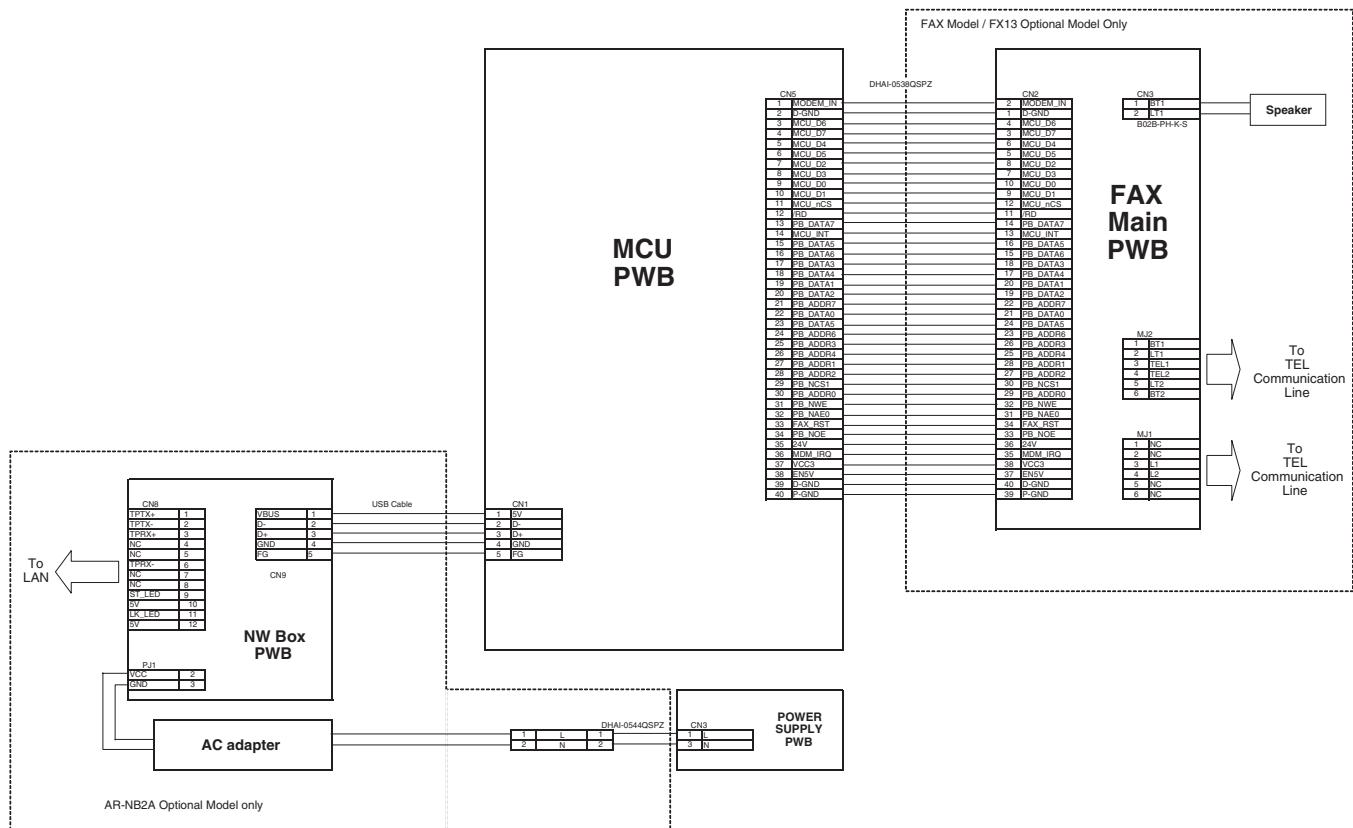
#### D. RSPF unit (AR-M200/M201 optional only)



#### E. 2nd cassette unit (AR-203E/M200/M201 optional only)



## F. Network box and FAX (AR-M200/M201 optional only)



### 3. Signal name list

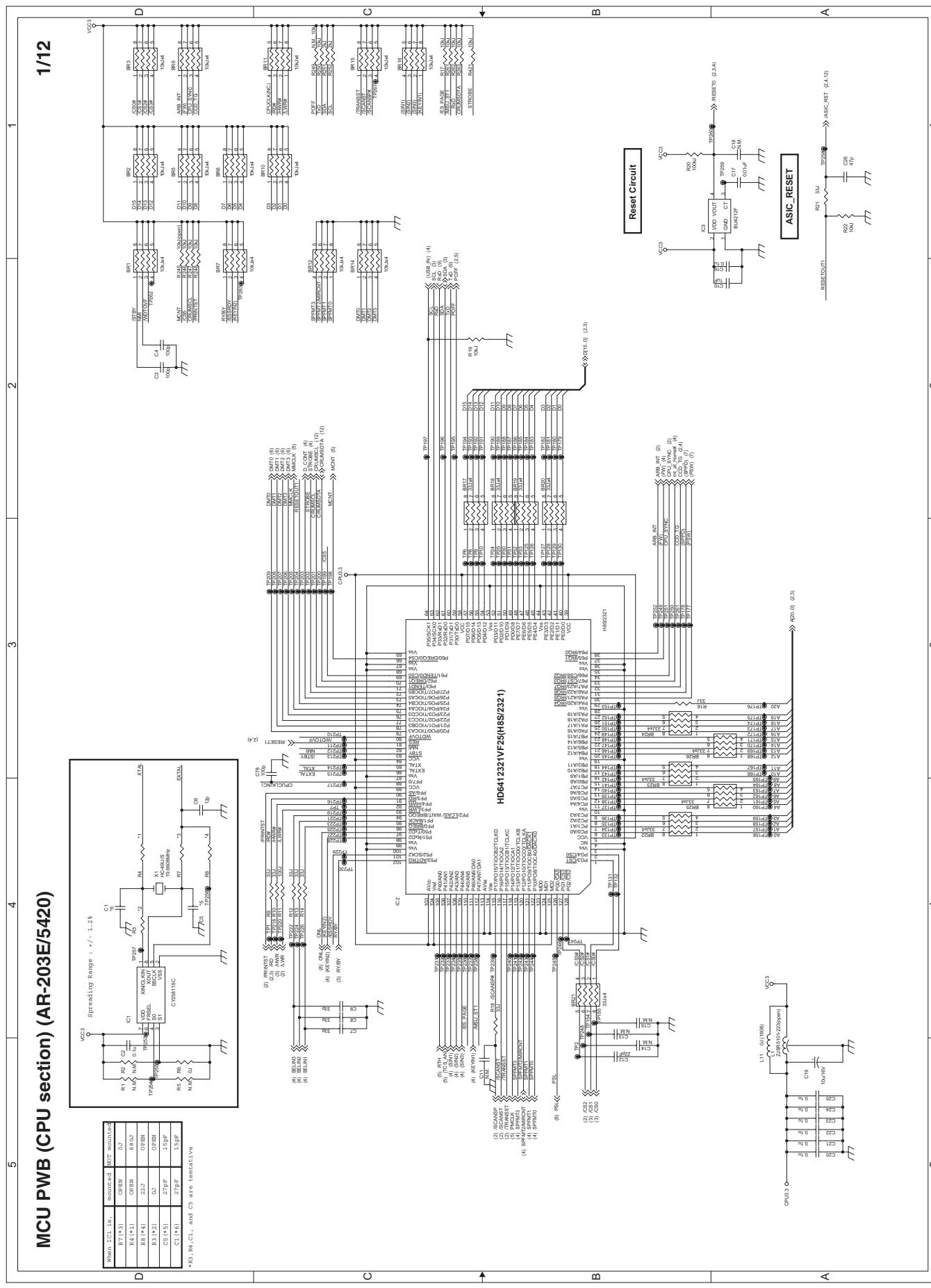
Signal name	Name	Function/Operation	Section
(ADCLK)	AFE	AFE control signal	Scanner unit section
(AFE_DB0)	AFE	Image scan data	Scanner unit section
(AFE_DB1)	AFE	Image scan data	Scanner unit section
(AFE_DB2)	AFE	Image scan data	Scanner unit section
(AFE_DB3)	AFE	Image scan data	Scanner unit section
(AFE_DB4)	AFE	Image scan data	Scanner unit section
(AFE_DB5)	AFE	Image scan data	Scanner unit section
(AFE_DB6)	AFE	Image scan data	Scanner unit section
(AFE_DB7)	AFE	Image scan data	Scanner unit section
(AFE_SCK)	AFE	AFE control signal	Scanner unit section
(AFE_SD1)	AFE	AFE serial data	Scanner unit section
(AFE_SEN)	AFE	AFE control signal	Scanner unit section
(BSAMP)	AFE	AFE control signal	Scanner unit section
(VSAMP)	AFE	AFE control signal	Scanner unit section
/BIAS	HV bias signal	HV bias drive	Process section
/CPFS1	1st CS pickup solenoid		Paper transport section
/CPFS2	2nd CS pickup solenoid		2nd cassette section
/DMT_0	DUP motor	DUP motor phase control	Duplex drive section
/DMT_1	DUP motor	DUP motor phase control	Duplex drive section
/DMT_2	DUP motor	DUP motor phase control	Duplex drive section
/DMT_3	DUP motor	DUP motor phase control	Duplex drive section
/FAX_RST	FAX PWB reset signal		FAX optional section
/GRIDL	HV grid signal	Main charger grid control	Process section
/LDEN	Laser	Laser circuit control signal	LSU
/MC	HV MC signal	Main charger control	Process section
/MDM_IRQ	FAX PWB interrupt		FAX optional section
/MMCLK	Main motor	Clock signal to the polygon motor	Main drive section
/MMD	Main motor	Polygon motor drive signal	Main drive section
/MPFS	Multi bypass solenoid		Paper transport section
/PMD	Polygon motor	Polygon motor drive signal	LSU
/POFF	Low voltage power	Output power control	Power section
/PR	Heater lamp	Power relay control	Power section

Signal name	Name	Function/Operation	Section
/RD	Control signal	MCU bus control signal	FAX optional section
/RRS	1st transport solenoid		Paper transport section
/RSV_SOL	Reverse solenoid		RSPF section
/SFTMT0	Shifter motor	Shifter motor phase control	Shifter motor section
/SFTMT1	Shifter motor	Shifter motor phase control	Shifter motor section
/SFTMT2	Shifter motor	Shifter motor phase control	Shifter motor section
/SFTMT3	Shifter motor	Shifter motor phase control	Shifter motor section
/SPUS	Paper feed solenoid		RSPF section
/SRVC	Reverse clutch		RSPF section
/SYNC	Laser	Horizontal sync signal from the LSU	LSU
/TC	HV TC signal	Transfer charger grid control	Process section
/VFCNT	Fan speed signal	Fan rotation speed control	Optical section
/VIDEO	Laser	Laser drive signal	LSU
BZR	Buzzer signal	Buzzer	Operation section
CCD_PHI1	CCD	CCD control signal	Scanner unit section
CCD_PHI2	CCD	CCD control signal	Scanner unit section
CCD-CP	CCD	CCD control signal	Scanner unit section
CCD-RS	CCD	CCD control signal	Scanner unit section
CCD-TG	CCD	CCD control signal	Scanner unit section
CED1	Machine cassette detection		Paper transport section
CED2	2nd CS cassette detection		2nd cassette section
DVSEL	Developing tank detection		Developing section
FANLK	Fusing fan	Fan lock detection signal	Optical section
FW	Low voltage power	Zero cross detection	Power section
HLOUT	Heater lamp	Heater lamp control	Power section
KEYIN	Key scan input	Key detection control	Operation section
KEYSC1	Key scan output	Key scan output	Operation section
KEYSC2	Key scan output	Key scan output	Operation section
KEYSC3	Key scan output	Key scan output	Operation section
LCDCON	LCD control signal	Signal for LCD	Operation section
LCDDB4	LCD data signal	Signal for LCD	Operation section
LCDDB5	LCD data signal	Signal for LCD	Operation section
LCDDB6	LCD data signal	Signal for LCD	Operation section
LCDDB7	LCD data signal	Signal for LCD	Operation section
LCDE	LCD control signal	Signal for LCD	Operation section
LCDRS	LCD control signal	Signal for LCD	Operation section
LEDPOD	POD sensor power		Paper exit section
LEDPPD1	PPD sensor power		Paper transport section
LEDPPD2	PPD2 sensor power		Fusing section
LEDSCOD	SCOD sensor power		RSPF section
LEDSPID	SPID sensor power		RSPF section
LEDSPID	SPID sensor power		SPF section
LEDSPPD	SPPD sensor power		RSPF section
LEDSPPD	SPPD sensor power		SPF section
LEDSRJD	SRJD sensor power		RSPF section
MCU_D0	Data signal	MCU bus control signal	FAX optional section
MCU_D1	Data signal	MCU bus control signal	FAX optional section
MCU_D2	Data signal	MCU bus control signal	FAX optional section
MCU_D3	Data signal	MCU bus control signal	FAX optional section
MCU_D4	Data signal	MCU bus control signal	FAX optional section
MCU_D5	Data signal	MCU bus control signal	FAX optional section
MCU_D6	Data signal	MCU bus control signal	FAX optional section
MCU_D7	Data signal	MCU bus control signal	FAX optional section
MCU_INT	MCU interrupt	MCU bus control signal	FAX optional section
MCU_NCS	Control signal	MCU bus control signal	FAX optional section
MHPS	MHPS sensor	Carriage HP detection	Optical section
MMLD	Main motor	Polygon motor ON/OFF detection signal	Main drive section
MODEM_IN	FAX connection detection signal		FAX optional section
ONL	Online LED		Operation section
OP_CLK	LED driver control		Operation section
OP-DATA	LED driver control		Operation section
OP-LATCH	LED driver control		Operation section
OUTA-	Scanner motor	Scanner motor phase control	Optical drive section
OUTA+	Scanner motor	Scanner motor phase control	Optical drive section

Signal name	Name	Function/Operation	Section
OUTB-	Scanner motor	Scanner motor phase control	Optical drive section
OUTB+	Scanner motor	Scanner motor phase control	Optical drive section
PB_ADDR0	Address signal	Peripheral bus control signal	FAX optional section
PB_ADDR1	Address signal	Peripheral bus control signal	FAX optional section
PB_ADDR2	Address signal	Peripheral bus control signal	FAX optional section
PB_ADDR3	Address signal	Peripheral bus control signal	FAX optional section
PB_ADDR4	Address signal	Peripheral bus control signal	FAX optional section
PB_ADDR5	Address signal	Peripheral bus control signal	FAX optional section
PB_ADDR6	Address signal	Peripheral bus control signal	FAX optional section
PB_ADDR7	Address signal	Peripheral bus control signal	FAX optional section
PB_DATA0	Data signal	Peripheral bus control signal	FAX optional section
PB_DATA1	Data signal	Peripheral bus control signal	FAX optional section
PB_DATA2	Data signal	Peripheral bus control signal	FAX optional section
PB_DATA3	Data signal	Peripheral bus control signal	FAX optional section
PB_DATA4	Data signal	Peripheral bus control signal	FAX optional section
PB_DATA5	Data signal	Peripheral bus control signal	FAX optional section
PB_DATA6	Data signal	Peripheral bus control signal	FAX optional section
PB_DATA7	Data signal	Peripheral bus control signal	FAX optional section
PB_NAE0	Control signal	Peripheral bus control signal	FAX optional section
PB_NCS1	Control signal	Peripheral bus control signal	FAX optional section
PB_NOE	Control signal	Peripheral bus control signal	FAX optional section
PB_NWE	Control signal	Peripheral bus control signal	FAX optional section
PD1	PD SW sensor	1st CS paper width sensor	Paper transport section
PD2	PD2 SW sensor	2nd CS paper width detection	2nd cassette section
PMCLK_A	Polygon motor	Clock signal to the polygon motor	LSU
PMRDY	Polygon motor	Polygon motor ON/OFF detection signal	LSU
POD	POD sensor	Paper transport detection	Paper exit section
PPD1	PPD sensor	Paper transport detection	Paper transport section
PPD2	PPD2 sensor	Paper transport detection	Fusing section
PPD3	PPD3 sensor	2nd CS paper transport detection	2nd cassette section
PSL	Power save LED		Operation section
PSW	Start button control		Operation section
RTH_IN	Thermistor	Fusing section thermistor temperature detection	Fusing section
SCOD	SCOD sensor	RSPF cover open sensor	RSPF section
SELIN1	Select signal	HC151 select signal	Operation section
SELIN2	Select signal	HC151 select signal	Operation section
SELIN3	Select signal	HC151 select signal	Operation section
SHOLD	Laser	Laser APC signal	LSU
SPID	SPID sensor	RSPF UN paper entry sensor	RSPF section
SPID	SPID sensor	SPF UN paper entry sensor	SPF section
SPMT_0	RSPF motor	RSPF motor phase control	RSPF section
SPMT_0	SPF motor	SPF motor phase control	SPF section
SPMT_1	RSPF motor	RSPF motor phase control	RSPF section
SPMT_1	SPF motor	SPF motor phase control	SPF section
SPMT_2	RSPF motor	RSPF motor phase control	RSPF section
SPMT_2	SPF motor	SPF motor phase control	SPF section
SPMT_3	RSPF motor	RSPF motor phase control	RSPF section
SPMT_3	SPF motor	SPF motor phase control	SPF section
SPPD	SPPD sensor	RSPF transport detection	RSPF section
SPPD	SPPD sensor	SPF transport detection	SPF section
SRJD	SRJD sensor	RSPF paper exit sensor	RSPF section
STROBE	LED driver control		Operation section
TCS	Toner sensor	Toner quantity detection	Developing section
TMA_O	Toner motor	Toner motor phase control	Toner motor drive section
TMA_O	Toner motor	Toner motor phase control	Toner motor drive section
TMB_O	Toner motor	Toner motor phase control	Toner motor drive section
TMB_O	Toner motor	Toner motor phase control	Toner motor drive section
USB +D	USB signal		USB section
USB -D	USB signal		USB section
VCL	Copy lamp	Copy lamp control	Scanner unit section
VFMOUT	Fusing fan	Fan drive signal	Optical section

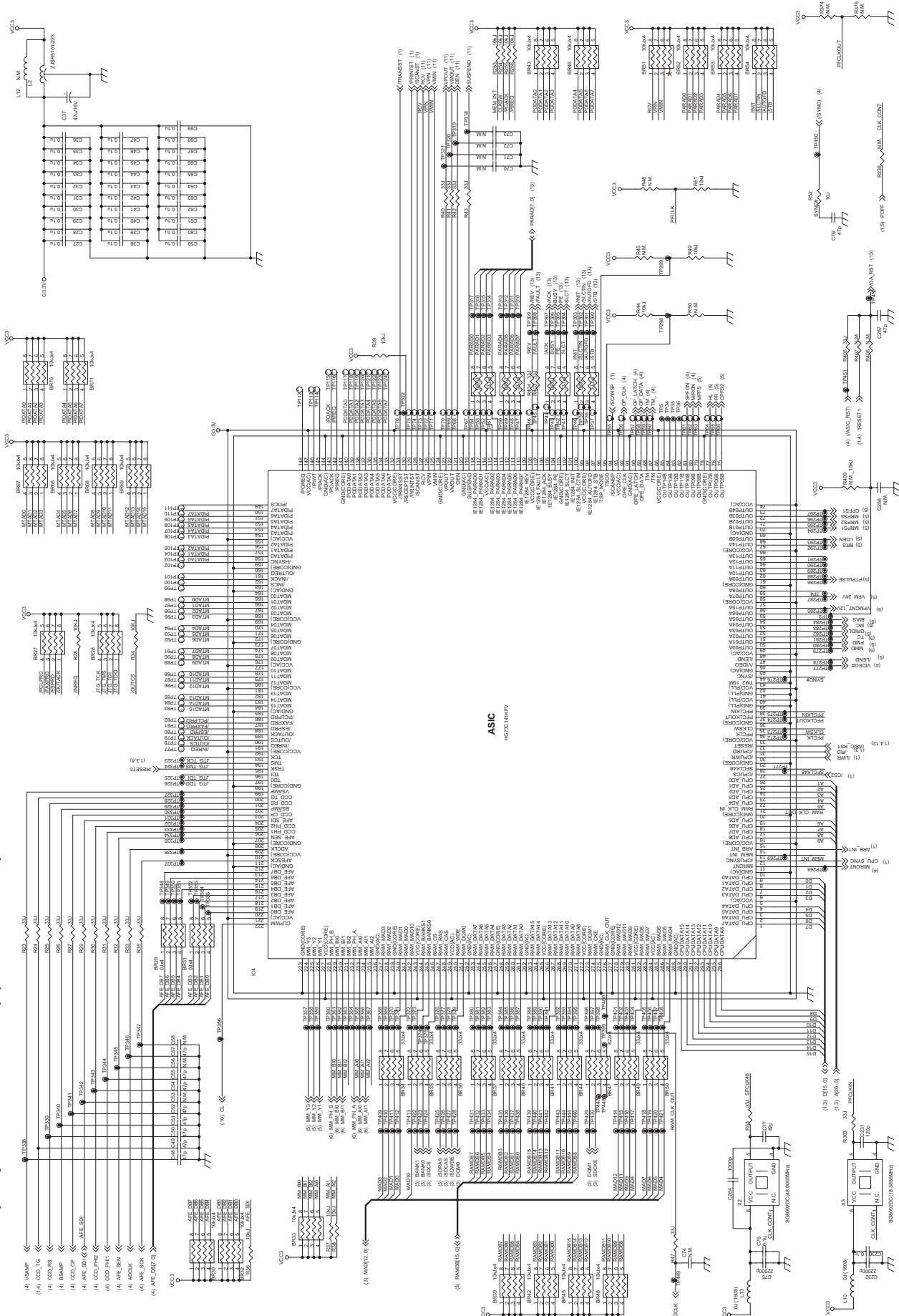
#### 4. Circuit diagram

## A. MCU PWB (AR-203E/5420)

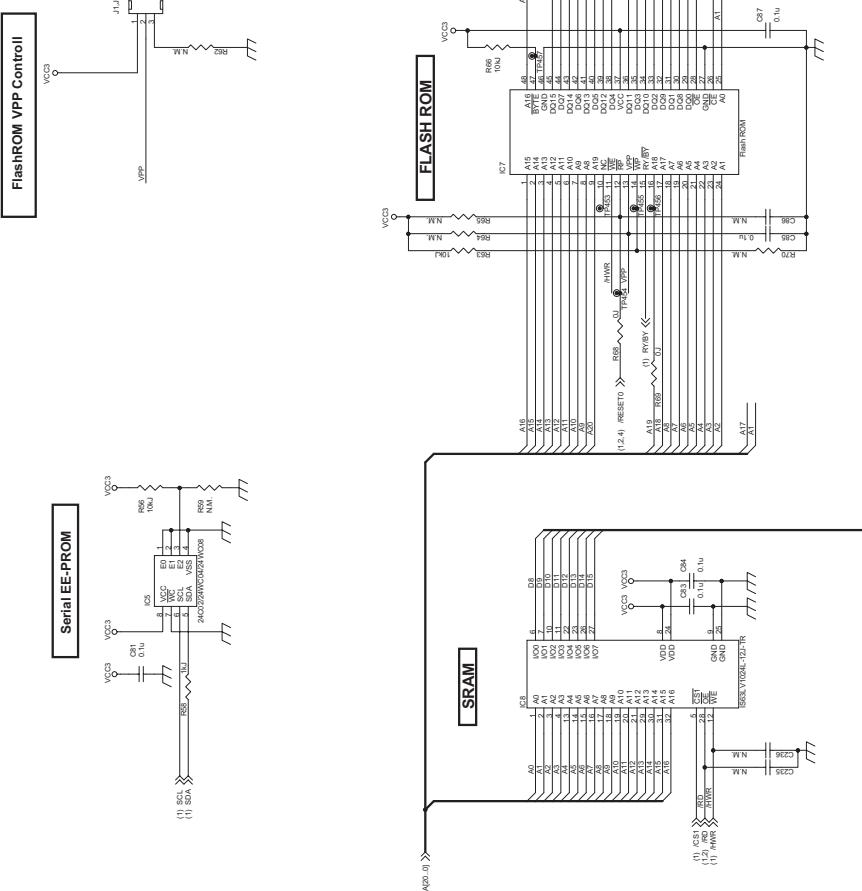


MCU PWB (Graphic\_ASIC section) (AR-203E/5420)

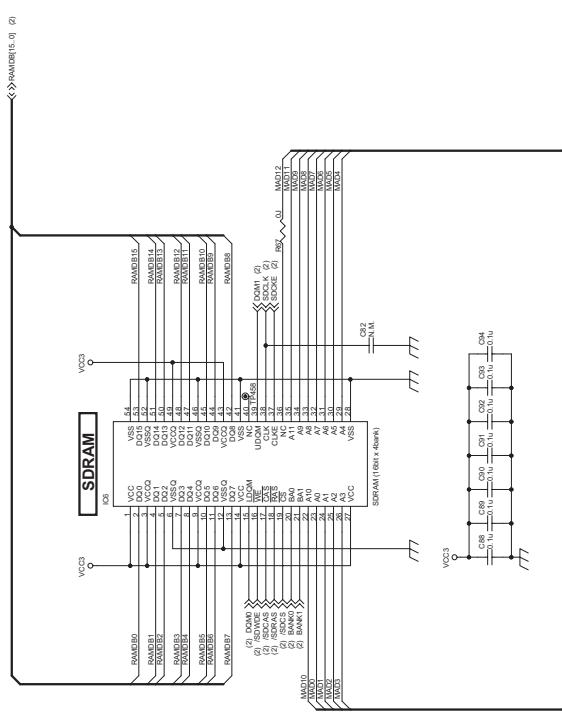
2/12



MCU PWB (Memory section) (AR-203E/5420)

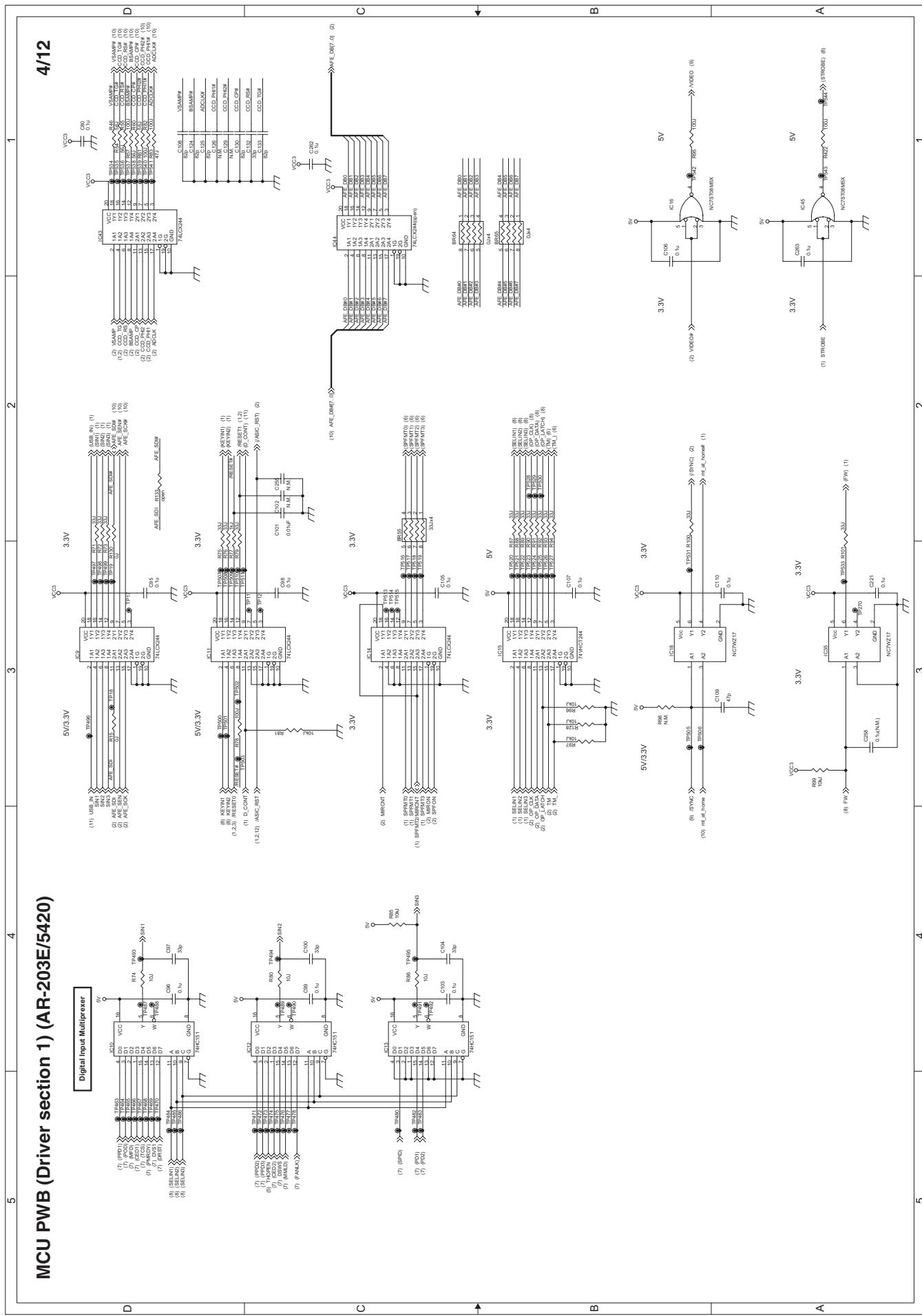


3/12



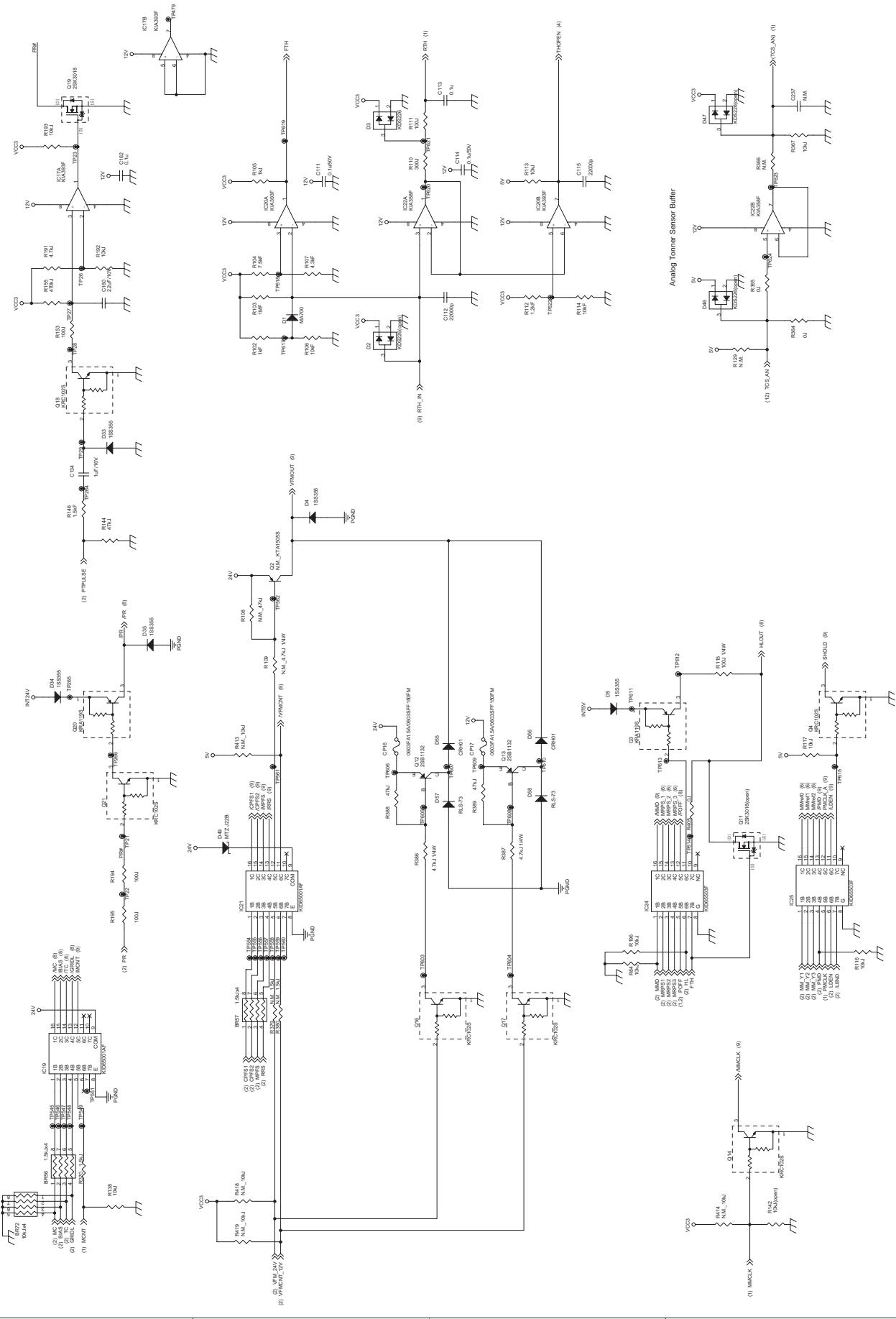
ICOS	VendorID/Type
123MHz/2Mx16bit4bit4bit4bit	K4S28 (652) LC60
64MHz/1MHz 64bit4bit4bit4bit	K4S64 (652) LC75

MCU PWB (Driver section 1) (AR-203E/5420)



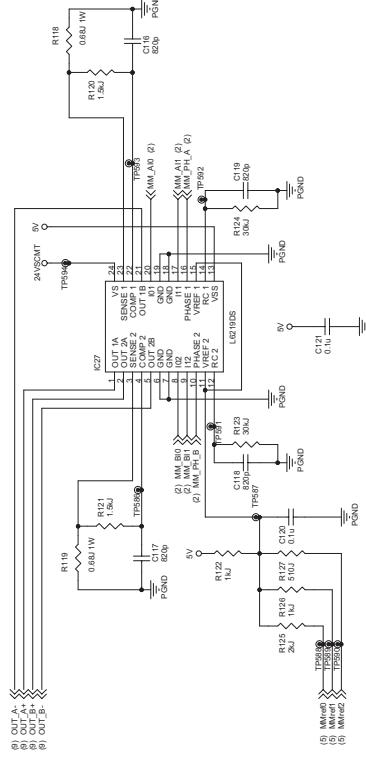
MCU PWB (Driver section 2) (AR-203E/5420)

5/12



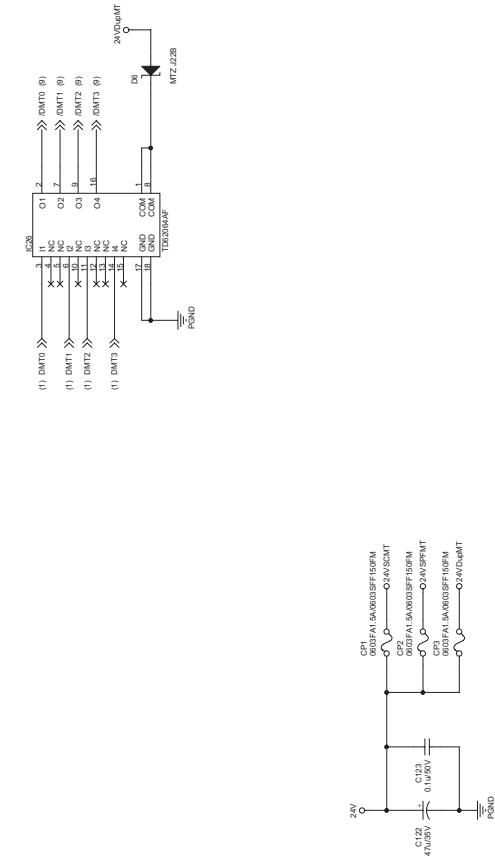
## MCU PWB (Driver section 3) (AR-203E/5420)

### Scanner Motor Driver

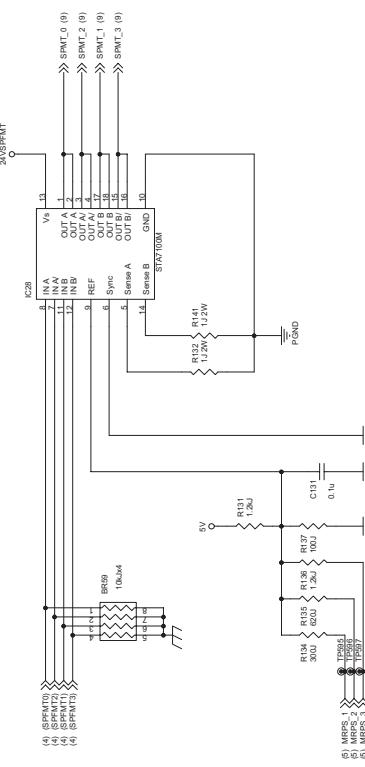


### Duplex Motor Driver

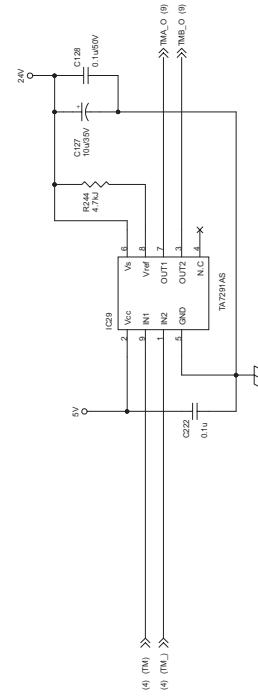
For AR-2030 Model Only



### SDF Motor Driver

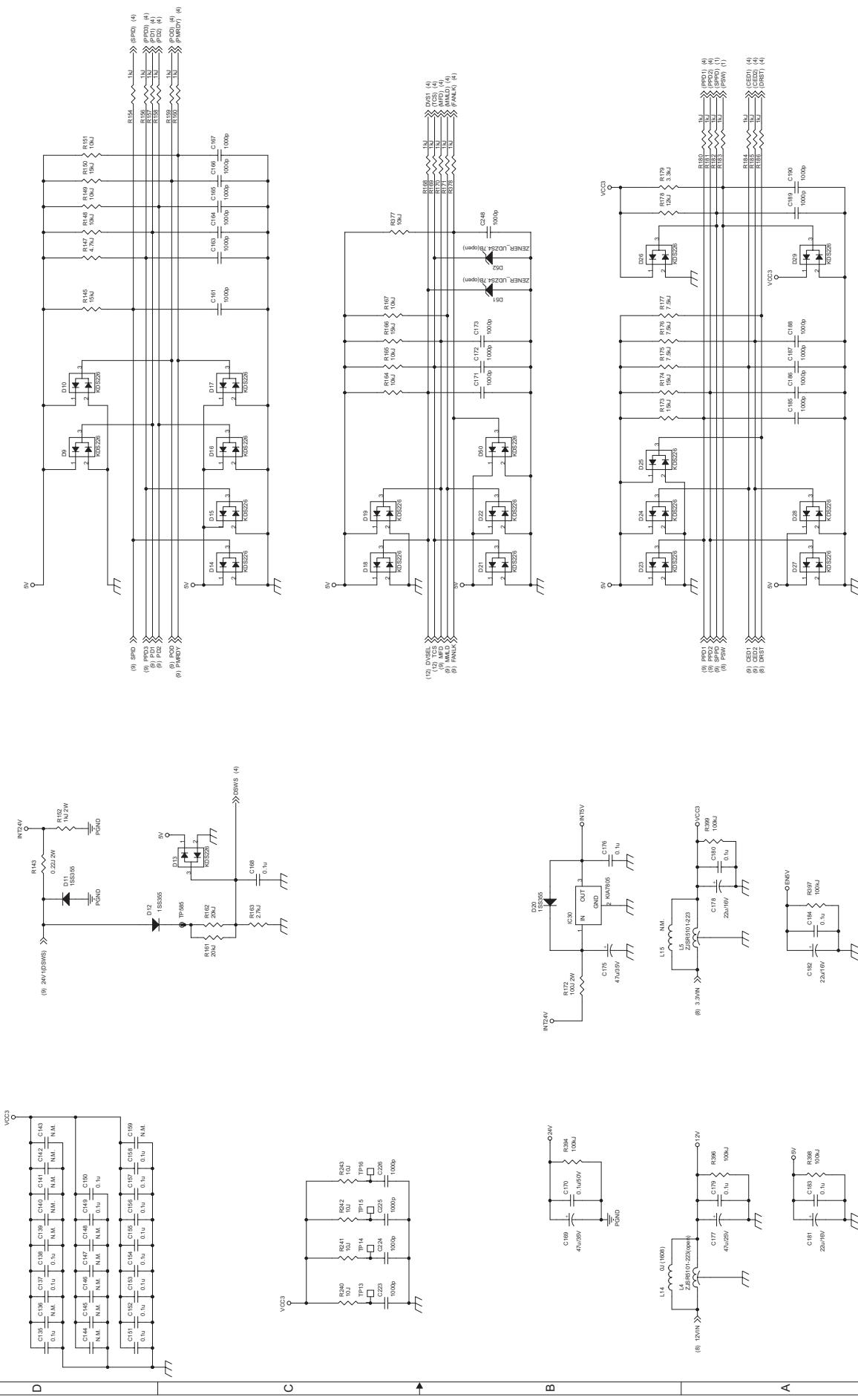


### Tonner Motor Driver



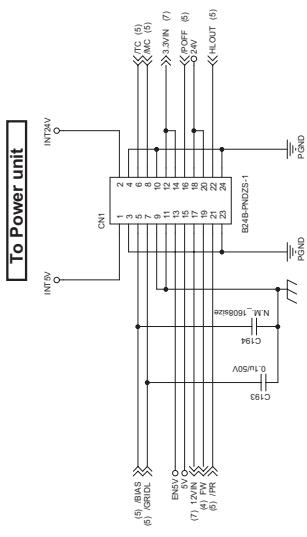
MCU PWB (Noise filter/Pull-up section) (AR-203E/5420)

7/12

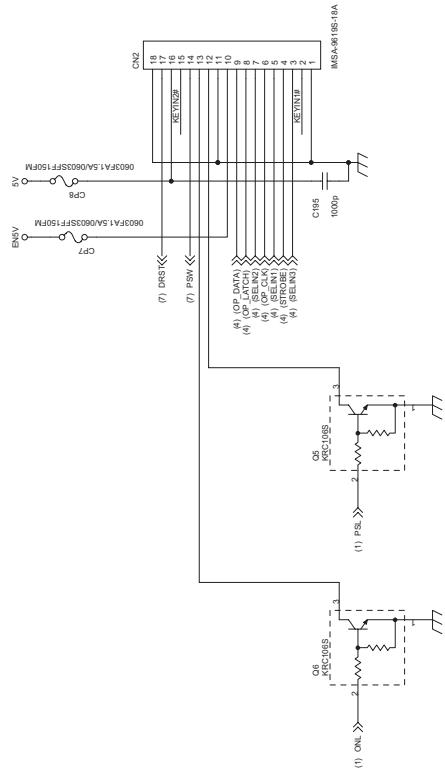


MCU PWB (Connector section 1) (AR-203E/5420)

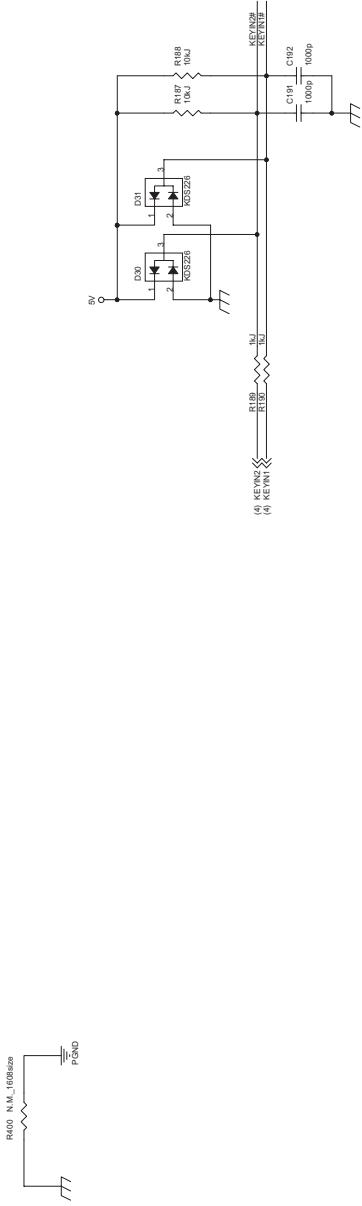
8/12



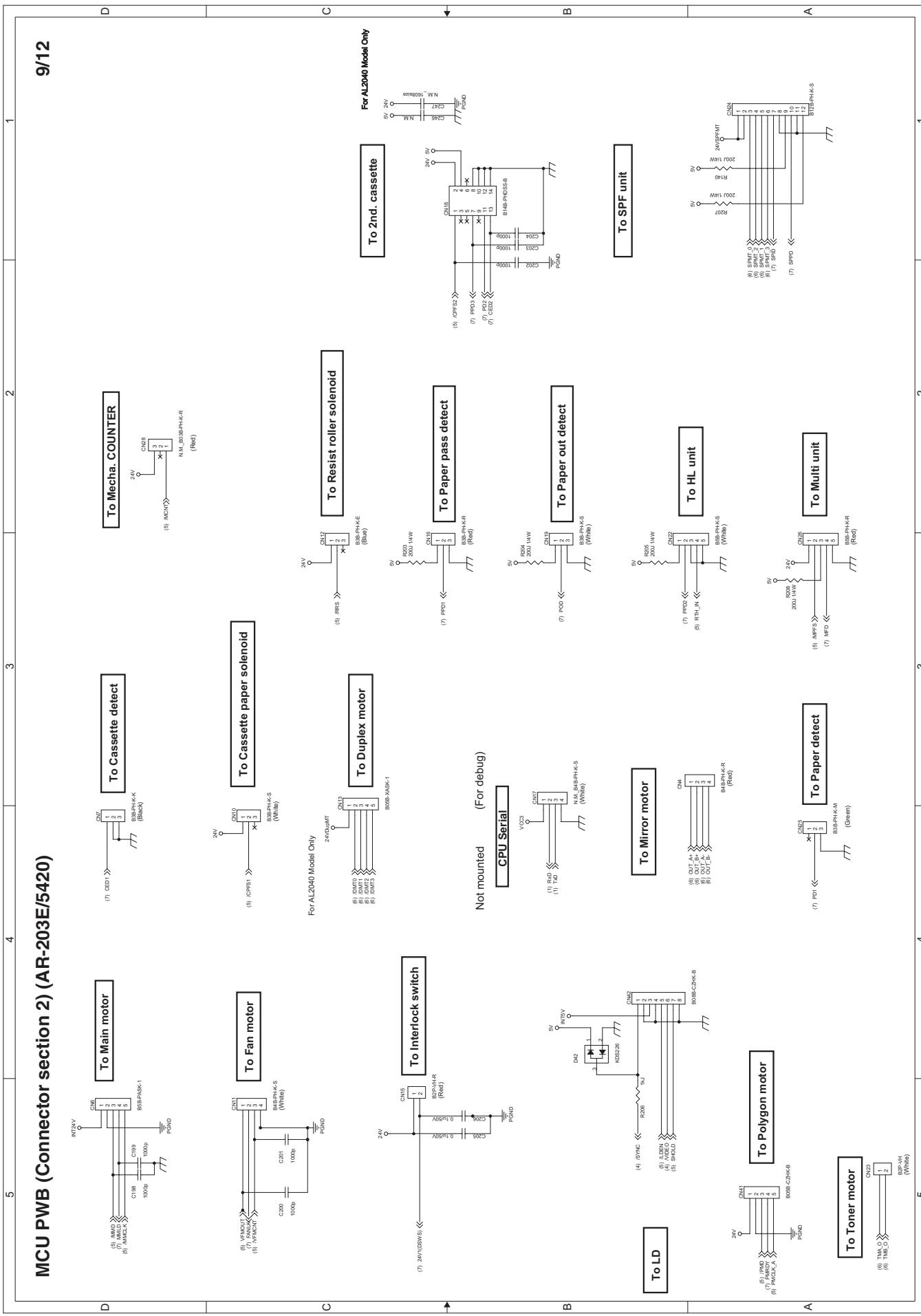
To Power unit



To Operational PWB

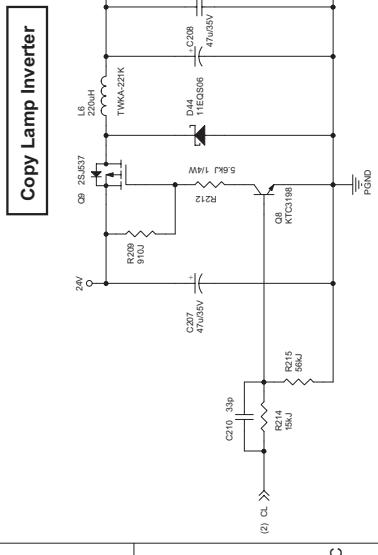


## MCU PWB (Connector section 2) (AR-203E/5420)



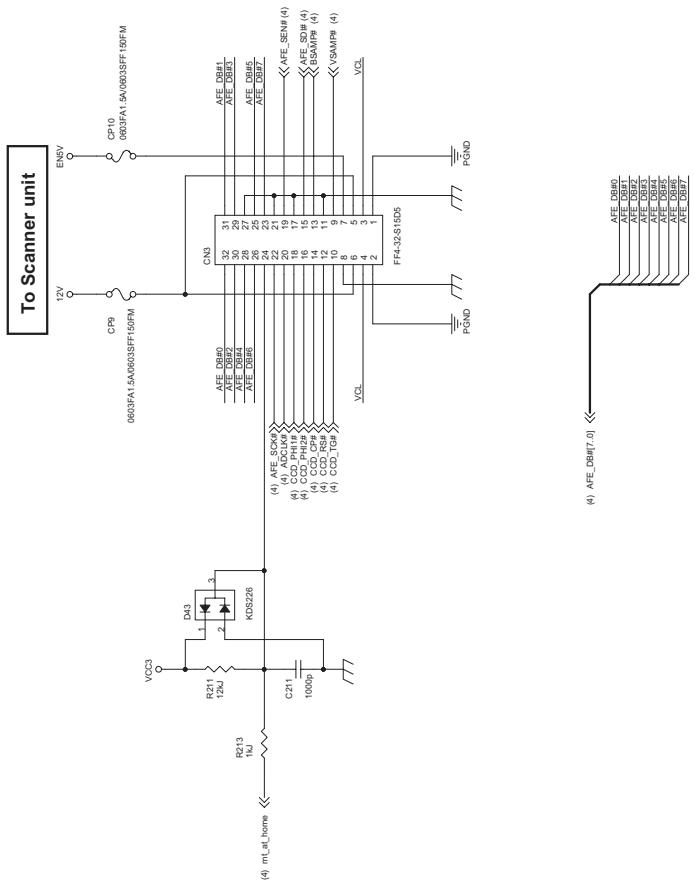
MCU PWB (Scanner I/F section) (AR-203E/5420)

MCU PWB (Scanner I/F section) (AR-203E/5420)



Copy Lamp Inverter

Elo Scanner Unit

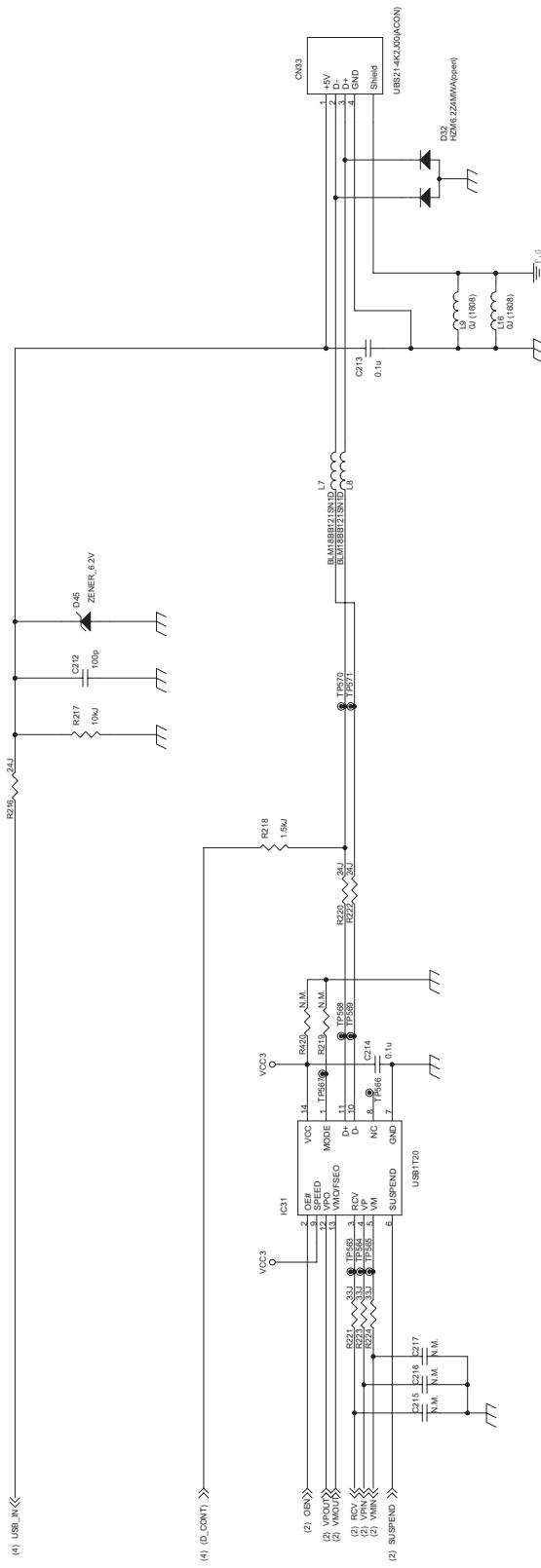


Elo Scanner Unit

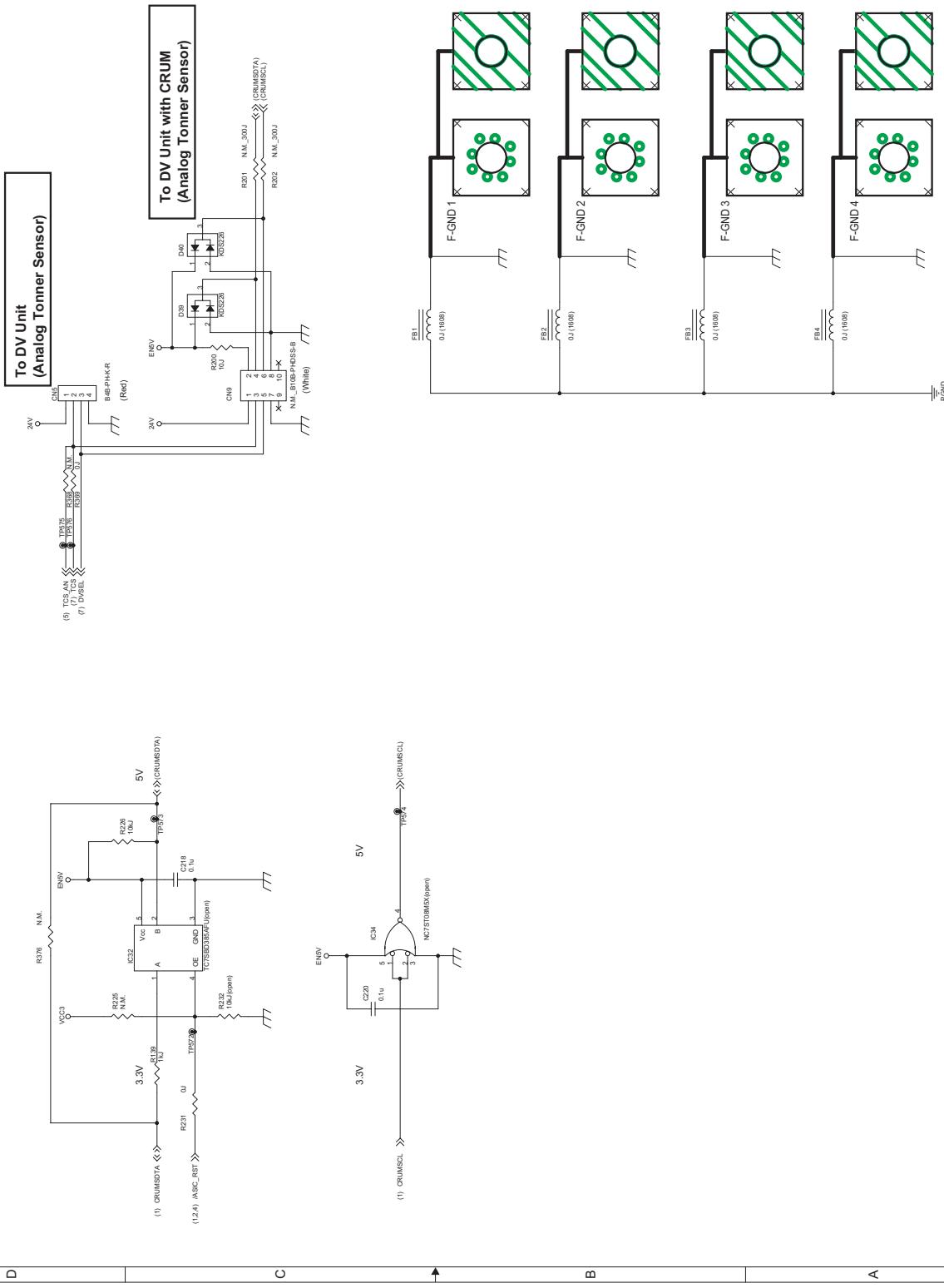
10/12

MCU PWB (USB2.0 (FULL) I/F section) (AR-203E only)

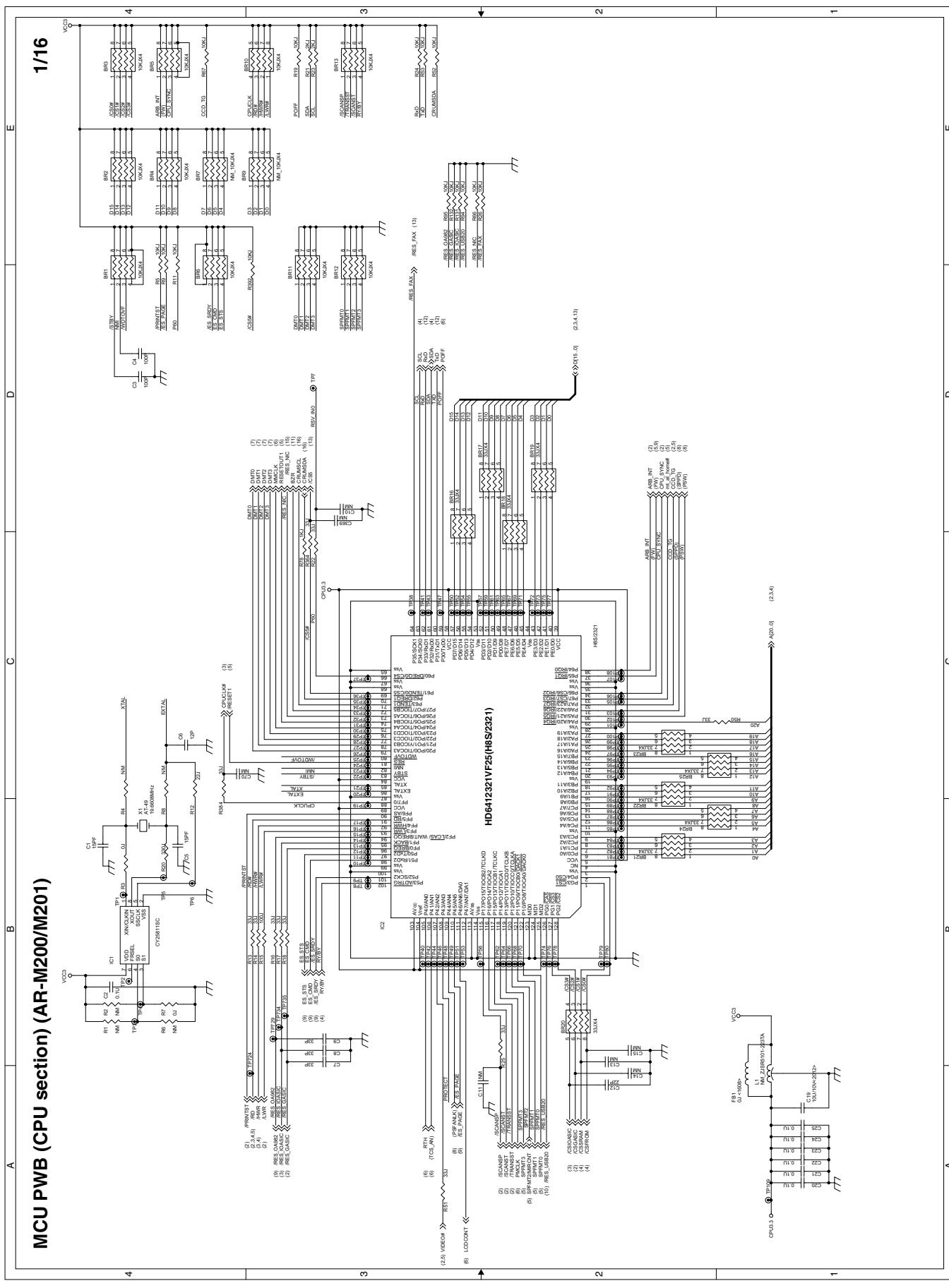
11/12



MCU PWB (CRUM I/F section) (AR-203E/5420)

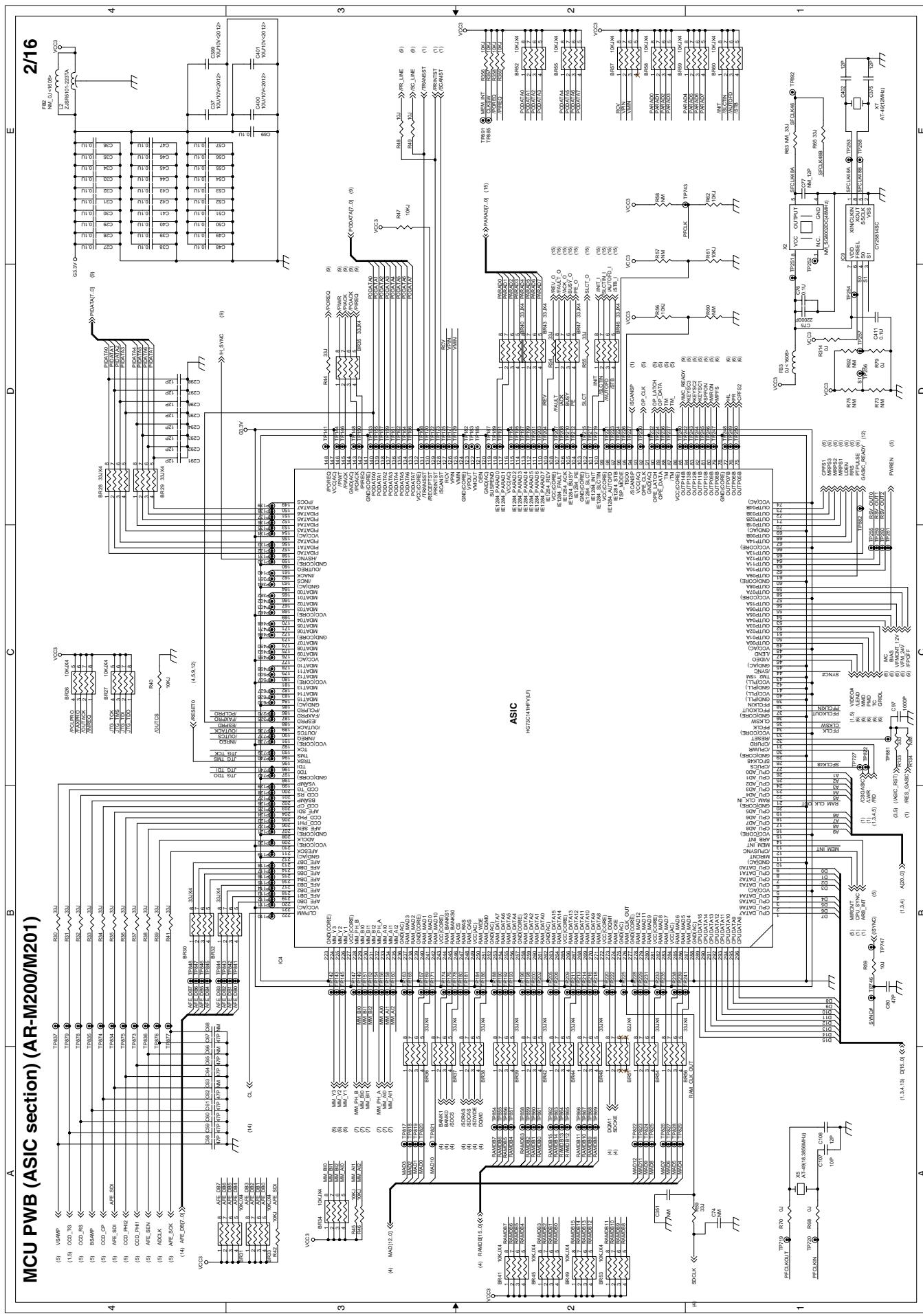


## B. MCU PWB (AR-M200/M201)

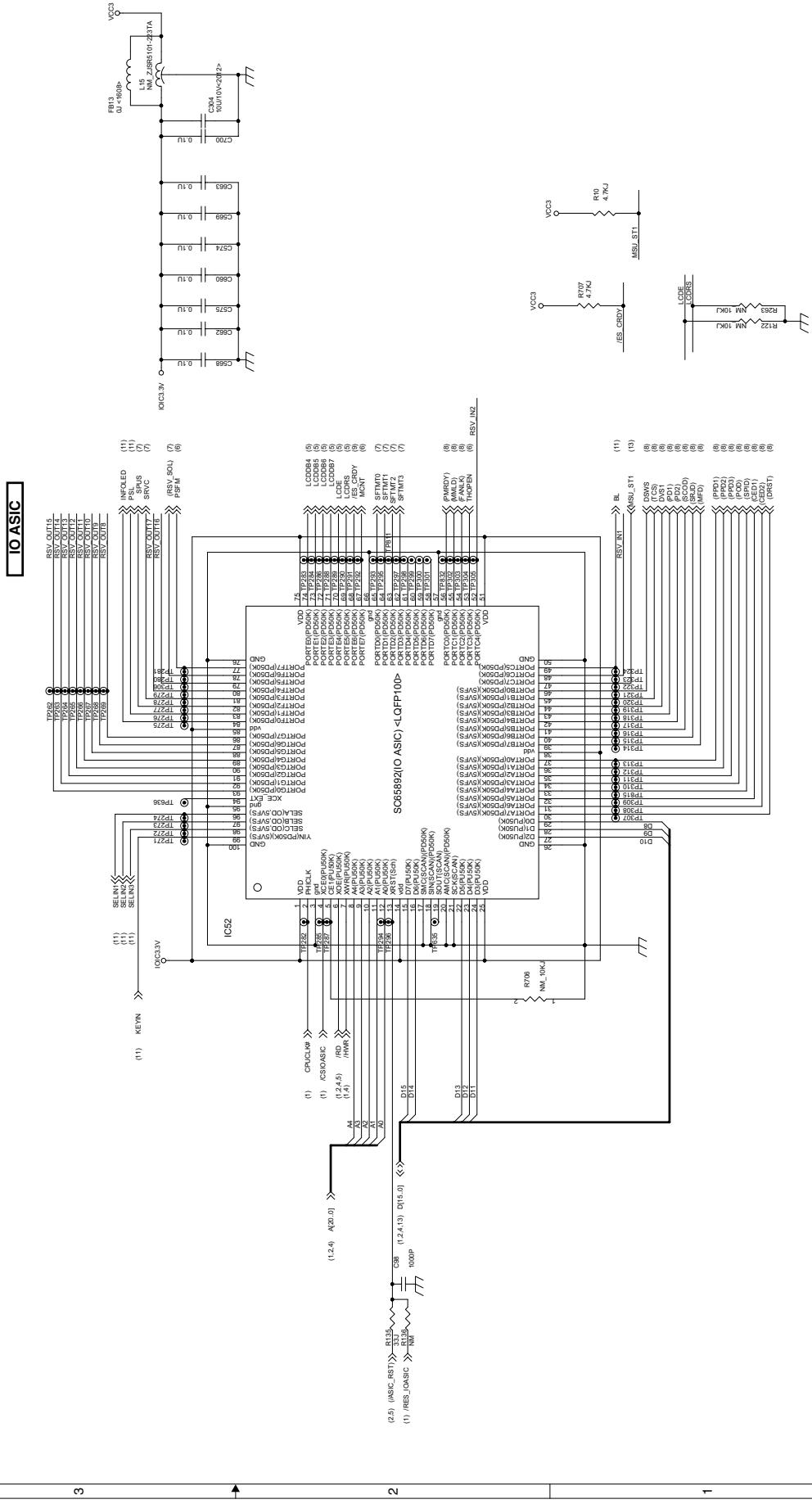


MCU PWB (ASIC section) (AR-M200/M201)

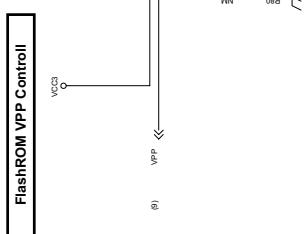
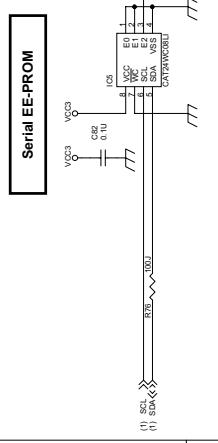
2/16



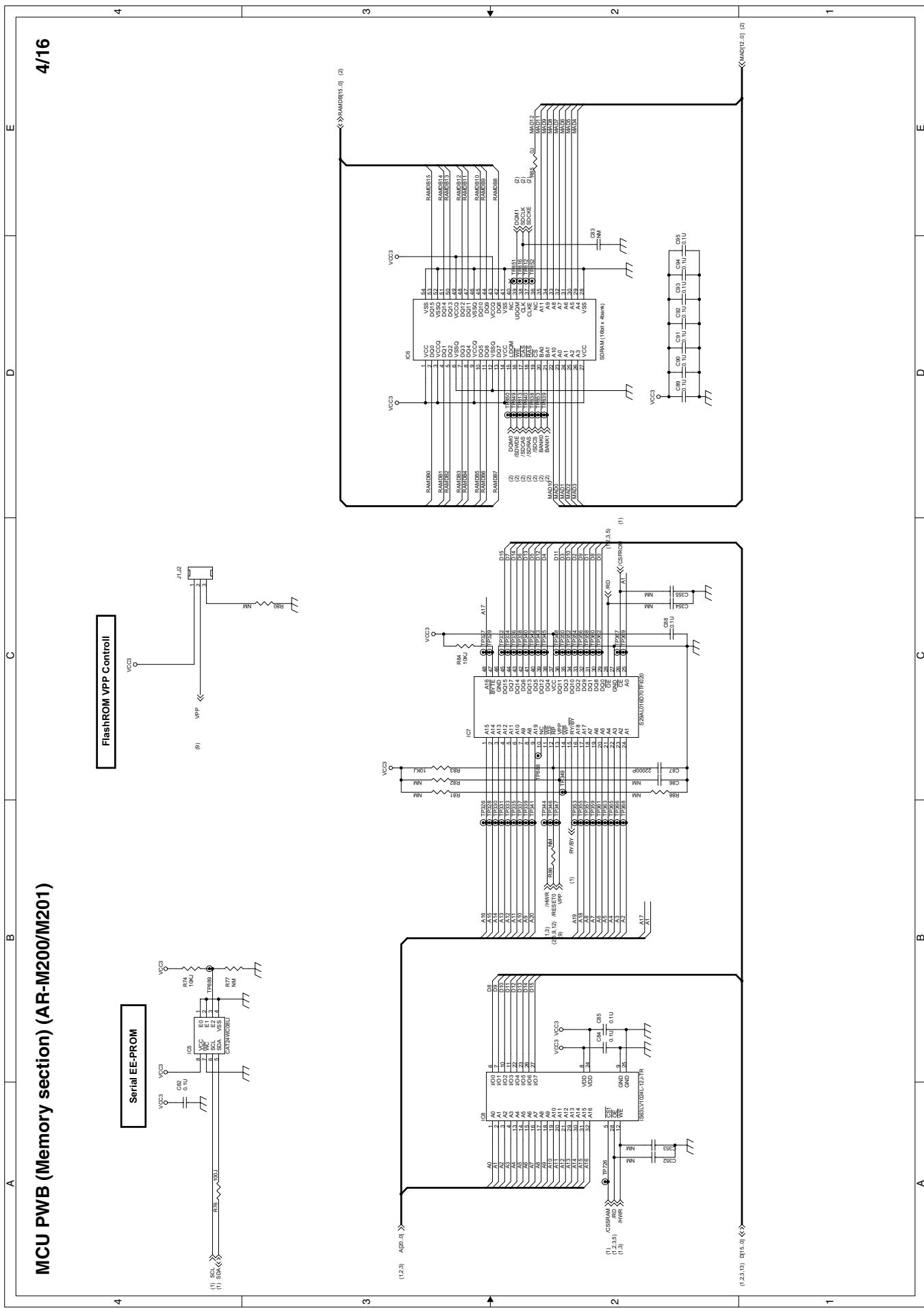
MCU PWB (I/O ASIC section) (AR-M200/M201)



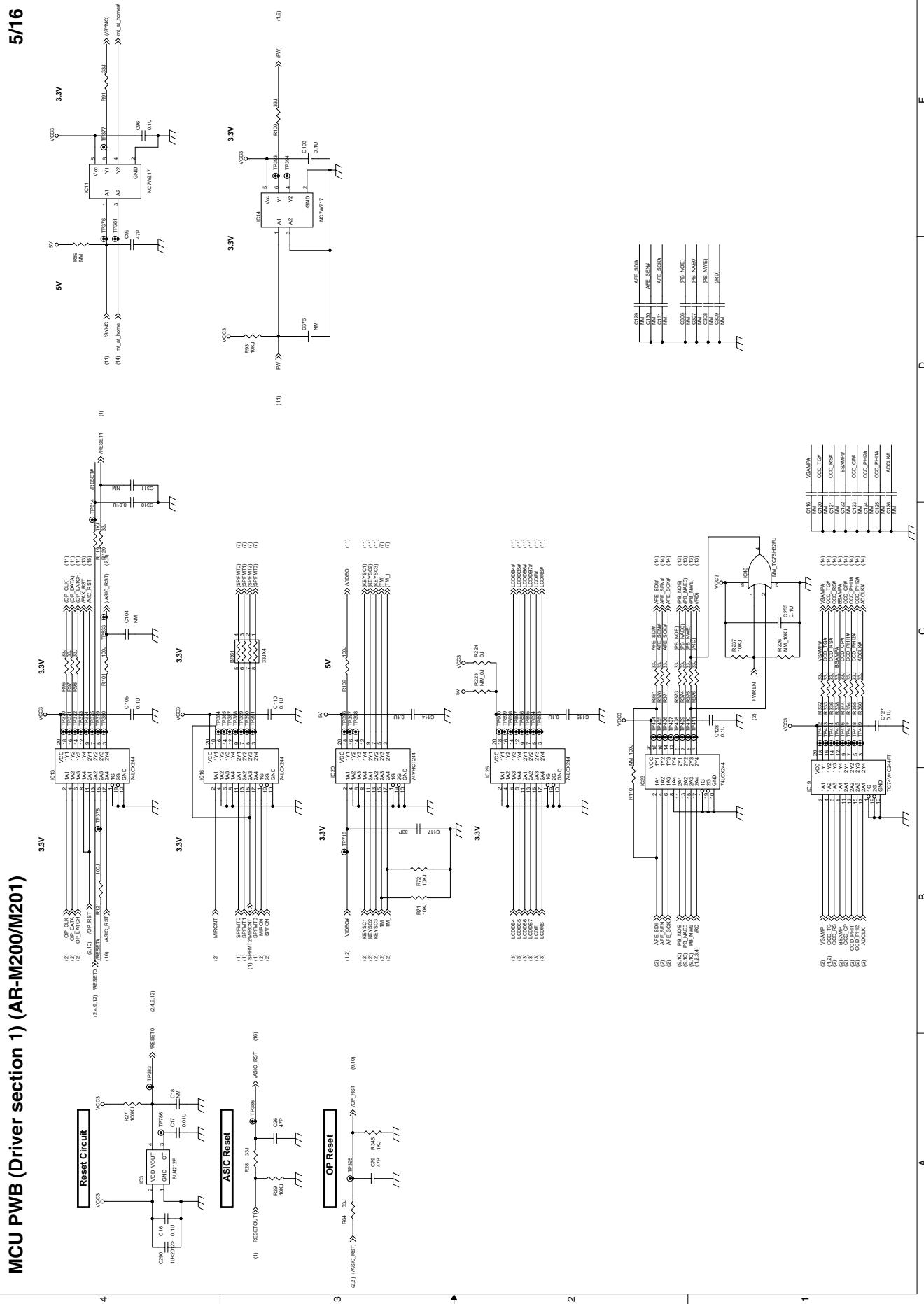
MCU PWB (Memory section) (AR-M200/M201)



4/16

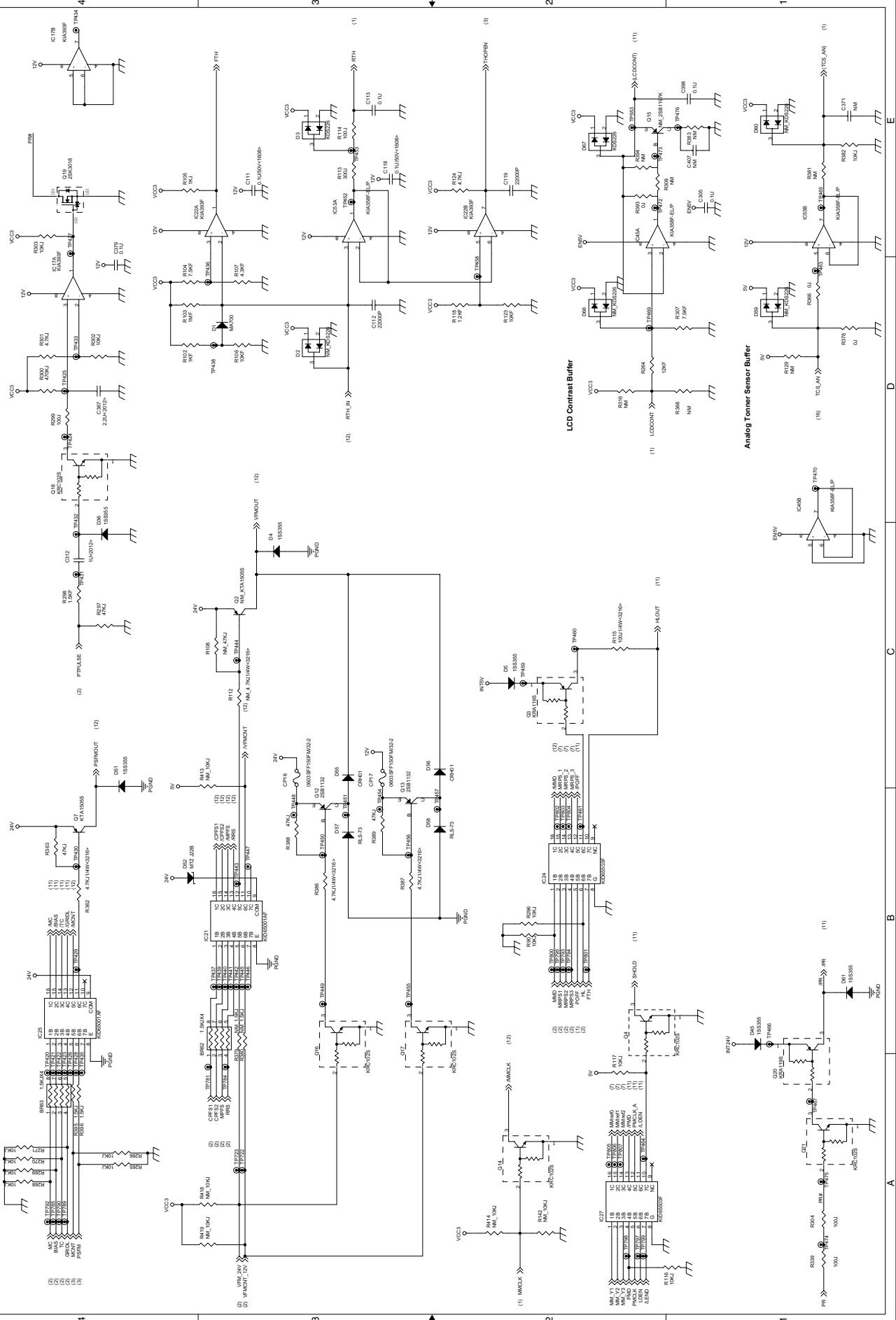


## MCU PWB (Driver section 1) (AR-M200/M201)



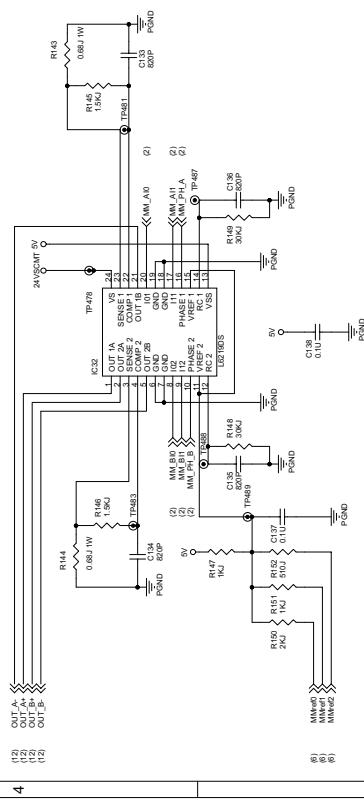
MCU PWB (Driver section 2) (AR-M200/M201)

6/16

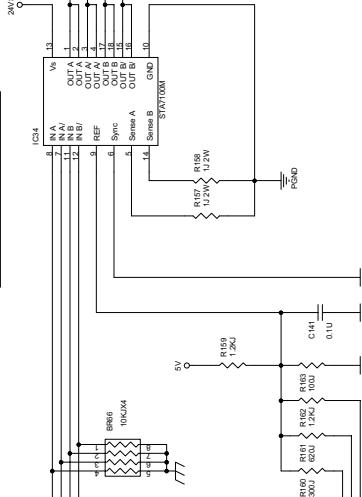


MCU PWB (Driver section 3) (AR-M200/M201)

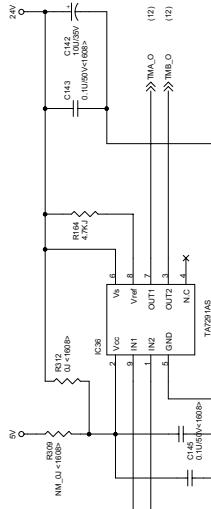
Scanner Motor Driver



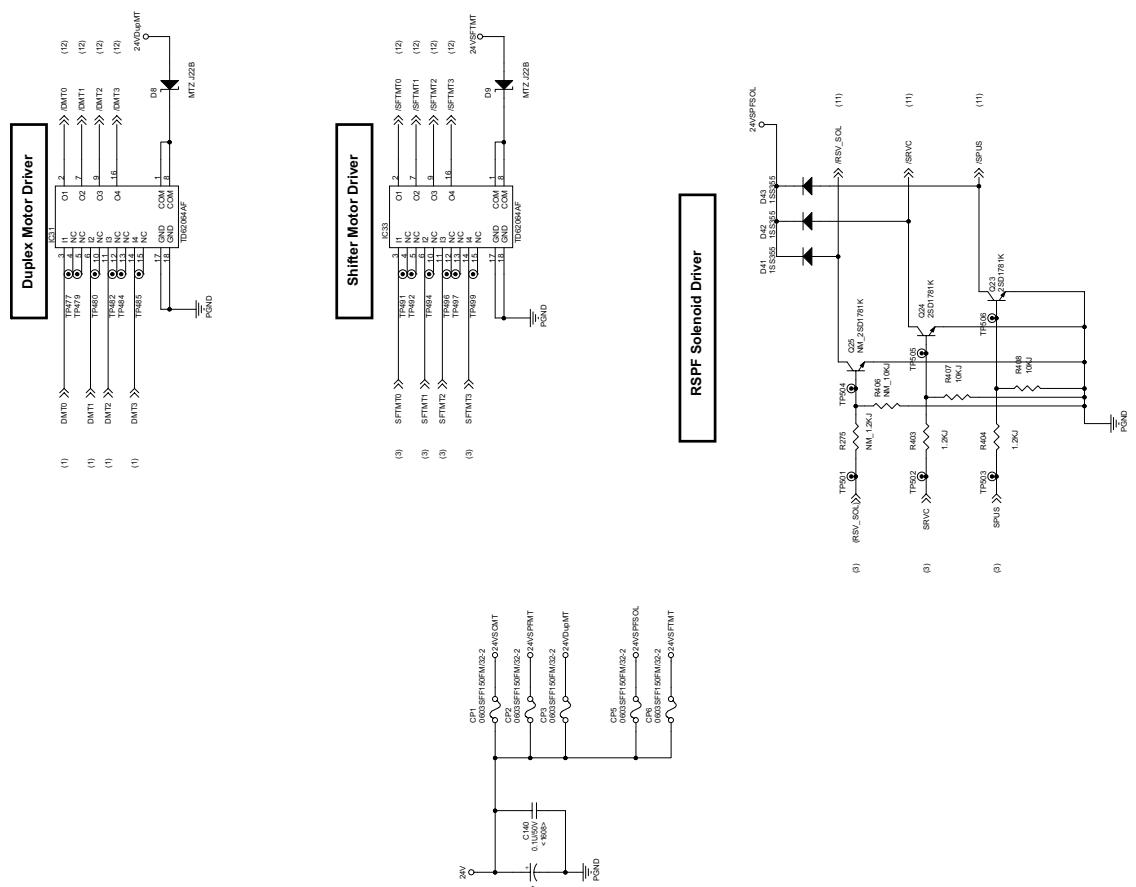
SPE Motor Driver



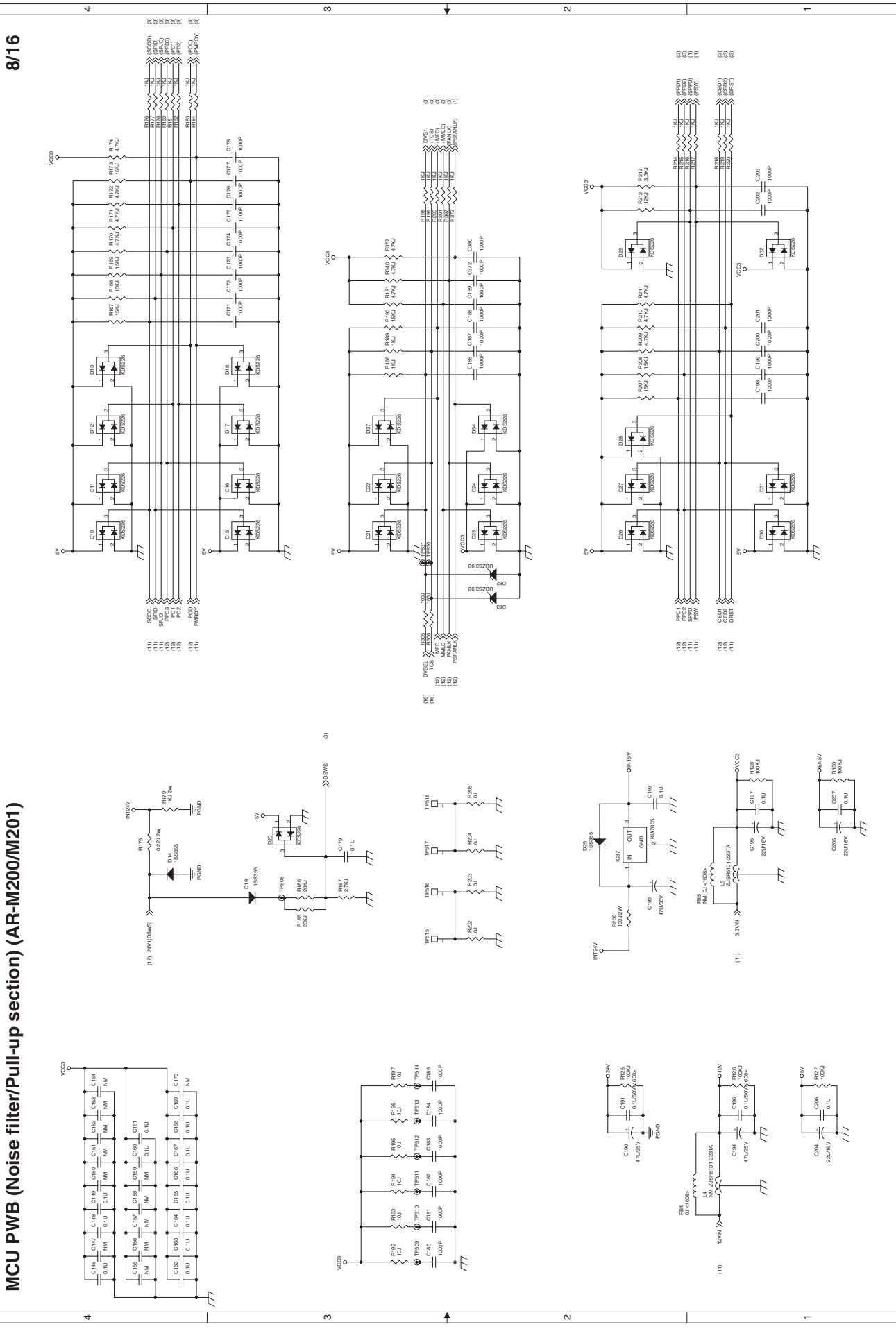
卷之三



7/16

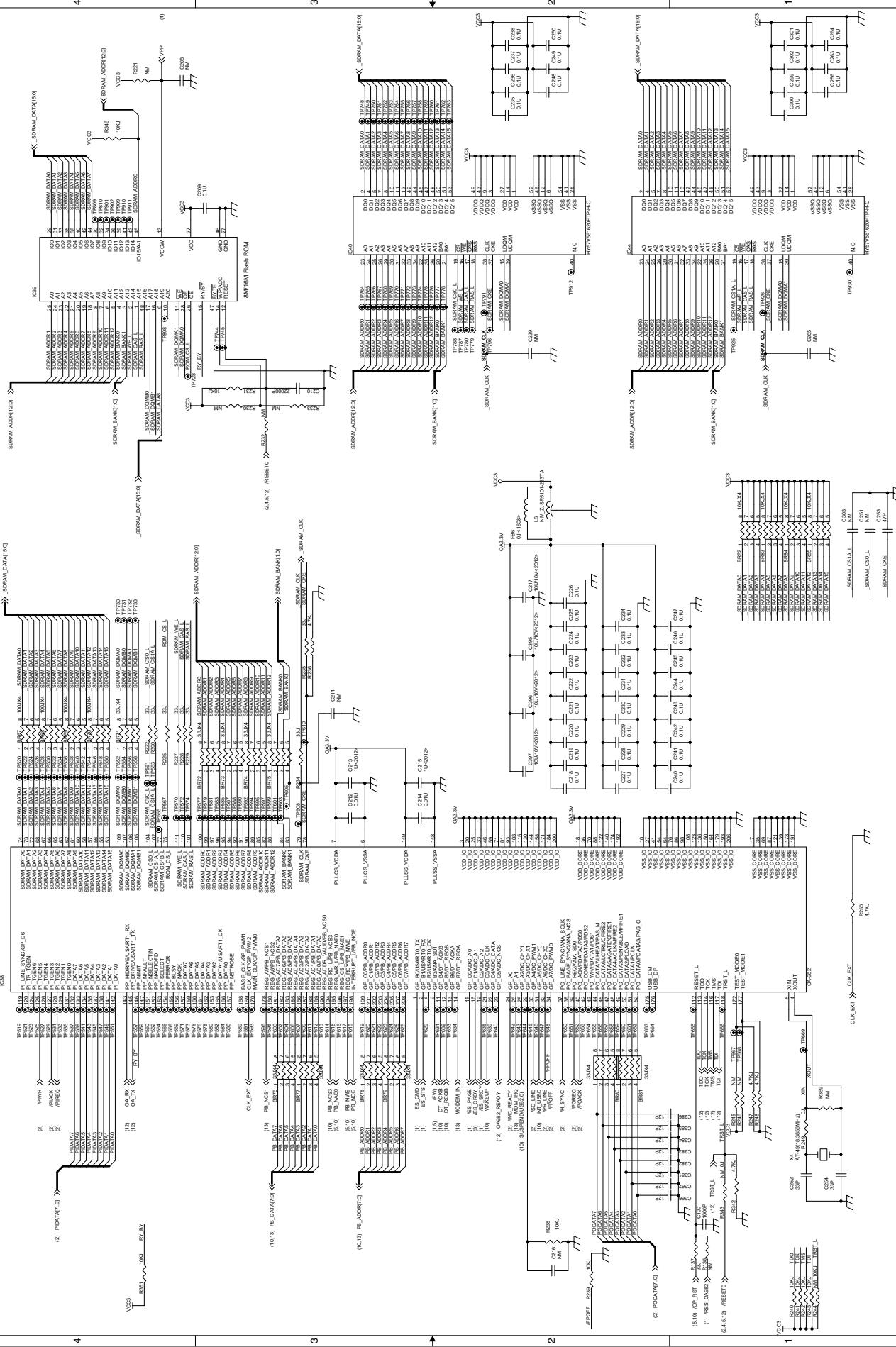


## MCU PWB (Noise filter/Pull-up section) (AR-M200/M201)



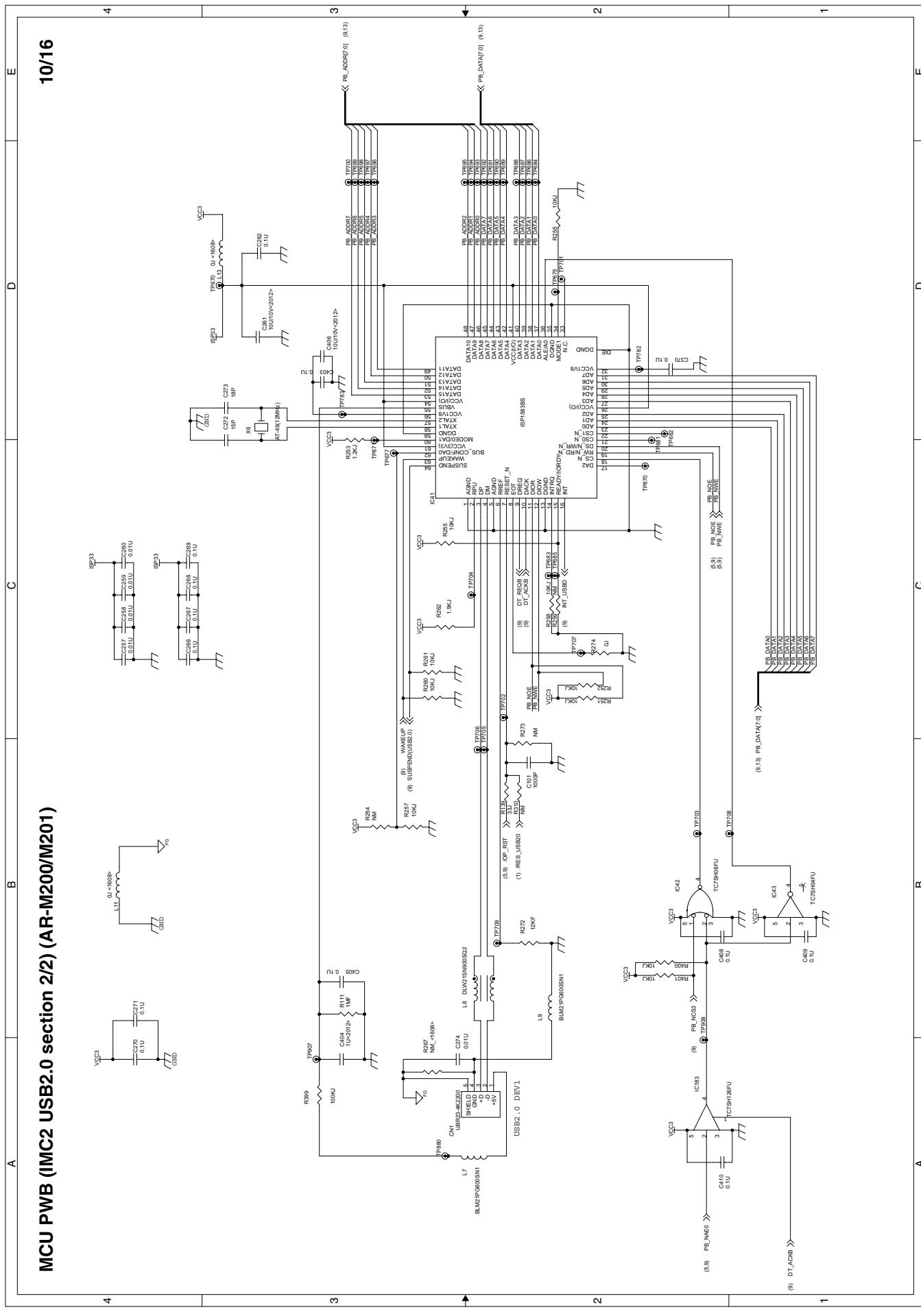
MCU PWB (IMC2 section 1/2) (AR-M200/M201)  
PCB

9/16



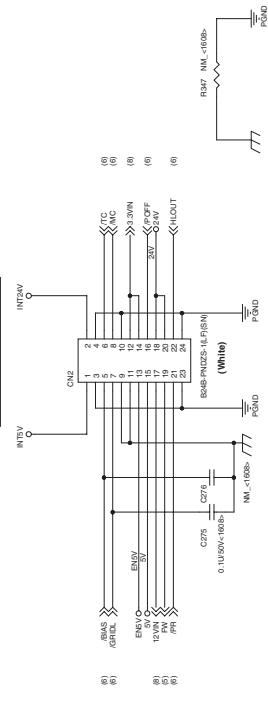
## MCU PWB (IMC2 USB2.0 section 2/2) (AR-M200/M201)

10/16



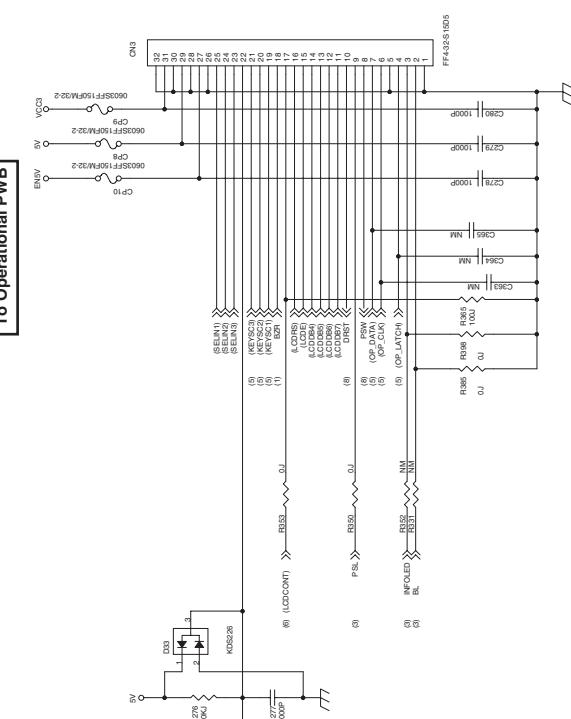
## MCU PWB (Connector section 1) (AR-M200/M201)

To Power unit

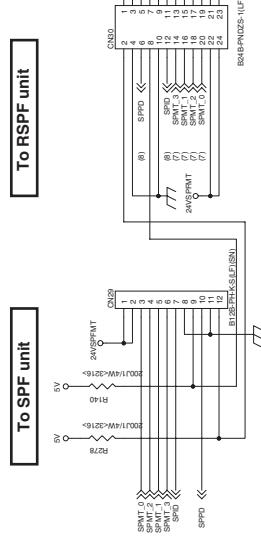


11/16

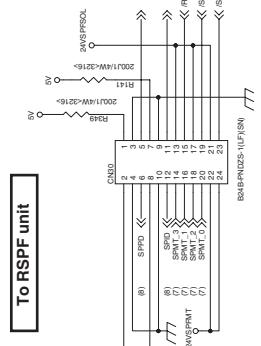
To Operational PWB



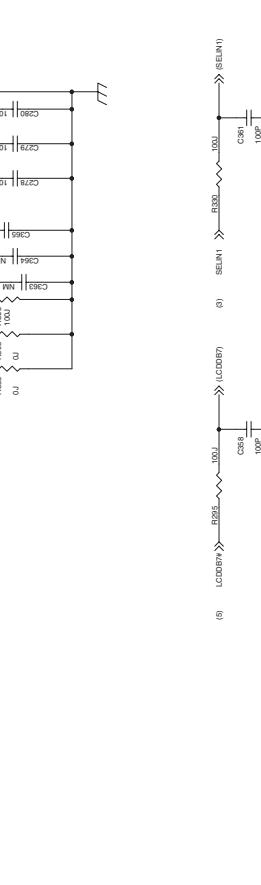
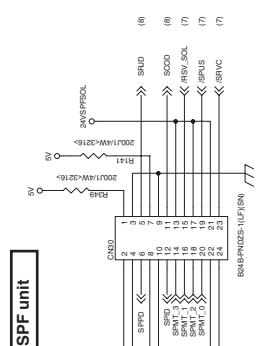
To SPF unit



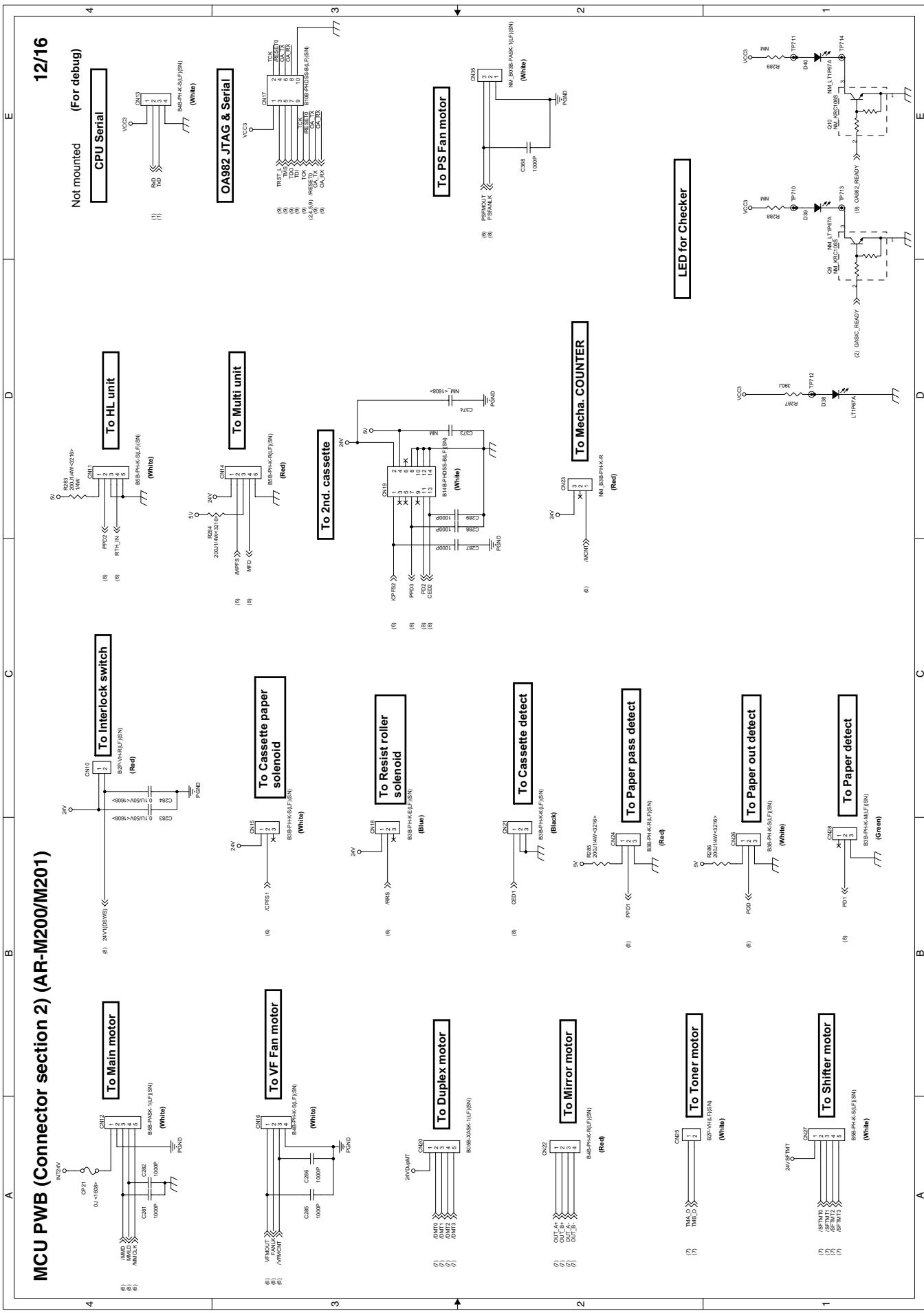
To LSU



To LD



## MCU PWB (Connector section 2) (AR-M200/M201)



# MCU PWB (Modem IF Connector) (AR-M200/M201)

(1) PB [DAT/NR] >>

(2) PB [ADR67/0] >>

(3) PB [ADR7/0] >>

(4) PB [ADR8/0] >>

(5) PB [ADR9/0] >>

(6) FAX\_RST >> R313 ~~~~~

(7) REEL\_FAX >> NM

(8) PB [NAME] >> NM

(9) PB [NAME] >> NM

(10) PB [NAME] >> NM

(11) PB [NAME] >> NM

(12) PB [NAME] >> NM

(13) PB [NAME] >> NM

(14) PB [NAME] >> NM

(15) PB [NAME] >> NM

(16) PB [NAME] >> NM

(17) PB [NAME] >> NM

(18) PB [NAME] >> NM

(19) PB [NAME] >> NM

(20) PB [NAME] >> NM

(21) PB [NAME] >> NM

(22) PB [NAME] >> NM

(23) PB [NAME] >> NM

(24) PB [NAME] >> NM

(25) PB [NAME] >> NM

(26) PB [NAME] >> NM

(27) PB [NAME] >> NM

(28) PB [NAME] >> NM

(29) PB [NAME] >> NM

(30) PB [NAME] >> NM

(31) PB [NAME] >> NM

(32) PB [NAME] >> NM

(33) PB [NAME] >> NM

(34) PB [NAME] >> NM

(35) PB [NAME] >> NM

(36) PB [NAME] >> NM

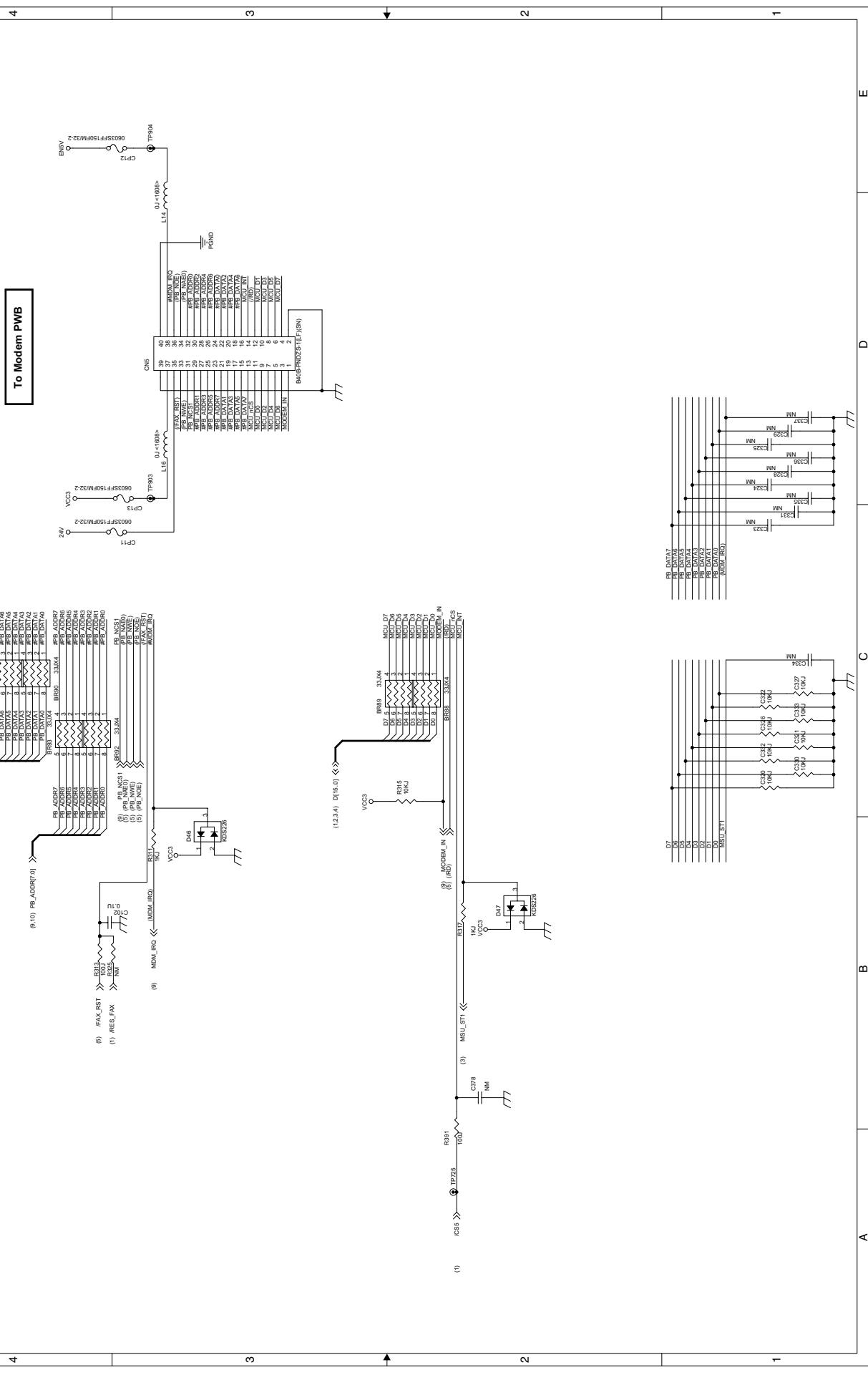
(37) PB [NAME] >> NM

(38) PB [NAME] >> NM

(39) PB [NAME] >> NM

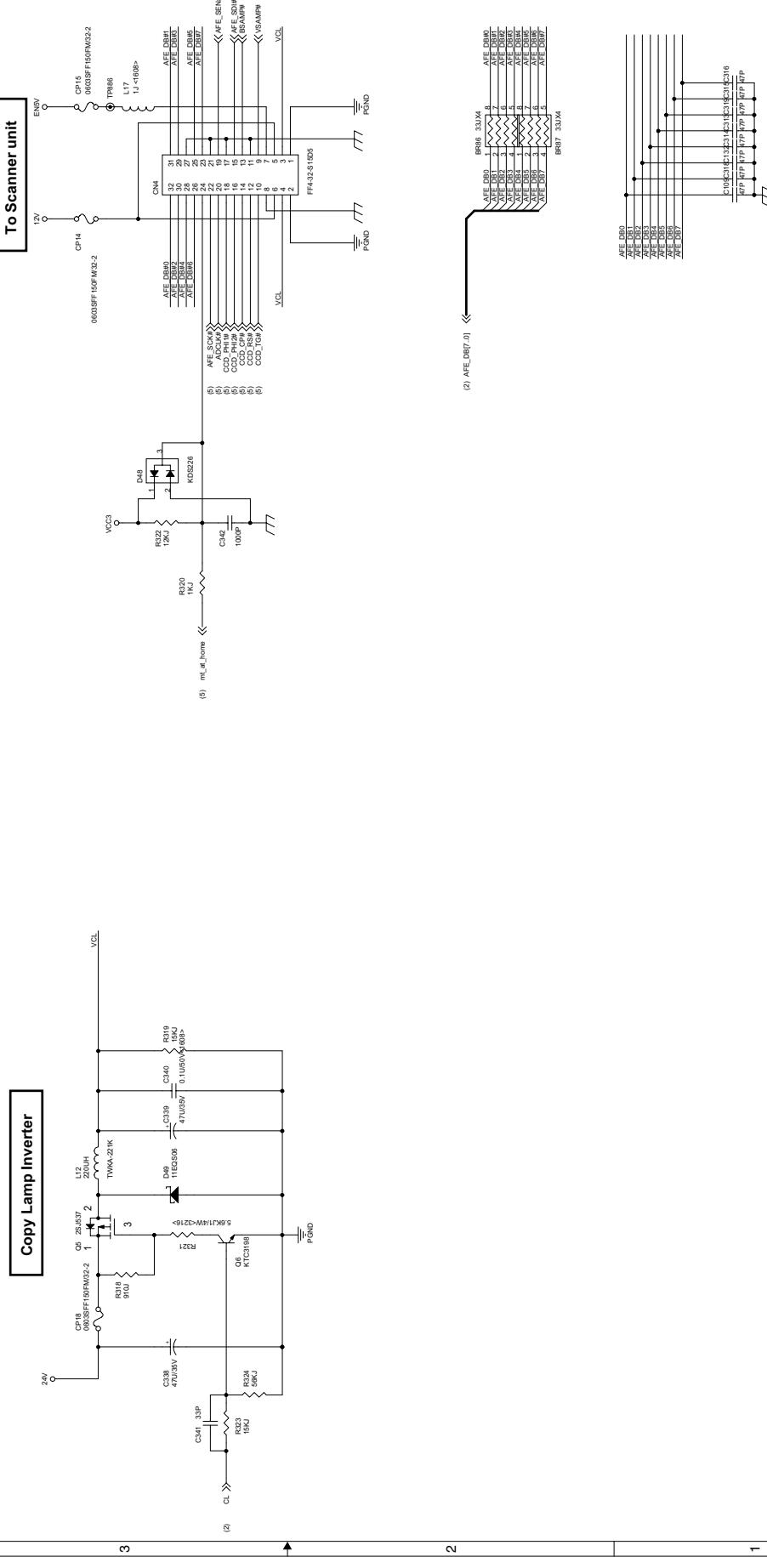
(40) PB [NAME] >> NM

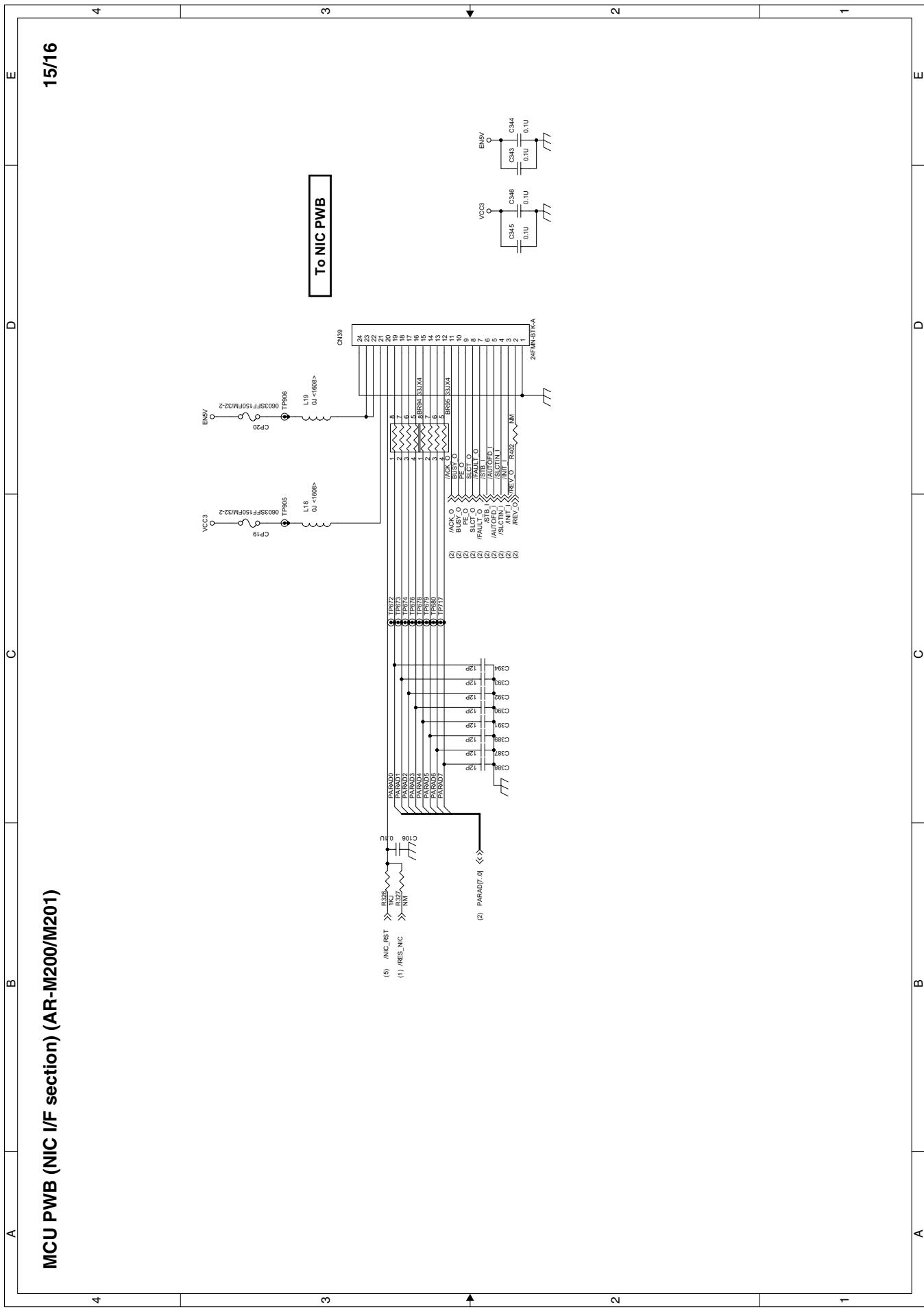
13/16



MCU PWB (Scanner I/F section) (AR-M200/M201)

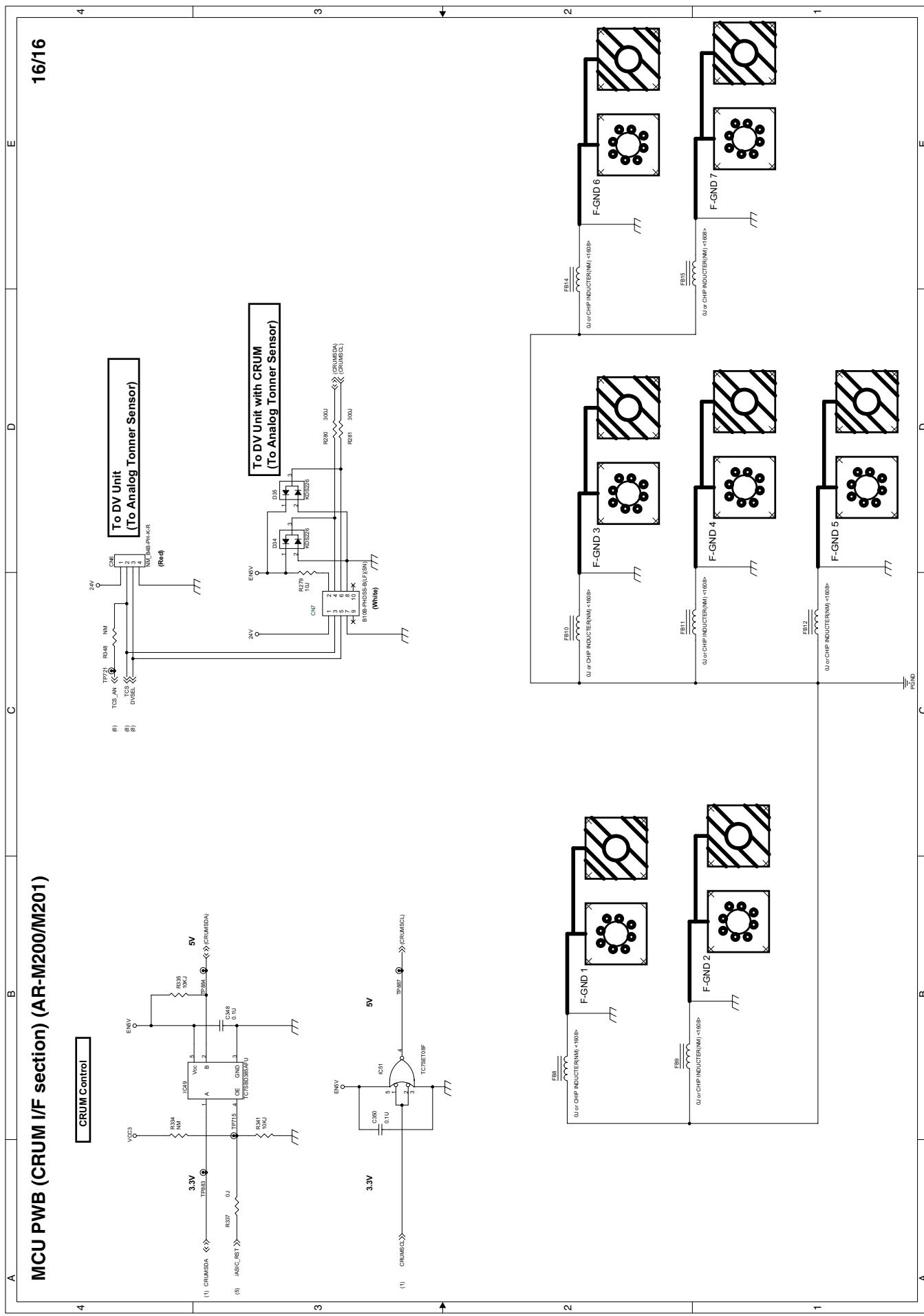
14/16





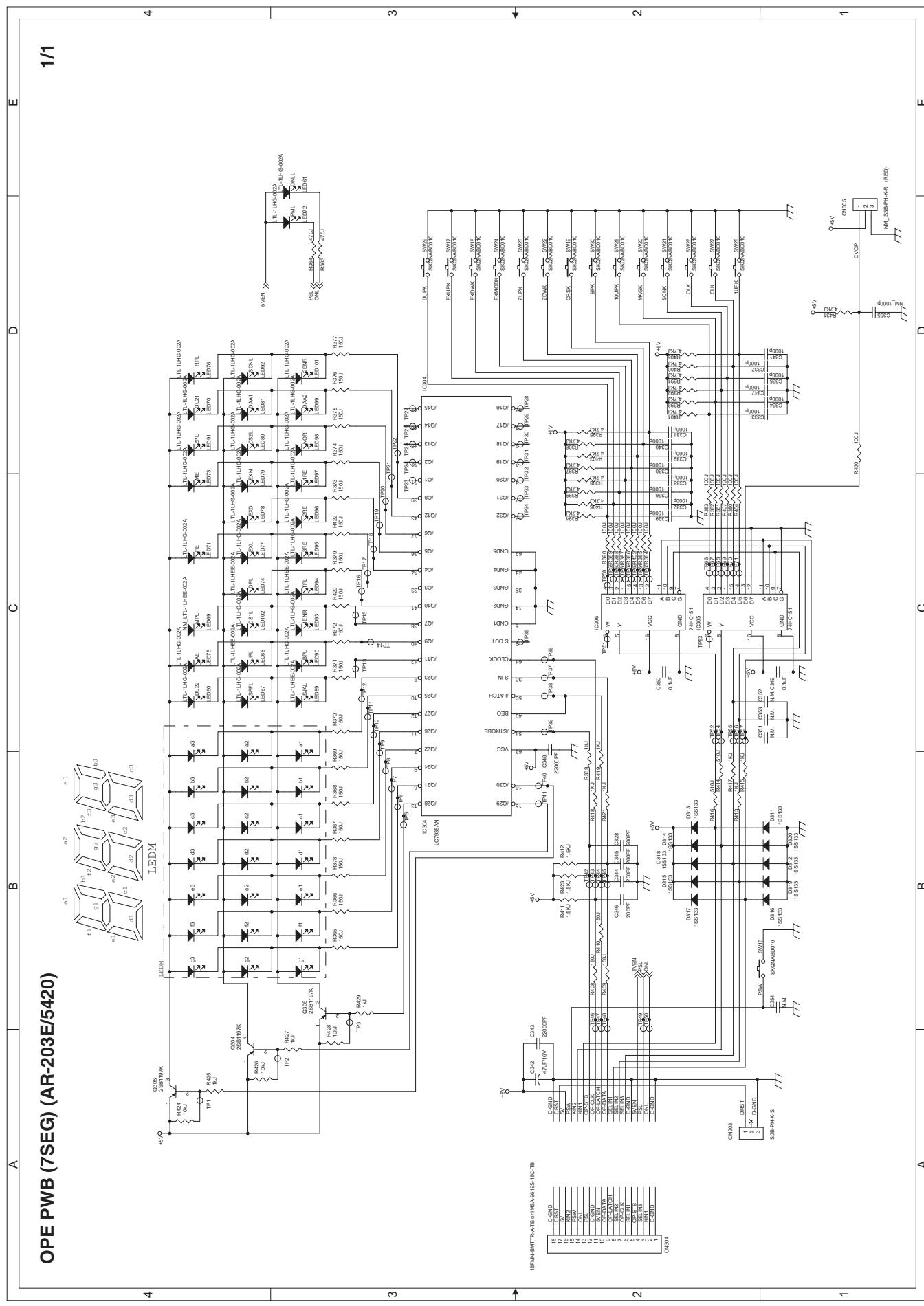
## MCU PWB (CRUM I/F section) (AR-M200/M201)

16/16



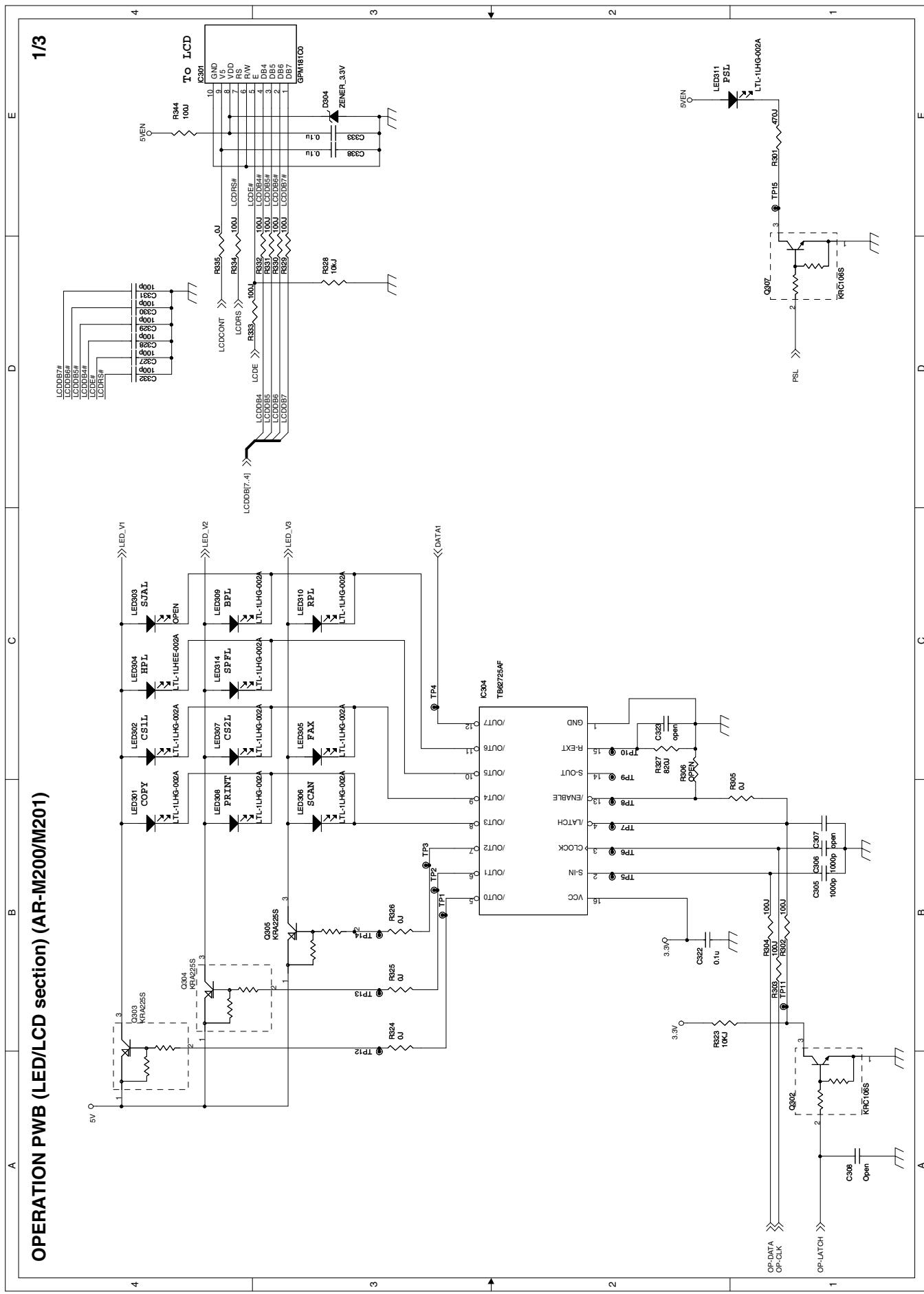
### C. OPE PWB (AR-203E/5420)

1/1



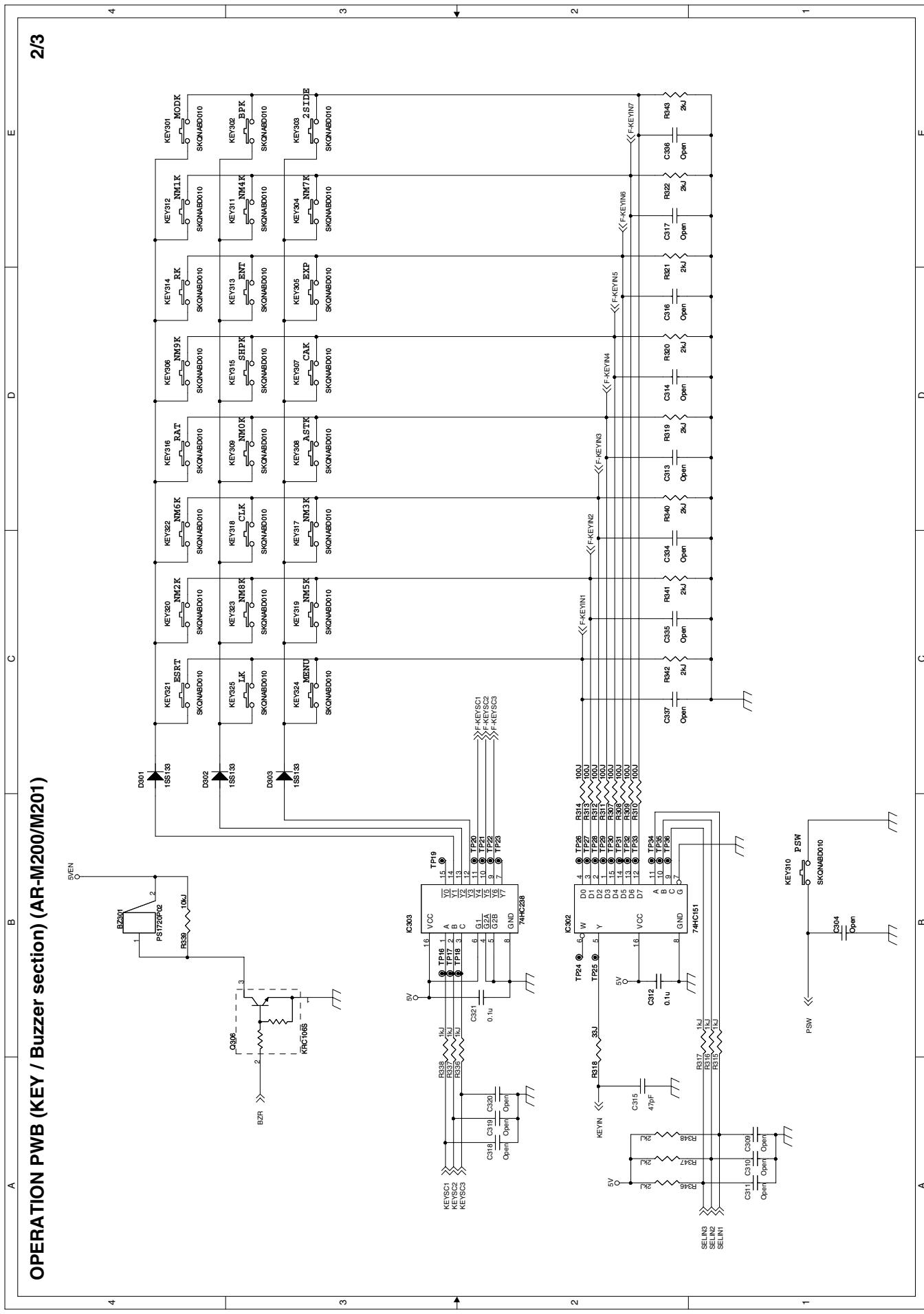
#### D. OPERATION PWB (AR-M200/M201)

1/3



OPERATION PWB (KEY / Buzzer section) (AR-M200/M201)

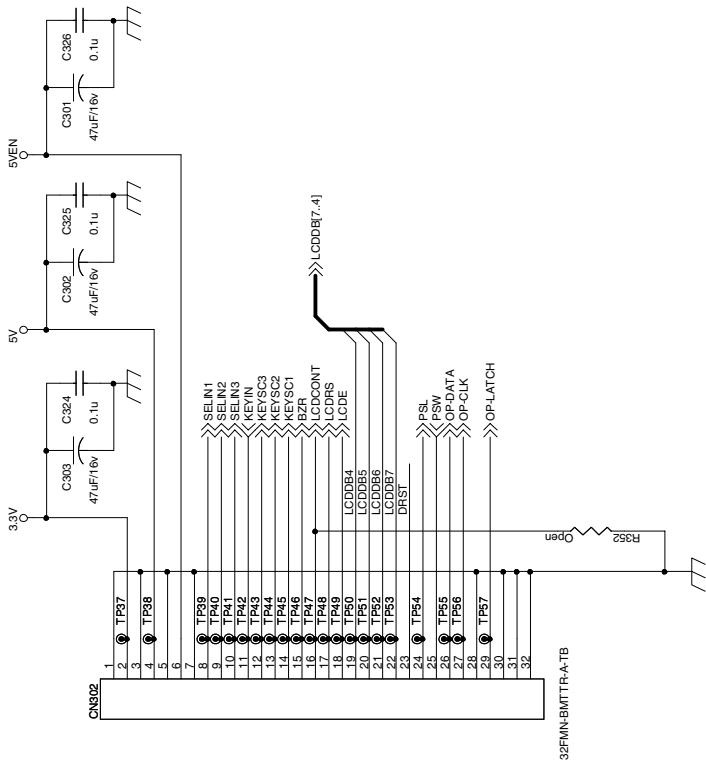
2/3



OPERATION PWB (Connector section) (AR-M200/M201)

3/3

To MCU PWB



To FAX Key PWB  
To Drum Initial Detector

- 1 -

203E/5420/M200/M201 ELECTRICAL SECTION 13 - 40

# [14] FIRMWARE DOWNLOAD PROCEDURES

## [Preparation]

Write the download data (extension .dwl) into the main unit.

A USB port is required for the PC.

Create "MaintenanceTool" folder in the PC, and copy the following files to the folder.

## Necessary for program download

- Maintenance.exe (← Tool program)
- ProcModelQ.fmt
- ProcModelQ.mdl

## Driver

- Drivers/Vista/Mainte.inf (For Windows Vista)
- Drivers/2kXP/Mainte.inf (For Windows XP/2000)
- Drivers/Win9xME/Mainte.inf (For Windows Me/98SE)
- Drivers/Win9xME/UsbScan.sys (For Windows Me/98SE)

## Download file

- Download file (extension .dwl)

Note: Copy the download data file (extension .dwl) to the folder in which the maintenance program is included.

When making a folder for the maintenance tool in the PC, do not put a long folder name in the absolute path.

## [Example]

Erroneous case: c:\Maintenance Tool Download

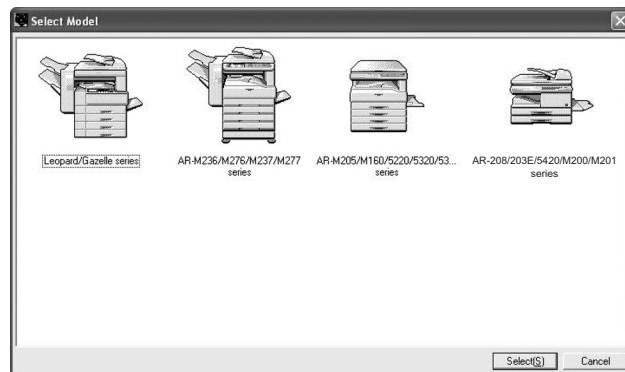
Proper case: c:\MaintenanceTool

## 1. Initial setting (Serial number setting procedures)

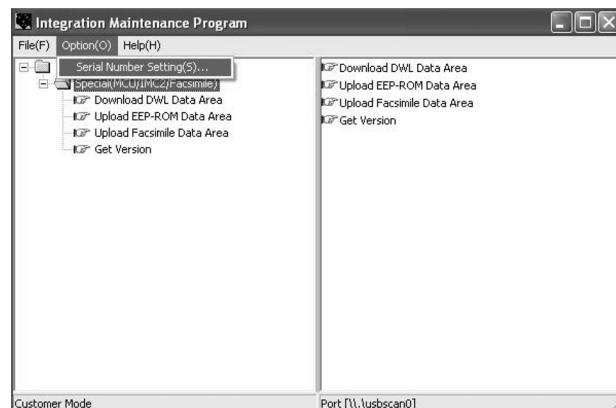
The serial number is set to the PC which is used for downloading. Setting is required once only, and there is no need to set again when rebooting the program.

Note: This setting is required only when downloading the default data of E2PROM, and is not required when downloading firmware only.

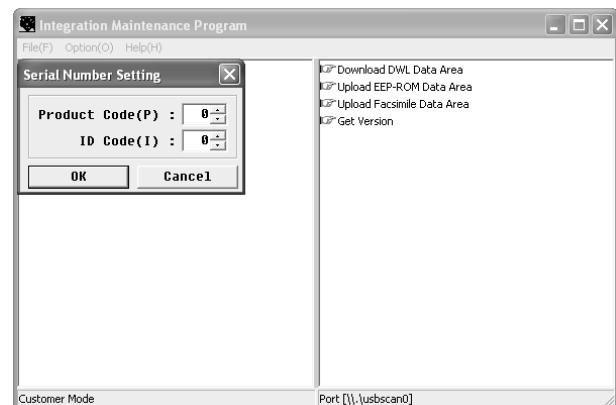
- 1) PC side: Boot "Maintenance.exe" and select "AR-208/203E/5420/M200/M201 series" in the "Select Model" menu.  
(Only to set the serial number, the PC should not be connected to the machine.)



- 2) Select "Option" → "Serial Number Setting" on the menu bar.



- 3) Set the serial number according to the following.



Product Code (P): Enter number (0 – 99)  
Enter the product code of "3".

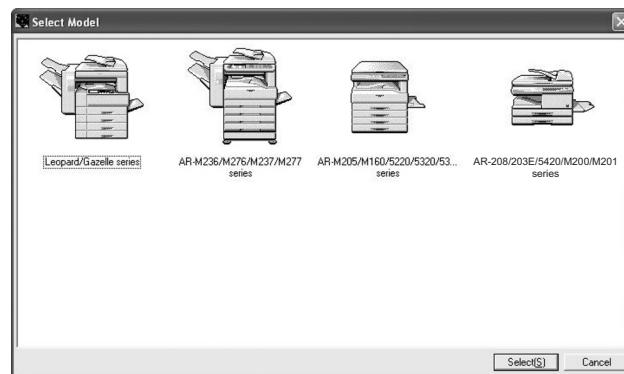
ID Code(I): Enter number (0 – 99)  
Assign an individual code to each PC uses "Maintenance.exe."

After completion setting, press [OK]/[ENTER] key.

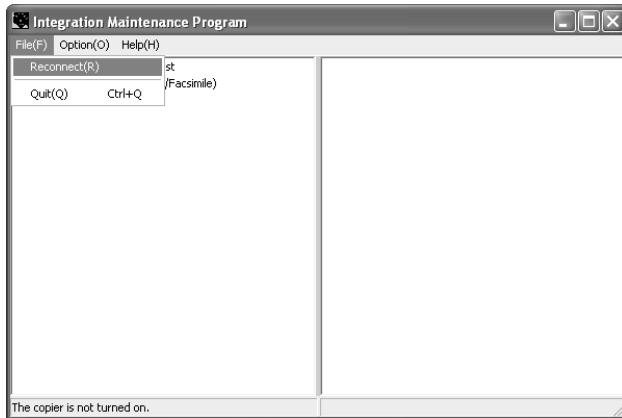
- 4) The serial number has been assigned.

## 2. Download procedures

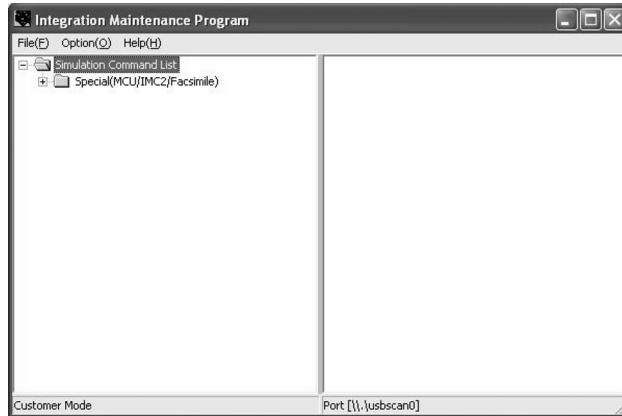
- 1) Main unit side: Execute simulation No. 49-01 (Flash ROM program write mode).  
Check that "d" is displayed (or "DOWNLOAD MODE" is displayed for the AR-M200/M201) on the operation panel. (Press and hold [Clear] key and [ZOOM DOWN] key (⬅) (or [ZOOM]/[COPY RATIO] key for the AR-M200/M201) together, and turn on the power simultaneously.)
- 2) Connect machine and the PC with a USB cable. (Connect it to the USB port on the main unit without fail.)
- 3) PC side: Boot "Maintenance.exe" and select "AR-208/203E/5420/M200/M201 series" in the Select Model menu.



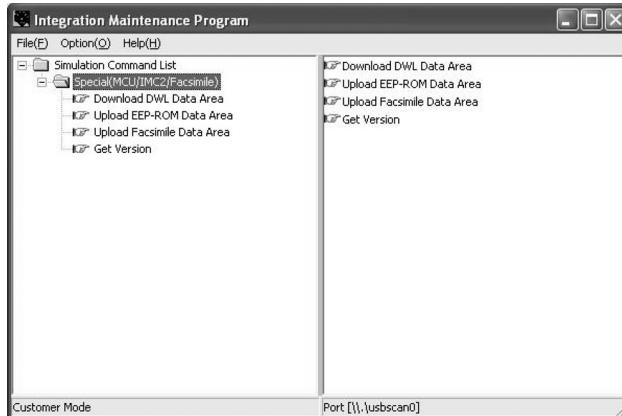
- 4) PC side: Check that the "Simulation Command List" tree is displayed on the integration maintenance program.
- 5) PC side: When the integration maintenance program is boosted and "The copier is not turned on." is displayed at the bottom of display, select "File" → "Reconnect" on the menu bar.



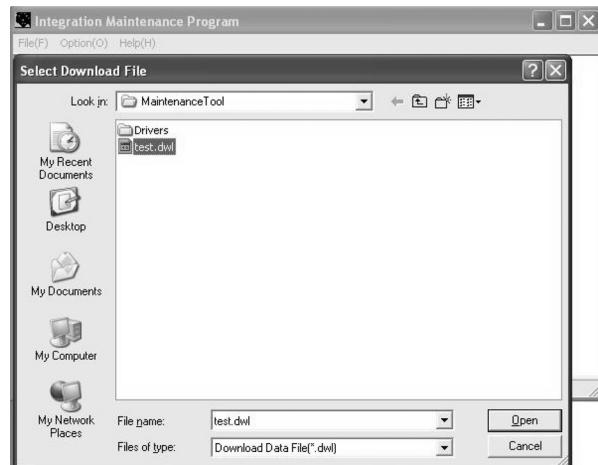
- 6) PC side: Check that trees are displayed in the "Special (MCU/IMC2/Facsimile)" folder in the integration maintenance program. (If trees are not displayed, check that the USB connector is connected, and select "Reconnect" in procedure 5 again.)



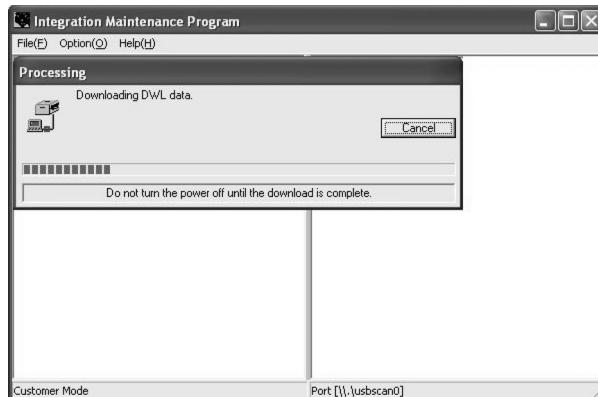
- 7) PC side: Double-click "Special (MCU/IMC2/Facsimile)" in the main tree to develop its sub trees, and double-click "Download DWL Data Area" in the sub trees.



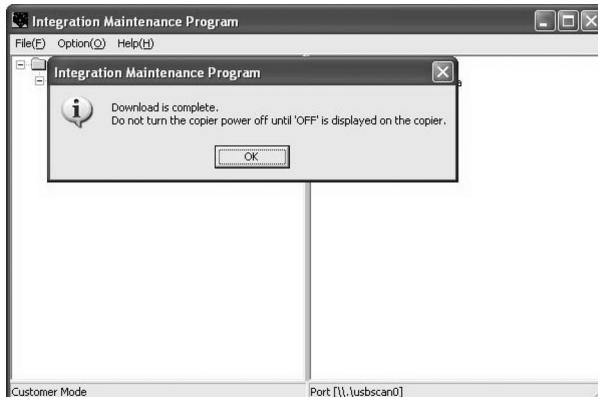
- 8) PC side: Specify the download file ("\*\*\*\*.dwl") to be used.



- 9) PC side: When a download file is specified, downloading is performed automatically.



- 10) PC side: When download is completed, the following message is displayed.



Note: Since, however, the machine enters the download data write state, do not turn OFF the power of the machine at this moment.

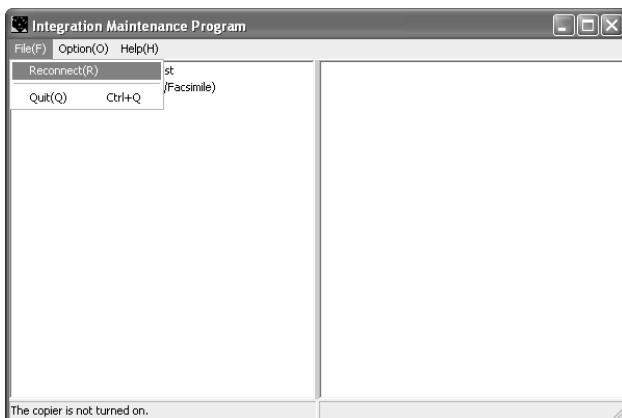
- 11) Main unit side: Wait until "OFF" is displayed (or "DOWNLOAD COMPLETE!" is displayed for the AR-M200/M201) on the operation panel. When "OFF" is displayed (or "DOWNLOAD COMPLETE!" is displayed for the AR-M200/M201), download is completed.

Turn OFF the power of the machine, and disconnect the USB cable.

- 12) Terminate the integration maintenance program, and turn ON the machine again.

Download is completed with the above procedures.

Note: When another machine is connected, connect the USB cable again and select "File" → "Reconnect" on the menu bar of the integration maintenance program. Repeat the above procedures from 5).



#### \* Inhibition during download (Important)

If download is failed, the next download may not be executed. Use great care not to execute the following items during download.

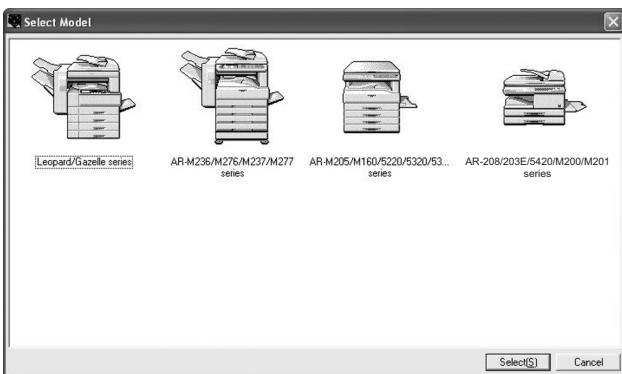
- Never turn off the machine.
- Never disconnect the download cable (USB cable).

#### \* If the above inhibition item occurs during downloading, turn OFF/ON the power.

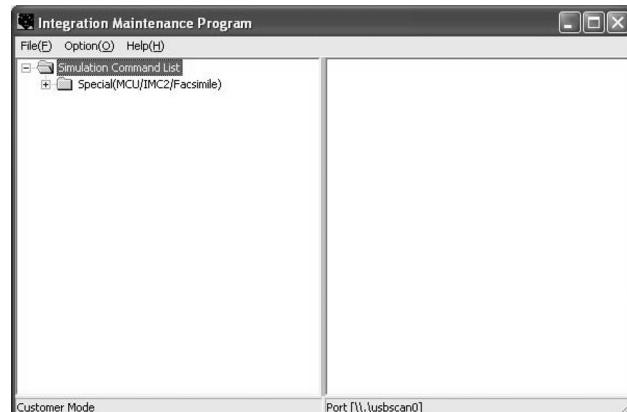
- 1) When "d" is displayed (or "DOWNLOAD MODE" is displayed for the AR-M200/M201) on the operation panel, execute the download procedure again.
  - 2) If "d" is not displayed (or "DOWNLOAD MODE" is not displayed for the AR-M200/M201) on the operation panel, turn OFF the power and press and hold [Clear] key and [ZOOM DOWN] key (↖) (or [ZOOM]/[COPY RATIO] key for the AR-M200/M201) and turn ON the power. Check that "d" is displayed (or "DOWNLOAD MODE" is displayed for the AR-M200/M201) on the operation panel, and execute the download procedure again.
- If "d" is not still displayed (or "DOWNLOAD MODE" is not still displayed for the AR-M200/M201), replace the MCU with a new one.

### 3. Version acquisition procedures

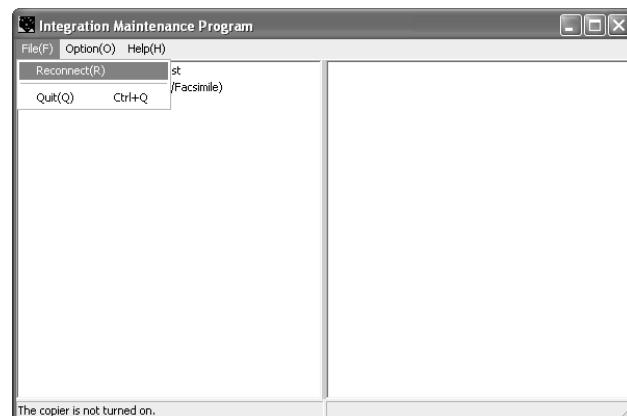
- 1) Main unit side: Execute simulation No. 49-01 (Flash ROM program write mode).  
Check that "d" is displayed (or "DOWNLOAD MODE" is displayed for the AR-M200/M201) on the operation panel of the main unit. (Press and hold [Clear] key and [ZOOM DOWN] key (↖) (or [ZOOM]/[COPY RATIO] key for the AR-M200/M201) together, and turn on the power simultaneously.)
- 2) Connect the machine and the PC with a USB cable.
- 3) PC side: Boost "Maintenance.exe" and select "AR-208/203E/5420/M200/M201 series" in the "Select Model" menu.



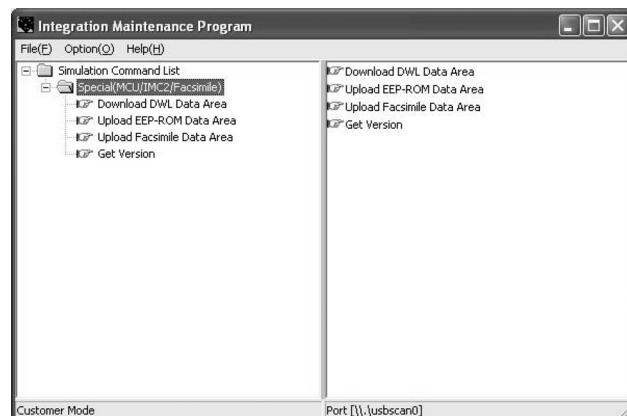
- 4) PC side: Check that the "Simulation Command List" tree on the integration maintenance program.



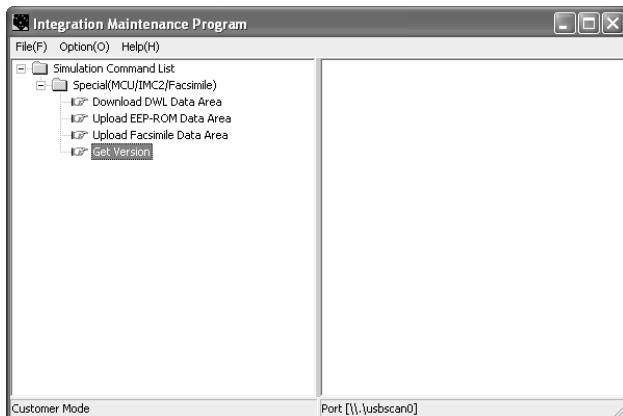
- 5) PC side: Boot the integration maintenance program. If "The copier is not turned on." is displayed, select "File" → "Reconnect" on the menu bar.



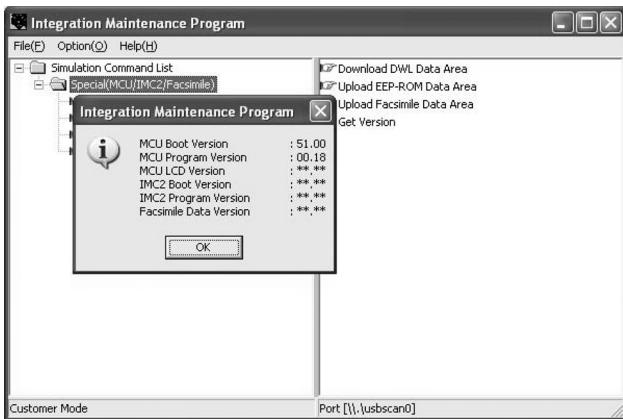
- 6) PC side: Check that trees are displayed on "Special (MCU/IMC2/Facsimile)" in the integration maintenance program. (If trees are not displayed, check that the USB cable is connected and select "Reconnect" again in procedure 5).



- 7) PC side: Double-click "Special (MCU/IMC2/Facsimile)" in the main tree items to develop its sub trees. Select "Get Version" in the sub trees.



- 8) Check that the following display is shown.



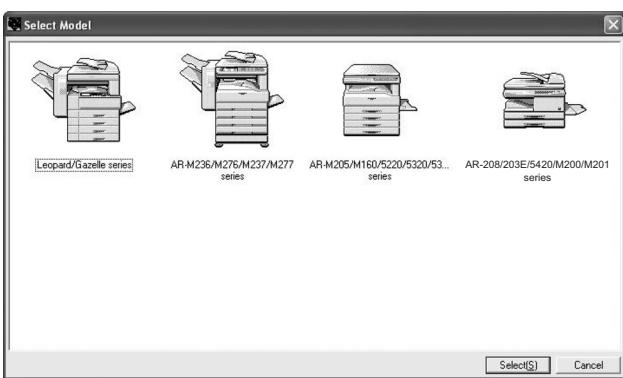
With the above procedures, version acquisition is completed.

- The display of "##.##" means its version is not downloaded. The downloaded versions are displayed in a version number as shown in "MCU Boot Version" and "MCU program Version".

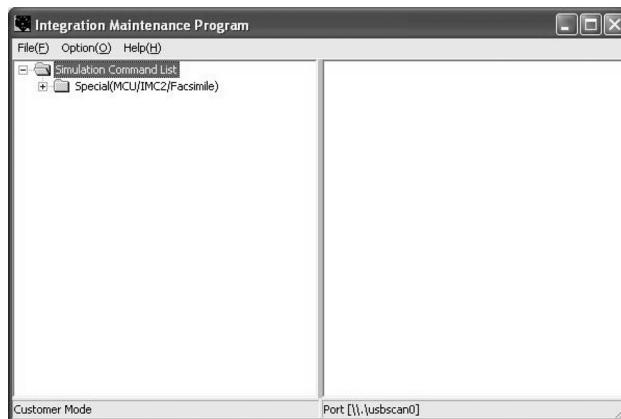
#### 4. EEPROM data acquisition procedure

EEPROM data is acquired to the PC. Use this procedure as data maintenance of EEPROM.

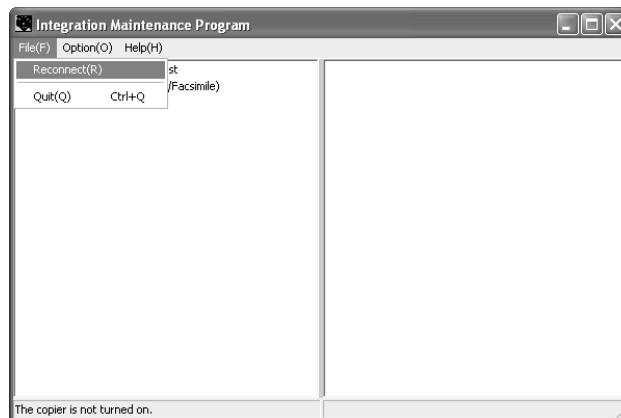
- Main unit side: Execute simulation No. 49-01 (Flash ROM program write mode).  
Check that "d" is displayed (or "DOWNLOAD MODE" is displayed for the AR-M200/M201) on the operation panel of the main unit. (Press and hold [Clear] key and [ZOOM DOWN] key (↖) (or [ZOOM]/[COPY RATIO] key for the AR-M200/M201) together, and turn on the power simultaneously.)
- Connect the machine and the PC with a USB cable.
- PC side: Boot "Maintenance.exe" and select "AR-208/203E/5420/M200/M201 series" in the "Select Model" menu.



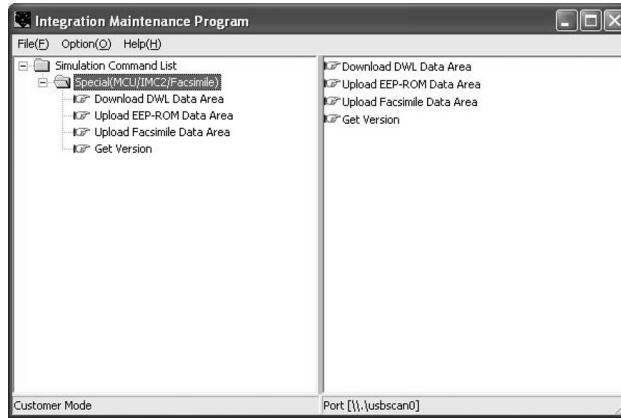
- 4) PC side: Check that "Simulation Command List" tree is displayed in the integration maintenance program.



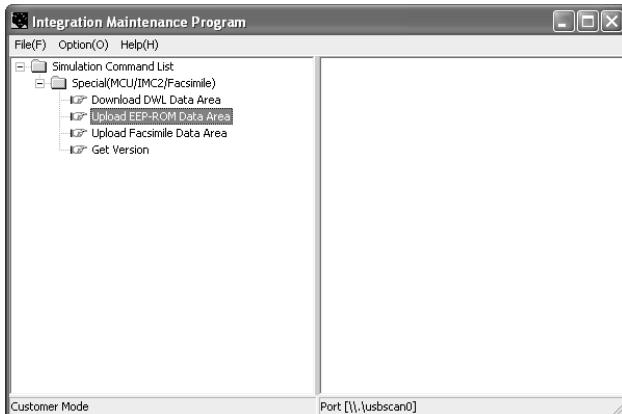
- 5) PC side: Boot the integration maintenance program. If "The copier is not turned on." is displayed on the lower side of the display, select "File" → "Reconnect" on the menu bar.



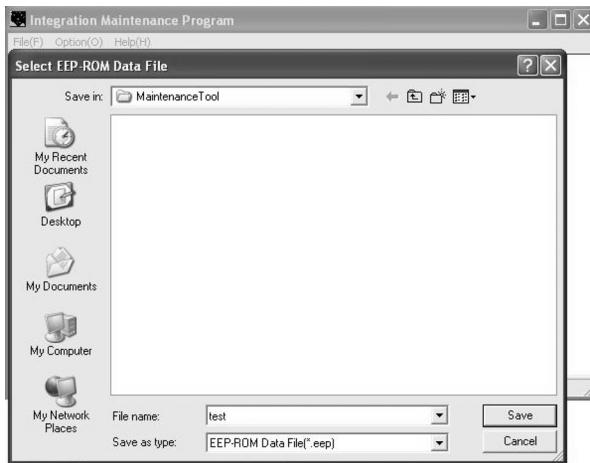
- 6) PC side: Check that trees are displayed on "Special (MCU/IMC2/Facsimile)" in the integration maintenance program. (If trees are not displayed, check that the USB cable is connected and select "Reconnect" again in procedure 5).



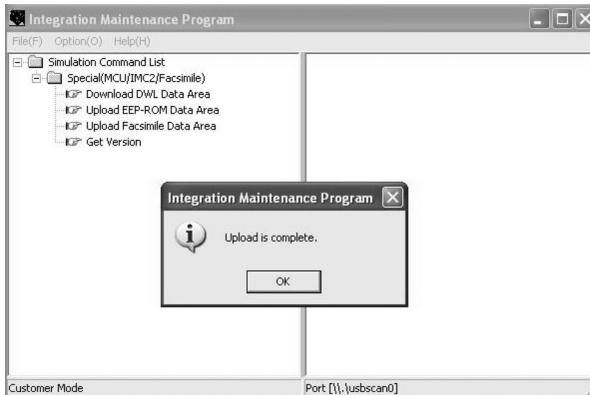
- 7) PC side: Double-click "Special (MCU/IMC2/Facsimile)" to develop its sub trees, and select "Upload EEPROM Data Area" in the sub trees.



- 8) PC side: Enter a desired file name, and select "Save."



- 9) PC side: When upload is completed, the complete message is displayed.



With the above procedure, the EEPROM data acquisition is completed.

Data acquired by the EEPROM data acquisition procedure are saved in a file with extension of .eep.

## 5. Installing procedures

### <USB integration maintenance program installation>

Driver installation is made on plug-and-play.

#### <Installation on Windows Vista>

- 1) Main unit side: Execute simulation No. 49-01 (Flash ROM program write mode). Check that "d" is displayed (or "DOWNLOAD MODE" is displayed for the AR-M200/M201) on the operation panel. (Press and hold [Clear] key and [ZOOM DOWN] key ( or [ZOOM]/[COPY RATIO] key for the AR-M200/M201) together, and turn on the power simultaneously.)
- 2) Connect the machine and the PC with a USB cable.
- 3) The [Found New Hardware] display is shown as below. Select [Locate and install driver software (recommended)].

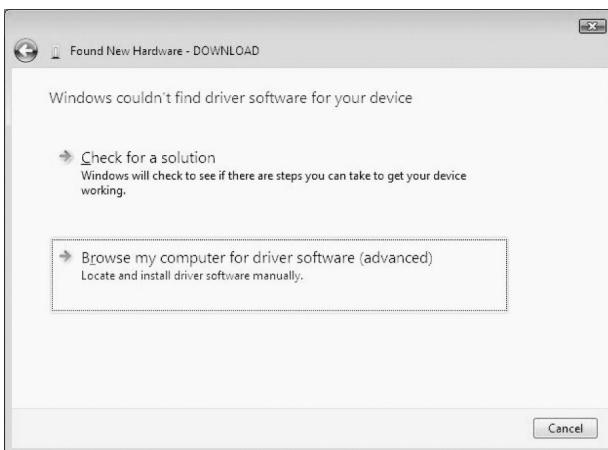


Note: A message to confirm the administrator of the computer is displayed. Press [Agree] button.

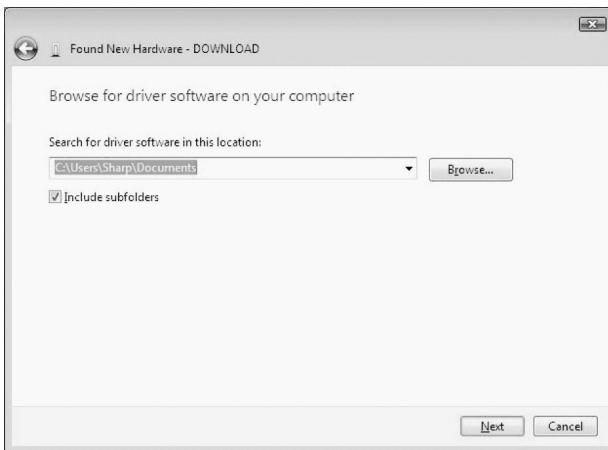
- 4) The [Found New Hardware - DOWNLOAD] display is shown. Click [I don't have the disc. Show me other options.].



- 5) When the following display is shown, select [Browse my computer for driver software (advanced)].



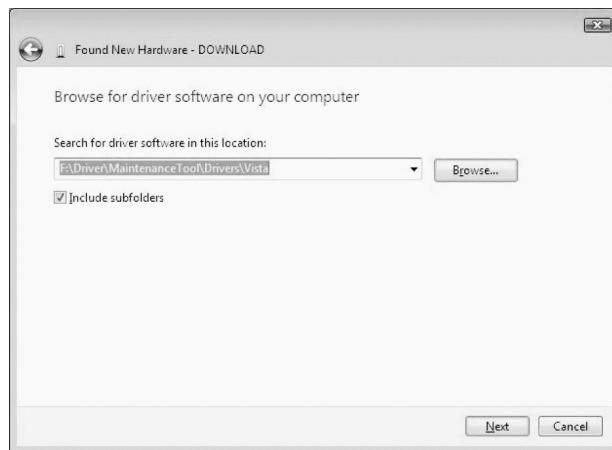
- 6) The following display is shown.



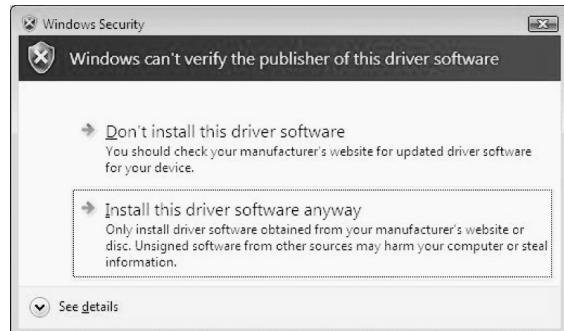
- 7) Press [Browse] button, specify the folder which includes the maintenance tool driver (Maintenance.inf), and press [OK] button.



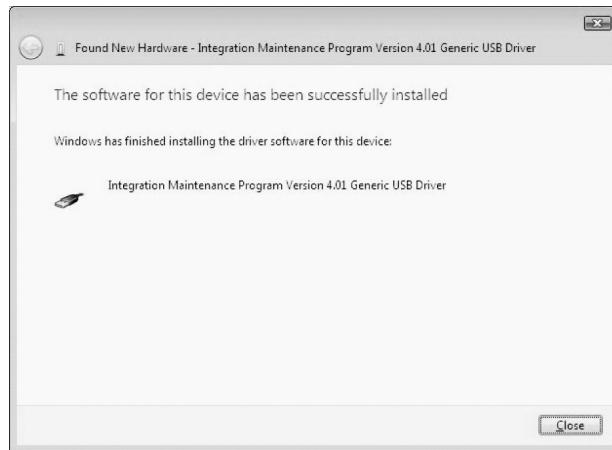
- 8) The path to the folder which includes the maintenance tool driver (Maintenance.inf) is displayed. Press [Next] button.



- 9) When the following display is shown, select [Install this driver software anyway].



- 10) When the following display is shown, close [Close] button to complete installation.

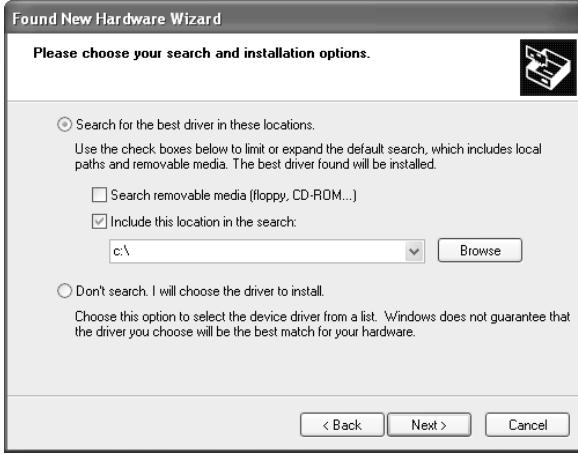


#### <Installation on Windows XP>

- 1) Main unit side: Execute simulation No. 49-01 (Flash ROM program write mode).  
Check that "d" is displayed (or "DOWNLOAD MODE" is displayed for the AR-M200/M201) on the operation panel. (Press and hold [Clear] key and [ZOOM DOWN] key ( ) (or [ZOOM]/[COPY RATIO] key for the AR-M200/M201) together, and turn on the power simultaneously.)
- 2) Connect the machine and the PC with a USB cable.
- 3) The following display is shown.  
Select [Install from a list or specific location] and press <Next> button.

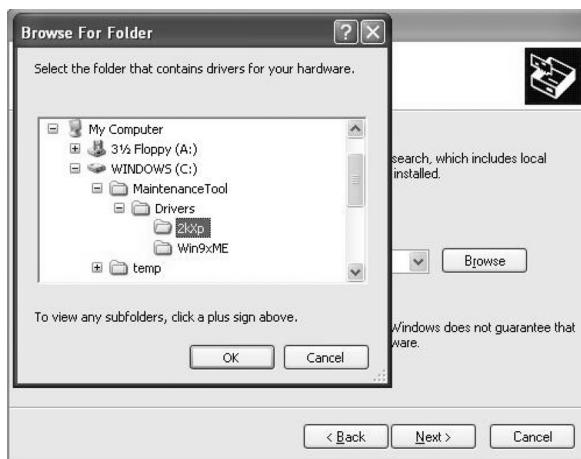


- 4) Select [Include this location in the search]. If the search location is not the folder which includes the maintenance tool driver (Mainte.inf), select <Browse>. If the search location is the folder which includes the maintenance tool driver, press <Next> button to go to procedure 7.

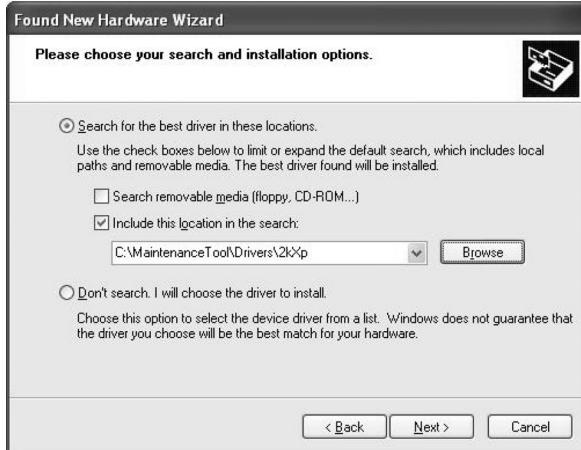


- 5) Select the folder which includes the maintenance tool driver (Mainte.inf) and press <OK> button.

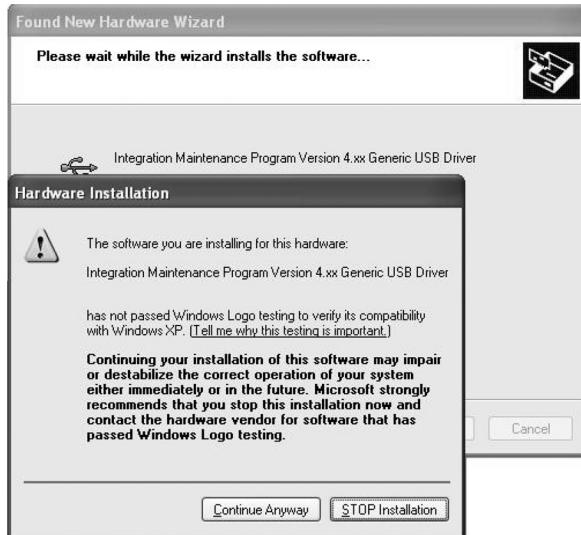
(Suppose that the driver is included in C:\MaintenanceTool\Drivers\2kXp folder.)



- 6) Check the path to the folder which includes the maintenance tool driver (Mainte.inf), and press <Next> button.



- 7) When the following display is shown, press [Continue Anyway] button.



- 8) When the following display is shown, installation is completed.  
Press <Finish> button.



With the above procedures, installation (on Windows XP) of the integration maintenance program is completed.

#### <Installation on Windows 2000>

- 1) Main unit side: Execute simulation No. 49-01 (Flash ROM program write mode).  
Check that "d" is displayed (or "DOWNLOAD MODE" is displayed for the AR-M200/M201) on the operation panel. (Press and hold [Clear] key and [ZOOM DOWN] key (↙) (or [ZOOM]/[COPY RATIO] key for the AR-M200/M201) together, and turn on the power simultaneously.)
- 2) Connect the machine and the PC with a USB cable.
- 3) Check that the Found New Hardware Wizard is displayed, and press <Next> button.



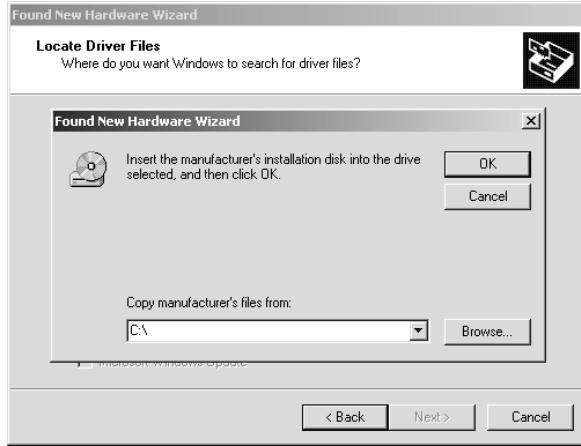
- 4) Select [Search for a suitable driver for my device] and press <Next> button.



- 5) Select [Specify a location] and press <Next> button.



- 6) Select [Include this location in the search;]. If the search location is not the folder which includes the maintenance tool driver (Mainte.inf), select <Browse>. If the search location is the folder which includes the maintenance tool driver, press <Next> button to go to procedure 9.

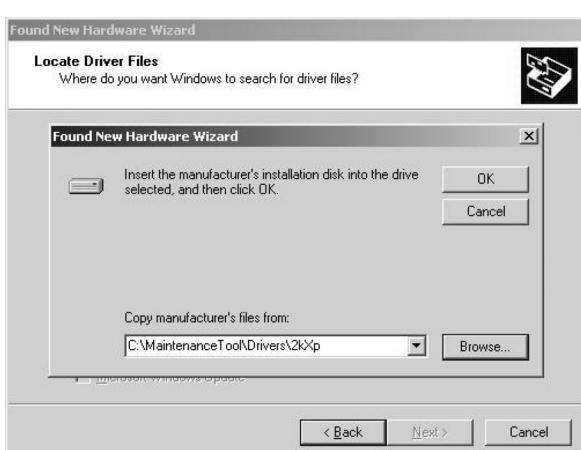


- 7) Specify the folder which includes the maintenance tool driver (Mainte.inf), and press <Open> button.



- 8) Check that the path to the folder which includes the maintenance tool driver (Mainte.inf) is displayed, and press <OK> button.

(Suppose that the maintenance tool driver is included in C:\MaintenanceTool\Drivers\2kXp folder.)



- 9) Press <Next> button to start installation.



- 10) When the following display is shown, installation is completed.

Press <Finish> button.



- 11) Restart the PC.

With the above procedures, installation (on Windows 2000) of the integration maintenance program is completed.

#### <Installation on Windows Me>

- 1) Main unit side: Execute simulation No. 49-01 (Flash ROM program write mode).

Check that "d" is displayed (or "DOWNLOAD MODE" is displayed for the AR-M200/M201) on the operation panel. (Press and hold [Clear] key and [ZOOM DOWN] key ( or ( or [ZOOM]/[COPY RATIO] key for the AR-M200/M201) together, and turn on the power simultaneously.)

- 2) Connect the machine and the PC with a USB cable.

- 3) The following display is shown on the PC side.

Select [Specify the location of the driver], and press <Next> button.



- 4) Select [Specify a location], specify the folder which includes the maintenance tool driver (Mainte.inf) as the search location, and press <Next> button.

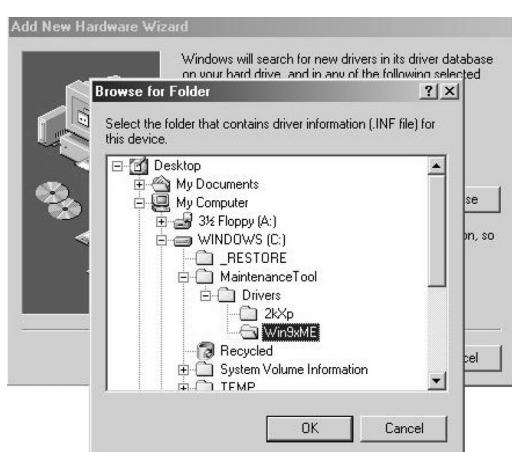
If the search location does not include the maintenance tool driver (Mainte.inf), press <Browse> button to specify the folder which includes the maintenance tool driver (Mainte.inf).

(Suppose that the maintenance tool driver is included in C:\MaintenanceTool\Drivers\Win9xMe folder.)



- 5) Select the folder which includes maintenance tool driver (Mainte.inf), and press <OK> button.

(Suppose that the driver is included in C:\MaintenanceTool\Drivers\Win9xMe folder.)



- 6) Check that the path to the folder which includes the maintenance tool driver (Mainte.inf) is displayed, and press <Next> button.



- 7) When the following display is shown, installation is completed.

Press <Finish> button.



- 8) Restart the PC.

With the above procedures, installation (on Windows ME) of the integration maintenance program is completed.

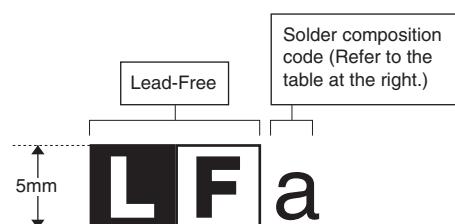
## Memo

## Memo

# LEAD-FREE SOLDER

The PWB's of this model employs lead-free solder. The "LF" marks indicated on the PWB's and the Service Manual mean "Lead-Free" solder. The alphabet following the LF mark shows the kind of lead-free solder.

## Example:



<Solder composition code of lead-free solder>

Solder composition	Solder composition code
Sn-Ag-Cu	a
Sn-Ag-Bi Sn-Ag-Bi-Cu	b
Sn-Zn-Bi	z
Sn-In-Ag-Bi	i
Sn-Cu-Ni	n
Sn-Ag-Sb	s
Bi-Sn-Ag-P Bi-Sn-Ag	p

## (1) NOTE FOR THE USE OF LEAD-FREE SOLDER THREAD

When repairing a lead-free solder PWB, use lead-free solder thread.

Never use conventional lead solder thread, which may cause a breakdown or an accident.

Since the melting point of lead-free solder thread is about 40°C higher than that of conventional lead solder thread, the use of the exclusive-use soldering iron is recommendable.

## (2) NOTE FOR SOLDERING WORK

Since the melting point of lead-free solder is about 220°C, which is about 40°C higher than that of conventional lead solder, and its soldering capacity is inferior to conventional one, it is apt to keep the soldering iron in contact with the PWB for longer time. This may cause land separation or may exceed the heat-resistive temperature of components. Use enough care to separate the soldering iron from the PWB when completion of soldering is confirmed.

Since lead-free solder includes a greater quantity of tin, the iron tip may corrode easily. Turn ON/OFF the soldering iron power frequently.

If different-kind solder remains on the soldering iron tip, it is melted together with lead-free solder. To avoid this, clean the soldering iron tip after completion of soldering work.

If the soldering iron tip is discolored black during soldering work, clean and file the tip with steel wool or a fine filer.

## **CAUTION FOR BATTERY REPLACEMENT**

(Danish)                    **ADVARSEL !**  
Lithiumbatteri – Eksplorationsfare ved fejlagtig håndtering.  
Udskiftning må kun ske med batteri  
af samme fabrikat og type.  
Levér det brugte batteri tilbage til leverandoren.

(English)                    **Caution !**  
Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced.  
Replace only with the same or equivalent type  
recommended by the manufacturer.  
Dispose of used batteries according to manufacturer's instructions.

(Finnish)                    **VAROITUS**  
Paristo voi räjähtää, jos se on virheellisesti asennettu.  
Vaihda paristo ainoastaan laitevalmistajan suosittelemaan  
tyyppiin. Hävitä käytetty paristo valmistajan ohjeiden  
mukaisesti.

(French)                    **ATTENTION**  
Il y a danger d'explosion s'il y a remplacement incorrect  
de la batterie. Remplacer uniquement avec une batterie du  
même type ou d'un type équivalent recommandé par  
le constructeur.  
Mettre au rebut les batteries usagées conformément aux  
instructions du fabricant.

(Swedish)                    **WARNING**  
Explosionsfara vid felaktigt batteribyte.  
Använd samma batterityp eller en ekvivalent  
typ som rekommenderas av apparattillverkaren.  
Kassera använt batteri enligt fabrikantens  
instruktion.

(German)                    **Achtung**  
Explosionsgefahr bei Verwendung inkorrekt Batterien.  
Als Ersatzbatterien dürfen nur Batterien vom gleichen Typ oder  
vom Hersteller empfohlene Batterien verwendet werden.  
Entsorgung der gebrauchten Batterien nur nach den vom  
Hersteller angegebenen Anweisungen.

## **CAUTION FOR BATTERY DISPOSAL**

(For USA, CANADA)  
**"BATTERY DISPOSAL"**  
THIS PRODUCT CONTAINS A LITHIUM PRIMARY  
(MANGANESE DIOXIDE) MEMORY BACK-UP BATTERY  
THAT MUST BE DISPOSED OF PROPERLY. REMOVE THE  
BATTERY FROM THE PRODUCT AND CONTACT YOUR  
LOCAL ENVIRONMENTAL AGENCIES FOR INFORMATION  
ON RECYCLING AND DISPOSAL OPTIONS.

**"TRAITEMENT DES PILES USAGÉES"**  
CE PRODUIT CONTIENT UNE PILE DE SAUVEGARDE DE  
MÉMOIRE LITHIUM PRIMAIRE (DIOXYDE DE MANGANÈSE)  
QUI DOIT ÊTRE TRAITÉE CORRECTEMENT. ENLEVEZ LA  
PILE DU PRODUIT ET PRENEZ CONTACT AVEC VOTRE  
AGENCE ENVIRONNEMENTALE LOCALE POUR DES  
INFORMATIONS SUR LES MÉTHODES DE RECYCLAGE ET  
DE TRAITEMENT.



**COPYRIGHT © 2008 BY SHARP CORPORATION**

All rights reserved.

Printed in Japan.

No part of this publication may be reproduced,  
stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted,  
in any form or by any means,  
electronic; mechanical; photocopying; recording or otherwise  
without prior written permission of the publisher.

**Trademark acknowledgements**

- Microsoft®, Windows®, Windows® 98, Windows® Me, Windows® 2000, Windows® XP, Windows® Vista, and Internet Explorer® are registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. and other countries.
- Adobe®, the Adobe® logo, Acrobat®, the Adobe® PDF logo, and Reader™ are registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and other countries.
- IBM, PC/AT, and PowerPC are trademarks of International Business Machines Corporation.
- Sharpdesk is a trademark of Sharp Corporation.
- All other trademarks and copyrights are the property of their respective owners.

**SHARP CORPORATION**  
**Digital Document System Group**  
**CS Promotion Center**  
**Yamatokoriyama, Nara 639-1186, Japan**  
2008 April Printed in Japan